

PART IV
EXERCISES
BASED
ON CAESAR

LESSON 1: THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS; *SUM*

VOCABULARY

crux, crucis	<i>cross</i>
classis, classis¹	<i>fleet</i>
cohors, cohortis	<i>cohort</i> (a division of a legion containing 600 men)
cōsul, cōsulis, m.	<i>consul²</i>
auctōritās, auctōritātis	<i>{ authority</i> <i>{ influence</i>
libertās, libertātis	<i>liberty</i>
timor, timōris	<i>fear</i>

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The ground plan of some churches is *cruciform*. The mouse is a *timid* animal. Caesar was not *timorous*. *Timidity* should be overcome by bold action.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Timeō; liber.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 45-64;³ 346-351; 460-461; 469; 470-473.

¹ The ablative may be either *classī* or *classe*.

² Two consuls were elected each year at Rome to direct the government.

³ Nos. 52, 62, and 63 are not essential and may be omitted. The nouns which do not follow the rules in Nos. 46-51 will have the gender marked throughout this book.

EXERCISE 1

Give the

1. *genitive singular;*
2. *gender and covering rule;*
3. *accusative singular;*
4. *meaning;*
5. *ablative singular;*
6. *nominative plural;*
7. *genitive plural and covering rule:*

1. clāmor	12. prīnceps	24. urbs
2. dux	13. rēx	25. agmen
3. eques	14. virtūs	26. flūmen
4. frāter	15. cohors	27. obses
5. homō	16. vōx	28. iter
6. imperātor	17. collis	29. nōmen
7. legiō	18. gēns	30. vulnus
8. lēx	19. hostis	31. centuriō
9. māter	20. mōns	32. cīvitās
10. mīles	21. pars	33. cōsul
11. pater	22. pōns	34. classis
	23. ōrātiō	

EXERCISE 2

Give the

1. *genitive singular;*
2. *gender and covering rule;*
3. *accusative singular;*
4. *meaning;*
5. *ablative singular:*

1. Caesar	4. libertās	7. caedēs
2. lūx	5. salūs	8. mors
3. timor	6. vērītās	9. auctōritās

EXERCISE 3

Complete the Latin and translate:

1. Propter mortem patr..... et matr..... et frātrum. 2. In nōmin..... Deī. 3. Propter auctōritāt..... Deī. 4. Cum timōr..... 5. In class..... 6. Dux propter timōr..... cum cohortibus nōn fuit. 7. Pars hostium in itiner..... fuit. 8. Caesar et Bibulus cōsul..... erant. 9. Imperātor cum milit..... in montibus erit. 10. Agmen hostium in flūmin..... erat. 11. Propter salūtem homin..... 12. Propter Gallōrum libertāt..... 13. Chrīstus est rēx homin..... 14. Cohortēs cum cōsul..... fuērunt. 15. Post Rōmānōrum victōriās nōn erat libertās in Gallōrum cīvitat.....

EXERCISE 4

1. Translate;

2. Explain the agreement of the italicized words:

1. Chrīstus est *spēs* nostra. 2. Grātiā Deī, ego et tū Chrīstiāni *sumus*. 3. Tū et cōsulēs in urbe *erātis*. 4. Ego Chrīstiānus *sum* et tū. 5. In nostrā cīvitate libertās *est* et pāx.

EXERCISE 5

1. Translate;

2. Explain the position of the italicized words:

1. Post victōriam Caesaris in Gallōrum cīvitatibus nōn erat *libertās*. 2. Chrīstus propter nostram salūtem in mundum *vēnit*.

EXERCISE 6

Translate:

1. Signum Chrīstiānōrum est signum sānctae crucis. 2. In cruce Chrīstī est nostra salūs. 3. In voluntāte¹ Deī est nostra pāx. 4. Chrīstus est lūx mundī.

¹ voluntās, voluntātis, *will* (cf. voluntary).

ORATIONES CHRISTIANAE¹

SIGNUM CRUCIS

In nōmine Patris et Filiī et Spīritūs Sāctī. Āmēn.

DOXOLOGIA

Glōria Patrī et Filiō et Spīrituī Sāctō, sicut erat in principiō
et nunc et semper et in saecula saeculōrum. Āmēn.

¹ These prayers were given in FIRST YEAR LATIN. They are here repeated so that they may be memorized and used for the daily class prayer. Let the students take turns leading prayers.

LESSON 2: REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES

VOCABULARY

barbarus, a, um	{ barbarian foreign
firmus, a, um	{ strong vigorous
plūrimus, a, um	{ very many the greatest number (pl.) the most
idōneus, a, um ; w. dat. or ad w. acc.	{ suitable proper convenient
proximus, a, um ; w. dat.	{ nearest next

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Asiatic potentates used to live in *barbaric* splendor. Missionaries stamp out many *barbarous* customs. A *plurality* of votes. It is unhealthy to live in the *proximity* of swamps. *Firm ; approximately.*

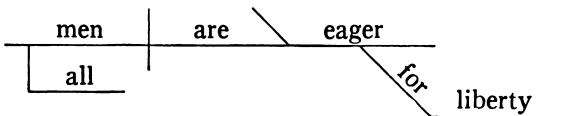
ASSIGNMENT: Review GRAMMAR 72-78; 464-465; 474-478.

ADJECTIVES WITH CASES

In English various prepositional phrases modify adjectives:

All men are eager for liberty.

A hill is suitable for a camp.



In Latin these phrases are translated by various prepositional phrases or by various cases. But the preposition or case used is determined from the *Latin adjective*, not from the English construction. Thus *cupidus*, *a*, *um* takes the genitive.

All men are eager for liberty. *Omnēs hominēs libertātis cupidī sunt.*

hominēs	sunt	cupidī
omnēs		libertātis

The Latin for *suitable* is *idōneus*, which may take either *ad* with the accusative or the dative.

A hill is suitable for a camp. *Collis { ad castra / castrīs } idōneus est.*

EXERCISE 7

Decline:

1. homō miser	7. rēs difficilis
2. urbs nōbilis	8. magna castra
3. magna rēs	9. imperium firmum
4. miles integer	10. locus idōneus (<i>pl.</i> , loca idōnea)
5. periculum grave	11. amicus firmus
6. cīvītās misera	12. vir fortis

RULES FOR POSITION OF ATTRIBUTIVE¹ ADJECTIVES

1. Adjectives of quantity generally precede their nouns.

magnus labor

¹ An attributive adjective is one which modifies a noun or pronoun directly:

Vir bonus Deum laudat. A good man praises God.

A predicate adjective is one which modifies a noun or pronoun through a 'linking verb':

Vir est bonus. The man is good.

2. Adjectives of quality generally follow their nouns.

vir bonus

EXERCISE 8

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the agreement of the italicized words:*

1. Plūrimī hominēs *bonī* sunt. 2. Gallī erant *barbarī*. 3. Imperium *Rōmānum firmum* erat. 4. Cīvitās Americānōrum¹ est *firma*. 5. Vīta hominum *brevis* est. 6. Iter *difficile* erat. 7. Vīta hominum *fortium* nōbilis est. 8. Nōn *omnēs* lēgēs *gravēs* sunt. 9. Iter agminis *breve* et *facile* erit.

EXERCISE 9

Translate:

1. The Way of the Cross was short but difficult. 2. Brave men will be renowned. 3. The state has not always been strong. 4. The column is not short. 5. The route will be difficult. 6. Very many men are barbarians. 7. The Roman cohort was not large.

EXERCISE 10

Translate and parse the italicized words:

1. Plūrimī *glōriae* cupidī sunt. 2. Bella *periculōrum* plēna sunt. 3. Mexicānī finitimī *nōbis* sunt. 4. Castra Caesaris saepe *flūminī* proxima fuērunt. 5. Castra plēna *armīs* sunt.

EXERCISE 11

Translate:

1. A hill is suitable for a camp. 2. The Helvetians² were next to the Roman province. 3. Most men are eager for peace. 4. Mary was "full of grace." 5. The Romans were eager for glory. 6. The

¹ Proper names can generally be recognized directly from the Latin. However, they can be found in the final vocabularies.

² *Helvetians, Helvétii, Helvėtiōrum.*

lives of very many men were full of toil. 7. All men are desirous of liberty.

EXERCISE 12

Translate and memorize:

Via virtūtis fortī est facilis.

NOTE

The vocabularies ordinarily give only the basic and common meanings for Latin words. Better English translations can often be obtained by using synonyms or even by changing the structure of the whole sentence. TRANSLATE IDEAS, NOT JUST WORDS.

In the sentence above, for example, *via* may be translated as *path* rather than as *road* or *way*.

Fortī is an adjective used as a noun. It is a dative and should be translated as *for* or *to*.

Pretiōsa¹ in cōspectū² Deī mors sāctōrum ējus!

—*The Roman Breviary*

¹ *pretiōsus*, a, um, *valuable, precious*.

² *cōspectus*, ūs, *sight*.

LESSON 3: INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND OF -IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD; DIRECT QUESTIONS; *QUIS, QUID*

VOCABULARY

<i>pācō, 1, tr.</i>	<i>pacify</i>
<i>incolō, incolere, incoluī, 3, tr.</i>	<i>{ inhabit</i> <i>{ dwell in</i>
<i>capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, tr.</i>	<i>{ take</i> <i>{ capture</i>
<i>cōnsilium capere</i>	<i>to make a plan</i>
<i>faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, tr.</i>	<i>{ do</i> <i>{ make</i>
<i>iter facere</i>	<i>{ to march</i> <i>{ to make a journey</i>
<i>fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3, intr.</i>	<i>flee</i>
<i>cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, 3, tr.</i>	<i>desire</i>
<i>jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, 3, tr.</i>	<i>{ throw</i> <i>{ hurl</i>
<i>-ne¹</i>	particle used in asking questions
<i>num</i>	word used in asking questions when the answer 'no' is expected
<i>nōnne²</i>	word used in asking questions when the answer 'yes' is expected
<i>quis, quid</i>	<i>{ who</i> <i>{ what</i>

¹ Added to emphatic word—generally to the verb—and put first in the sentence.

² Generally first in its clause.

ubi, *adv.*

where

cūr, *adv.*

why

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We all despise the *cupidity* of the miser. Isn't it strange that articles made by machines are called "manufactured (*manū*, *by hand*) articles"?

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Pāx; cupidus.

- ASSIGNMENT: 1. GRAMMAR 160-185; 312-314; 321.
 2. GRAMMAR 140.
 3. GRAMMAR 502-503.

EXERCISE 13

[Assignment 1]

A. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the indicative active (except of the future perfect), and translate each form, giving three meanings for the present:

1. pācō	4. teneō	7. mūniō
2. moneō	5. audiō	8. fugiō
3. capiō	6. mittō	9. pugnō

B. Identify these forms and translate in as many ways as possible:

MODEL: laudant: *they praise, they are praising, they do praise*

1. timent	8. monuistī	15. cupiunt
2. incolent	9. cupiēbam	16. jacimus
3. capient	10. faciam	17. veniēs
4. laudābitis	11. jēcerant	18. monēbō
5. cēpērunt	12. mittet	19. fūgerat
6. fugiēbās	13. capit	20. mīsīt
7. vīdistī	14. fēcērunt	21. faciēbat

EXERCISE 14

[Cumulative Drill]

Translate:

A.

1. Galliam pācat. 2. Galliam incolunt. 3. Iter facit. 4. Ducem monet. 5. Pontem faciunt. 6. Fugit. 7. Mortem timent. 8. Amīcōs adjuvant. 9. Glōriam petunt. 10. Tēla jaciunt. 11. Castra mūnit. 12. Vōcēs audiunt. 13. Impetum sustinent. 14. Clāmōrem audit. 15. Viam mūniunt. 16. Imperium cupiunt. 17. Urbem capit.

B.

1. Rōmānī Galliam pācāvērunt. 2. Gallī, hominēs fortēs, Galliam incolēbant. 3. Dux multa itinera fēcīt. 4. Servī bonī ducem monuērunt. 5. Caesar pontem in flūmine fēcīt. 6. Barbarī in magnās silvās fugiēbant. 7. Hominēs malī mortem timent. 8. Amīcī firmī et fortēs amīcōs adjuvābunt. 9. Rēgēs glōriae cupidī bella petunt. 10. Barbarī plūrima tēla jaciēbant. 11. Imperātor castra mūniēbat. 12. Mīles vōcēs hostium audīvit. 13. Mīlitēs firmī impetum sustinēbunt. 14. Rōmānī hostium clāmōrem audīvērunt. 15. Rōmānī viās per prōvinciās mūnīvērunt. 16. Rēgēs et imperātōrēs imperium cupiēbant. 17. Rōmānī multās et magnās urbēs cēpērunt.

C.

1. Rōmānī, imperiī cupidī, Galliam pācāvērunt. 2. Gallī, hominēs barbarī atque fortēs, Galliam incoluērunt. 3. Ducēs Rōmānī, virī fortēs, multa et magna itinera fēcērunt. 4. Servī bonī ducem bonum monēbunt. 5. Caesar, vir magnus, pontem in flūmine altō et lātō fēcīt. 6. Reliquī barbarī propter equitum metum in silvās fūgerant. 7. Virī firmī et fortēs mortem nōn timēbunt. 8. Caesar amīcōs semper adjuvit. 9. Rēgēs victōriae et glōriae cupidī pācem cum finitimīs gentibus nōn petīvērunt. 10. Hostēs undique tēla in castra Rōmāna jēcērunt. 11. Imperātor Rōmānus propter magnum hostium numerum castra mūnīvit. 12. Mīlitēs

vōcēs et clāmōrem servōrum miserōrum audiēbant. 13. Legiōnēs impetum barbarōrum fortium fortiter sustinuērunt. 14. Imperātor Rōmānus ōrātiōnem prīncipum audīvit. 15. Ducēs Rōmānī propter bellī metum longās viās per prōvinciās mūniēbant. 16. Virī malī imperium vehementer cupiunt. 17. Imperātōrēs Rōmānī plūrimās urbēs et oppida aliēnārū gentium capiēbant.

EXERCISE 15

Translate:

1. He pacified Gaul. 2. At dawn they fled. 3. Soldiers desire victory. 4. They hurled darts. 5. A good king makes a good kingdom. 6. Virtue makes a holy life. 7. They captured the hill. 8. They were fleeing into the mountains. 9. He is capturing the city. 10. Did you see the column? 11. After the battle there were bodies in the river and on the hill. 12. They withstood the attack. 13. The sailors defend the harbor. 14. They were fighting with the barbarians. 15. The barbarians were throwing darts. 16. The Gauls saw the standards of the Roman legion. 17. There were slaves in the camp. 18. Many good men dwelt in Gaul. 19. He desired power. 20. The barbarians will capture the town. 21. The legion was in serious danger. 22. The soldier will pacify the barbarians. 23. They were marching into the province. 24. He hurled a dart into the camp. 25. Part of the column was on the bridge.

EXERCISE 16

[Assignment 2]

A. Translate and answer in English:

1. Quid omnēs Christiānī cupiunt? 2. In quō est omnis spēs Christiānōrum? 3. Quibus Deus grātiā dat? 4. Quis fuit Pilātus? 5. Quī cum Rōmānīs in Galliā bellum gessērunt? 6. Cui grātiās prō omnibus rēbus agimus? 7. Quibuscum ad mortem Christum dūxērunt? 8. Cūjus nōmen semper laudāmus? 9. Quōs pācāvit Caesar? 10. Quōrum obsidēs Caesar occidit?

B. Translate and answer in Latin:

1. With whom did Caesar wage war? 2. Whom did Caesar praise? 3. What did Caesar desire? 4. In whom do we place our hope? 5. Who conquered the Gauls? 6. Whose fields did Caesar lay waste? 7. With whose soldiers were the Gauls contending? 8. Who inhabited Gaul? 9. To whom will Christ give great rewards? 10. Whom do you all praise?

EXERCISE 17

[Assignment 3]

Translate:**A.**

1. Cūr Deum laudāmus? 2. Pācāvitne Caesar Galliam? 3. Nōnne Caesar vir magnus fuit? 4. Num Gallī Rōmānōs vīcērunt? 5. Ubi est flūmen Mississippi? 6. Nōnne amīcum firmum semper laudāmus?

B.

1. Where did the Romans dwell? 2. Did you hurl the dart? 3. You won't flee, will you? 4. Don't soldiers always desire victory? 5. Why did Caesar march into Gaul? 6. Did the Romans capture many cities? 7. We all praise Mary, don't we? 8. Surely the enemy has not conquered the Americans? 9. Have you seen the mountains? 10. Were the Gauls fighting with the Romans? 11. Will you always fight on behalf of liberty?

SILENT¹ LĒGĒS INTER ARMA.

—Cicero

¹ *sileō, silēre, siluī, 2, intr., am silent, keep silent.*

DĒ IMPERIŌ RŌMĀNŌ

Omnēs hominēs libertātem atque pācem semper laudant, laudāvērunt, laudābunt. Nam omnēs libertātis et pācis cupidī sunt. Sed hominēs lēgēs Deī nōn servant. Bellī atque imperiī glōriam cupiunt; agrōs aliēnōs et bona aliēna cupiunt. Itaque cōpiās militum comparant; in finēs aliēnōs exercitum dūcunt; bellum cum proximīs gentibus gerunt; agrōs et urbēs vastant atque incendunt; oppida oppugnant; puerōs ac servōs capiunt hostēsque omnēs aut vincunt aut occīdunt. Itaque saepe miserī sunt hominēs quod lēgēs Deī nōn servāvērunt.

The Romans, too, spoke of liberty and peace, but of a Roman liberty and a Roman peace. Rome first appeared in history as a small town, the center of a farming people. Gradually, its power spread throughout Italy and across the seas until all the lands around the Mediterranean were under its rule. This was the *imperium Rōmānum*. In Spain and in Greece, in Gaul and even in southern England, Roman governors administered the law of Rome and maintained the *Pāx Rōmāna*. But, though Rome brought peace and civilization to a divided and warring world, the peoples themselves fought fiercely for their ancient liberties. To the kings of the East, as to the chieftains of Gaul and England, the Romans were oppressors, invaders, *latrōnēs* (brigands).

A Roman historian, Tacitus, reports a speech of a British rebel, urging his men to fight against the foreign invader. In one forceful sentence this British chief sums up the non-Roman view of the Roman conquest:

Sōlitūdinem¹ faciunt; pācem appellant!

Respondē² Latīnē:³

1. Quid laudant omnēs hominēs? 2. Suntne omnēs hominēs

¹ sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis, *wilderness, desert*.

² Respondē; the imperative of respondeō, *answer*.

³ Latīnē, adv., *in Latin*. Whenever the direction Respondē Latīnē is given, answer in simple but complete Latin sentences, using such words and constructions as you are *sure of*.

pācis cupidī? 3. Quid tamen cupiunt hominēs? 4. Cūr exercitum in finēs aliēnōs dūcunt? 5. Cūr saepe sunt hominēs miserī? 6. Laudāvēruntne Rōmānī pācem ac libertātem? 7. Italiamne vicērunt? 8. Nōnne gentēs atque populī cum Rōmānīs bellum gessērunt? 9. Num pācem Rōmānam cupivērunt? 10. Nōnne libertātem memoriā tenēbant?

Respondē Anglicē:¹

1. Quid fuit imperium Rōmānum? 2. Quī in omnibus ferē gentibus pācem servāvērunt? 3. Cūr rēgēs et barbarōrum principēs cum Rōmānīs bellum gessērunt?

¹ Anglicē, adv., in English

LESSON 4: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS, -IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD, AND SUM

VOCABULARY

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, 3, tr.	{ lead back draw back
rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, 3, tr.	{ hurl back drive back repel
remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus, 3, tr.	{ send back return release
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, 3, tr.	{ beat back drive back
reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, tr.	{ press back check restrain
vīvō, vīvere, vixī, victūrus, 3, intr.	live
praesidium, ī	{ garrison protection
pīlum, ī	javelin

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The army *rejected* many men as physically unfit. We believe in the *remission* of sins. We shall always *repel* any attack on our country. Caesar was ruthless in *repressing* revolts. Nero had a *repulsive* character.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Pellō; premō; dūcō; mittō; jaciō; dux.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 186; 194-196; 315; 352.

NOTE

The prefix *re-* adds the idea of *again* (repetition) or *back* to the stem word. If you remember this you can easily learn the first five words in the vocabulary. Notice that, with a few exceptions, the principal parts of the compounds are like the simple verbs (e. g., compare *remittō* and *mittō*).

PROBLEM: If *petō* means *seek* or *demand* what would *re-petō* mean? Could you translate this sentence without using the vocabulary?

Gallī saepe obsidēs ā Caesare repetēbant.

EXERCISE 18

Identify these forms:

1. veniās	6. pācet	11. moneant
2. rejiciās	7. rejiciant	12. veniam
3. repellat	8. remittātis	13. redūcās
4. teneat	9. audiant	14. laudēmus
5. laudem	10. reprimāmus	15. vīvant

EXERCISE 19

Distinguish these forms:

1. pācat	5. remittātis	9. rejicient
2. redūcat	6. laudātis	10. monent
3. pācet	7. rejiciātis	11. pugnent
4. redūcet	8. audiātis	12. redūcent

1. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

The first person plural of the subjunctive is used in **MAIN CLAUSES** to express the English *let us* (Hortatory Subjunctive). **NĒ** is used for *not* instead of *nōn*.

Pugnēmus. Let us fight.

Nē fugiāmus. Let us not flee.

EXERCISE 20

Translate:

1. Impetum faciāmus. 2. Nē aliēnō locō¹ pugnēmus. 3. Equitēs redūcāmus. 4. Hostēs repellāmus. 5. In castra nē fugiāmus. 6. Pīla rejiciāmus. 7. Grātiā cupiāmus. 8. Deum laudēmus. 9. Servum remittāmus. 10. Servōs reprimāmus. 11. In grātiā Deī vivāmus.

EXERCISE 21

Translate:

1. Let us lead back the hostages. 2. Let us hurl back the javelins. 3. Let us drive back the enemy. 4. Let us check the cavalry. 5. Let us not flee. 6. Let us not send back the envoys. 7. Let us station a garrison. 8. Let us desire good things. 9. Let us not hurl the darts. 10. Let us all desire heaven. 11. Let us help good men. 12. Let us restrain the envoys. 13. Let us not remain. 14. Let us warn the general. 15. Let us carry the grain. 16. Let us fight bravely. 17. Let us keep the law of God. 18. Let us not fear death. 19. Let us not yield to the barbarians. 20. Let us not wage war. 21. Let us burn the enemy's camp. 22. Let us seek the grace of God. 23. Let us give thanks to God. 24. Let us praise Mary. 25. Let us not storm the town.

2. WISHES

The present subjunctive is used in possible wishes (translating the English *may*). *Utinam* is generally used but may be omitted with the third person. It is the SIGN of a wish and need not be translated in English. *Nē* is used for *not* instead of *nōn*.

May you win. Utinam vincās.

May he come. { *Veniat.*
 { *Utinam veniat.*

¹ The ablative of *locus* is often used without *in* to express place where.

May God help us. Nōs adjuvet Deus.

May he not come. Nē veniat.

EXERCISE 22

Translate:

1. Utinam praemia habeās. 2. Utinam nē miserī sīmus. 3. Collem teneant. 4. Utinam nē fugiās! 5. Utinam vincat. 6. Nē vincat. 7. Vivat!

EXERCISE 23

Translate:

(Whenever *utinam* may be omitted, translate both ways.)

1. May he fight. 2. May you not flee. 3. May we conquer. 4. May God help the soldiers. 5. May they not come.

3. COMMANDS IN THE THIRD PERSON

The third person of the present subjunctive is used in commands (translating *let him, let her, let it, let them, etc.*). *Nē* is used for *not* instead of *nōn*.

Let them fight bravely. Fortiter pugnent.

Let the soldiers not flee. Militēs nē fugiant.

EXERCISE 24

Translate:

1. Hostēs repellat. 2. Pila rejiciat. 3. Hostēs reprimat. 4. Praesidia collocet. 5. Legiōnēs nē reducat. 6. Ducem moneat. 7. Lēgēs Deī servent! 8. Nē hostibus cēdant. 9. Nē rēgem occīdat! 10. Hiberna mūniat. 11. Obsidēs reducat.

EXERCISE 25

Translate:

1. Let them lead back the hostages. 2. Let them not flee. 3. Let the soldiers hurl back the javelins. 4. Let them send back

the slaves. 5. Let the lieutenant station garrisons. 6. Let the general lead back the soldiers.

NOTE

The subjunctive of wishing is used in Christian prayers.

Dominus det nōbīs suam pācem. May God give us His peace.



INSCRIPTIONS

FOUND ON CHRISTIAN GRAVES
IN THE ROMAN CATACOMBS

VĪVĀS IN DEŌ

VĪVĀS INTER SĀNCTŌS

SOPHRONIA,¹ SOPHRONIA DULCIS²
VĪVĀS IN DEŌ

¹ Sophronia, ae, *Sophronia*, a girl's name.

² dulcis, e, *sweet*.

QUIS LĪBER EST?

"Bonus, etiamsī¹ servus sit,¹ liber est; malus, autem, etiamsī¹ rēx sit,¹ servus est."

—Adapted from *Dē Civitāte Dei*, St. Augustine

DĒ GALLĪS

A SUMMARY

The Gauls first appear in history about seven centuries before Christ, when Rome was still a small village. They crossed the Rhine in a continued mass migration and gradually conquered and occupied the whole of modern France and Belgium. After several centuries they crossed the mountain barrier of the Alps and invaded northern Italy. Meanwhile Roman influence had been spreading northward, and soon the invaders clashed with Roman armies. The Gauls at first defeated the Romans and even captured and burned Rome itself. We shall see more about this later.

Thereafter the power of Rome continued to grow. About two centuries before Christ the Romans conquered the Gauls of northern Italy and pushed their rule to the Alps. From 123 to 118 B. C. (shortly before the birth of Caesar in 102 B. C.) the Romans carved out the province in southern Gaul of which Caesar was later to become governor. This province protected the north of Italy from further invasion by the Gauls and united Rome by land with its possessions in Spain. The province was therefore an important element in Rome's defense system. When Caesar came to Gaul it was the northern outpost of the Roman Empire. When he left Gaul, the outposts of empire stood on the Rhine, barring the German advance, and at the North Sea, looking towards Britain which, in time, was also to fall to the legions of Rome.

¹ etiamsī . . . sit: even if . . . he be.

Respondē Latīnē:

1. Vēnēruntne Gallī trāns flūmen? 2. Occupāvēruntne omnem Galliam? 3. Dūxēruntne cōpiās per Alpēs?¹ 4. Occupāvēruntne partem Italiae? 5. Contendēruntne cum Rōmānīs? 6. Quī Rōmam cēpērunt? 7. Num Rōmam incendērunt Gallī?

THE FORMULA OF BLESSING

Benedictiō² Deī omnipotentis,³ Patris et Fīlii et Spīritūs Sānctī dēscendat⁴ super⁵ tē et maneat semper. Āmēn.

¹ Alpēs, Alpium, *f.*, the Alps.

² benedictiō, benedictiōnis, *blessing*.

³ omnipotēns (*gen.* omnipotentis), *almighty*; adjective agreeing with Deī.

⁴ dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, 3, *intr.*, *descend*.

⁵ super, prep. w. abl., *over, upon*.

LESSON 5: SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS, OF *-IŌ* VERBS OF THE THIRD, AND OF *SUM*; INDIRECT QUESTIONS; SEQUENCE OF TENSES

VOCABULARY

rogō, 1, tr.	{ ask request
quot, indecl. adj.	how many
quantus, a, um	{ how large how great
quō, adv.	{ whither where (of motion)
sciō, 4, tr.	know
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus, 3, tr.	{ seek ask
dolor, dolōris	{ pain sorrow
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, 4, tr.	{ open uncover expose

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

What is a *quotient*? *Rogation* Days. Modern war requires an enormous *quantity* of supplies. *Scientists* have contributed greatly to the comfort of living. A window is an *aperture* admitting light and air. A *dolorous* experience.

NOTE

Quot is an indeclinable (indecl.) adjective, i. e., it does not change its form to agree with the word it modifies.

Quot milītēs sunt in castrīs? *How many soldiers are in the camp?*

Quot puerīs praemia dabis? *To how many boys will you give rewards?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A question asked directly is called a DIRECT QUESTION:

Estne Deus bonus?

Remittisne obsidēs?

When a question, however, depends on a verb of *asking, saying, thinking,* and the like, it is called an INDIRECT QUESTION and is put in the subjunctive.

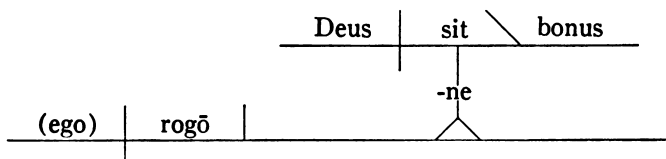
Rogō sitne Deus bonus.

I ask whether God is good.

Rogō remittāsne obsidēs.

I ask whether you are sending back the hostages.

Indirect questions are noun clauses. In the examples they are used as objects of the verb *rogō*.



Indirect questions may be introduced by the same adverbs, adjectives, pronouns, and participles as direct questions, but:

-Nē and **num** in indirect questions mean *whether (if)*.

Nōnne is seldom used.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 187; 197-207; 316; 321; 353-355; 524-528; 531-532; 535-537; 660-662.

EXERCISE 26

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the mood and tense of the italicized words:*

A.

1. Quaerō num Pilātum *laudētis*. 2. Quaerō num Pilātus vir

bonus et fortis *fu*erit. 3. Pilātus quaesīvit num Christus rēx *ess*et.
4. Pilātus quaesīvit cūr Jūdāei Christum *cēp*issent.

B.

1. Quaerō num Columbus ad Americam *pervē*nerit. 2. Quaerō num Columbum memoriā *teneā*tis. 3. Columbus quaerēbat num nautae terram *vidē*rent. 4. Postea Columbus quaesīvit quis primus terram *vīd*isset.

EXERCISE 27

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the tenses of all subjunctives:*

1. Caesar asked whether the legions had hurled back the enemy.
2. Caesar asked whether the lieutenant was leading the hostages back. 3. The Romans ask whether the soldiers have checked the slaves. 4. They asked whether Caesar was sending the envoys back.

EXERCISE 28

1. *Translate;*

2. *Compare the italicized verbs in each group:*

A.

1. Christus Caelum omnibus hominibus *aper*uit. 2. Christus in cruce Caelum *aperiē*bat. 3. Christiānī scīvērunt quantō dolōre Christus Caelum *aperu*isset. 4. Rogō num Christus Caelum *aperu*erit. 5. Scīvēruntne centuriō et mīlītēs Rōmānī cūr Christus in cruce Caelum *aperi*ret?

B.

1. Quid *est* vērītās? 2. Scīsne quid *sit* vērītās? 3. Pilātus quaesīvit quid *ess*et vērītās.

C.

1. Cūr Christus in mundum *vē*nit? 2. Scīsne cūr Christus in mundum *vē*nerit? 3. Scīvitne Pilātus cūr Christus in mundum *vē*nisset? 4. Christus propter commūnem omnium hominum salūtem in mundum *vē*nit.

EXERCISE 29

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Scīmus *quis* Christus sit. 2. Scīvitne Pilātus *cūjus* Filius Christus esset? 3. Scīmus *cui* Jūdaiī Christum trādiderint. 4. Scīsne *quī* Christum Pilātō trādiderint? 5. Quaerō *quibuscum* Christum ad mortem dūxerint. 6. Scīvēruntne omnēs *quibus* Christus Caelum aperīret? 7. Scīsne *quōrum* māter Mariā nunc sit? 8. Scīsne *quem* Christus in cruce in Caelum vocāverit? 9. Scīsne *cūr* Rōmānī Christum nōn in urbe occiderint? 10. Scīsne *quō* milītēs Christum dūxerint? 11. Quaerunt *quantum* dolōrem Christus in cruce sustinuerit. 12. Quaerō *quot* amīcī cum Christō fuerint. 13. Scīvitne Pilātus *ubi* rēgnum Christī esset? 14. Sānctus Paulus scīvit *quantōs* dolōrēs Christus propter hominum salūtem in cruce sustinuisset.

EXERCISE 30

Translate:

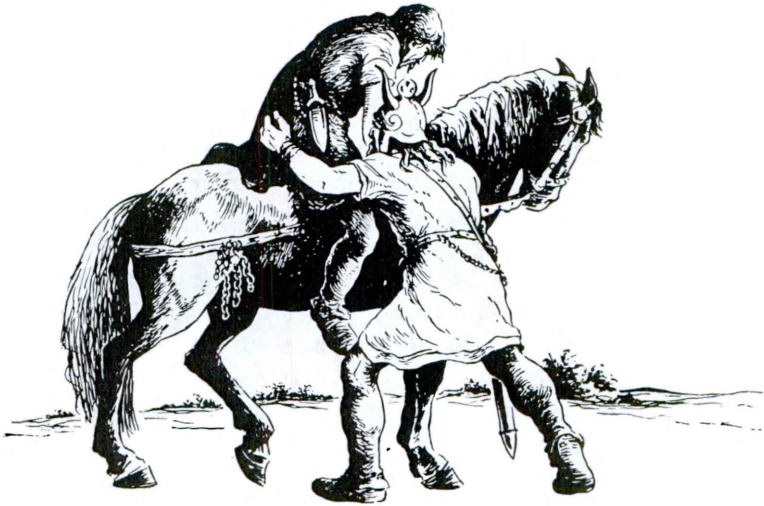
1. They are asking whether you remember the victories of the American soldiers. 2. Do you know who is the commander in chief of the American army? 3. We know whom the Christians praise. 4. I ask whether the Gauls captured Rome. 5. Do you know who Caesar was? 6. Will you ask whether the lieutenant has led back the first legion? 7. He asked how many men were in the winter quarters. 8. Caesar asked how many attacks the legion had withstood. 9. We asked whether you had seen Rome.

EXERCISE 31

[Review]

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Deum *laudēmus*. 2. *Locō* aliēnō *nē* pugnent. 3. *Utinam* veniās. 4. Injūriam *nē* faciat. 5. *Adjuvet* Deus miserōs. 6. Impetum fortiter *faciant*. 7. Vīta servōrum brevis saepe fuit et *dolōrum* plēna.



LUCIUS SENDS HIS BROTHER BACK TO THE ROMAN CAMP

DĒ LŪCIŌ, VIRŌ FORTĪ

Quondam¹ Rōmānī et Aquītānī, Rōmānōrum amīcī, cum Germānīs bellum gerēbant. Agmen Rōmānum iter faciēbat. In locum difficilem et angustum vēnit. Tum Germānī, hominēs barbarī et fortēs, impetum in agmen Rōmānum fēcērunt. Aliēnō locō Rōmānī pugnābant atque magnum erat periculum. Centuriōnēs tamen virtūtem mīlitum cōfirmābant. “Fortiter pugnēmus! In aciē firmī maneāmus! Nē barbarīs cēdāmus!”

Inter ducēs Aquītānōrum erat Lūcius, vir firmus et fortis. Etiam Lūcius mīlītēs ad proelium incitābat: “Nē fugiāmus; gladiīs rem gerāmus; barbarōs repellāmus, reprimāmus, vincāmus!”

Tamen, mīlītēs propter vulnera et propter magnum hostium numerum impetum diūtius nōn sustinuērunt. Itaque Rōmānī fūgērunt. Cum Rōmānīs etiam Lūcius fugiēbat. Servī autem ad Lūcium contendēbant. “Germānī frātrem capiunt! In castra re-

¹ quondam, adv., once.

dūcunt!" Lūcius diūtius nōn fugit. In hostēs equum¹ incitābat; armīs hostēs terruit atque reppulit. Frāter plūrima vulnera habēbat. Itaque Lūcius frātrem in equō¹ sēcum² posuit atque fūgit. Equus¹ tamen nōn satis valēbat.³ Itaque frātrem solum⁴ in equō¹ posuit et equum¹ ad castra Rōmāna incitāvit. Ipse⁵ in proeliō mānsit et Germānōs exspectāvit. Hostēs celeriter ad Lūcium contendērunt. Et Germānī et Lūcius ācriter pugnāverunt. Lūcium gladiīs tēlisque occidērunt. Frātrem servāverat; ipse⁵ mortī magnā cum virtūte sē⁶ trādidit. Fortūna bellī nōn semper fortibus salūtem dat.

Quaerō num Lūcius vir fortis atque firmus fuerit. Quaerō num virtūtem Lūciī laudētis.

¹ *equus, ī, horse.*

² *sēcum: with himself.*

³ *satis valēbat: was . . . strong enough.*

⁴ *sōlus, a, um, alone.*

⁵ *ipse: he himself.*

⁶ *sē: himself; object of trādidit.*

LESSON 6: PERSONAL PRONOUNS

VOCABULARY

(Pronouns and adjectives of the first and second persons, personal, possessive, and reflexive)

ego, meī	<i>I (pl., we)</i>
tū, tuī	<i>you</i>
meus, a, um	<i>{ my mine</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum	<i>{ our ours our own</i>
tuus, a, um	<i>{ your (of one person) yours your own</i>
vester, vestra, vestrum	<i>{ your (of more than one yours person) your own</i>

(Pronouns of the third person, personal and possessive)

is, ea, id	<i>{ he (pl., they) she it</i>
ējus	<i>{ his her hers its of him, etc.</i>
eōrum, eārum	<i>{ their of them, etc.</i>

(Reflexive pronoun and adjective of the third person)

suī	{ himself (<i>him</i>) herself (<i>her</i>) itself (<i>it</i>) themselves (<i>them</i>)
suus, a, um	{ his (<i>own</i>) her (<i>own</i>) its (<i>own</i>) their (<i>own</i>)

(Other words)

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, 3, tr.	take back
with a reflexive pronoun	{ withdraw recover
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, 3, tr. ¹	{ give up devote surrender
abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, 3, tr. ¹	{ hide conceal

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Proud men are often *egotistical*. *Reception*.

NOTE

In Latin many verbs may be used with a reflexive pronoun where we use the verb alone or a different idiom in English.

Militēs in castra sē recēpērunt. The soldiers withdrew into the camp.

Militēs sē ex timōre recēpērunt. The soldiers recovered from their fear.

Tē ex timōre recipiēs. You will recover from your fear.

Hostēs sē Caesarī dēdidērunt. The enemy surrendered to Caesar.

Mē Caesarī dēdidī. I surrendered to Caesar.

Servī sē in silvīs abdidērunt. The slaves hid in the woods.

¹ This verb *always* takes an object in Latin.

- ASSIGNMENT:** 1. GRAMMAR 123-126.
 2. GRAMMAR 128-130; 132; 479.
 3. GRAMMAR 127; 131-132; 800-804.

1. PRONOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

EXERCISE 32

Translate:

1. to me	7. of me
2. for you	8. on account of your courage
3. on your behalf	9. to my friends
4. with you (<i>pl.</i>)	10. with me
5. without us	11. you (<i>acc. pl.</i>)
6. us	12. in your city

EXERCISE 33

Translate:

1. Dominus vōbīscum (sit); et cum spīritū tuō. 2. Pāx vōbīscum. 3. Deus det vōbīs grātiā et pācem. 4. Veniat rēgnū tuū. 5. Deus tēcū sit. 6. Post principū caedem nōs in montibus abdidimus. 7. Milītēs nostrī prō nōbīs atque nostrā lībērtāte pugnāvērunt. 8. Vestrī amīcī firmī atque fortēs sunt. Itaque vōs adjuvābunt. 9. Num dēdēmus nōs hostibus? 10. Quis tē in periculīs adjuvābit? Chrīstus tē adjuvābit. 11. Imperātor tibi propter tuās victōriās atque magnā tuā virtūtem magnā praeemia dabit. 12. Quaesivit num milītēs nōs vīdissent. 13. In locū tūtū nōs recēpimus.

2. IS, EA, ID

When *is, ea, id* is used as the third personal pronoun, it follows rule No. 479 in *LATIN GRAMMAR*, and so must agree with its antecedent in *GENDER* and *NUMBER*. Note, therefore, that the English will sometimes have *it* where the Latin pronouns must be masculine or feminine:

Rome is a well-known city. We praise it.

Rōma est urbs nōbilis. Eam laudāmus.

The hill was high. The Romans captured it.

Collis altus erat. Eum Rōmānī cēpērunt.

EXERCISE 34

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Quaerō num Rōma urbs magna sit. Ego enim *eam* nōn vīdī.
 2. Suntne montēs altī in nostrīs finibus? Vīdistīne *eōs*? 3. Caesar erat imperātor magnus et fortis. Rōmānī propter victōriās *ējus cum* laudāvērunt. 4. Cōsulēs et senātus Rōmānus magnam auctōritātem etiam apud gentēs aliēnās habēbant. Ad *eōs* omnēs gentēs legātōs mīsērunt. 5. Mariā, mater Dei, grātiā erat plēna. Itaque *eam* omnēs Chrīstiānī laudant atque nōmen *ējus* nōbile est.

EXERCISE 35

Translate:

1. The Gauls were brave. Caesar, however, pacified them and seized their fields and towns. 2. The Romans led Christ to death on account of the Jews, for Pilate feared them and their leading men. 3. The Romans defended Rome bravely. The Gauls, however, captured and burned it. 4. Our state is great and free. We shall always defend it. 5. Very many Romans praised Caesar. I ask whether God praised him and his victories. 6. By the grace of God Mary is our mother. We are her sons. Let us praise her.

3. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of the same sentence.

Caesar often praised himself.

Shall we praise ourselves?

Caesar asked whether they would defend him.

Himself, *ourselves*, and *him* are pronouns because they stand for *Caesar* and *we*. They are reflexives because they refer to the subjects of their sentences.

When a reflexive pronoun refers to the subject in the same CLAUSE it is called a DIRECT REFLEXIVE:

Caesar often praised himself.

Shall we praise ourselves?

He asked whether they would defend themselves.

Himself and *ourselves* are direct reflexives because they refer to the subject in the SAME main clause.

Themselves is a direct reflexive because it refers to *they*, which is the subject in the SAME subordinate clause.

When a reflexive pronoun in a subordinate clause refers to the subject of the main clause, it is an INDIRECT REFLEXIVE.

Caesar asked whether they would defend him.

We asked whether Caesar praised us.

Him and *us* are INDIRECT reflexives because they are in the SUBORDINATE clause, but refer to *Caesar* and *we*, which are the subjects of the main clause.

EXERCISE 36

Pick out the reflexive pronouns, direct and indirect:

1. We pray that God will help us. 2. Some people work only in order that others may praise them. 3. He praised me. 4. We

shall defend ourselves. 5. Caesar blamed them. 6. You will defend your honor.

EXERCISE 37

[Direct Reflexives, Third Person]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Cohortēs *sē* dēfendēbant. 2. Gallī agrōs atque urbēs *suās* firmīs praesidiīs dēfendēbant. 3. Cōsul obsidēs *sēcum* dūxit. 4. Barbarī prō libertāte *suā* hostēs fortiter reppulērunt. 5. Barbarī *sē* in silvis abdidērunt. 6. Rōmānī bellum cum gentibus *sibi* proximīs gessērunt. 7. Principēs barbarōrum cōpiās *suās* in silvās saepe redūxērunt. 8. Imperātor *suīs* praemia propter virtutem dedit. 9. Gallī *sē* *suaque* omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. 10. Num Caesar *sē* laudāvit? 11. Legiōnēs propter timōrem *sē* in oppidum recēpērunt. 12. Nōne imperātōrēs nōbilēs *suos* laudant? 13. Maria Filium *suum* laudāvit. 14. Lēgātus nuntium dē periculō *suō* ad Caesarem mīsīt. 15. Cohortēs castra *sua* mūnīvērunt. 16. Legiō signum *suum* fortiter dēfendēbat.



"MEA OMNIA MECUM PORTO"

EXERCISE 38

[Indirect Reflexives, Third Person]

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

Warning. Not all pronouns here are indirect reflexives.

1. Scīvitne Pilātus cūr Jūdaēi Chrīstum *sibi* trādidissent? 2. Rogāvit num lēgātus litterās dē classis periculō ad *sē* mīsisset. 3. Sānctus Paulus scīvit quantō dolōre Chrīstus Caelum *sibi*¹ aperuisset. 4. Caesar rogāvit num hostēs *suos* terrērent. 5. Barbarōrum dux quaesīvit num Rōmānī *sē* in aciem recēpissent. 6. Caesar quaesīvit cūr *suī sē* in oppidum recēpissent. 7. Postea hostēs *sē* in montibus abdidērunt.

EXERCISE 39

[Direct Reflexives, Third Person]

Translate:

1. They defended themselves. 2. He praised his men. 3. All men praise their own states. 4. Mary neither praised nor defended herself. 5. The cohort defended itself bravely. 6. Mary praised her own Son.

EXERCISE 40

[Indirect Reflexives, Third Person]

Translate:

1. He asked who had defended him. 2. They know who is attacking them. 3. She asks whether we praise her. 4. The legion knew that Caesar had defended it. 5. Caesar asked whether they had seen his cavalry. 6. Mary knows whether we praise her Son. 7. The legion asks whether we know its leader. 8. The Gauls asked whether the consul had killed their hostages.

¹ In good Latin the indirect reflexive of the third person is sometimes grammatically ambiguous. The exact reference must be determined from the meaning.

EXERCISE 41

[Comprehensive Drill on Pronouns]

Translate, expressing all the italicized pronouns:

1. *I* shall warn the Senate. 2. Mary is God's mother and *my* mother. 3. Who will come with *me*? 4. We Christians praise the Holy Spirit. 5. *We* Americans have not waged many wars with the nations next to *us*. 6. God will give *us* all grace. 7. Do *you* ask whether Christ came into the world for *our* salvation? 8. *We* shall not withdraw into the camp. 9. The roads are good. The Romans constructed *them*. 10. *They* pitched camp. The soldiers fortified *it*. 11. *She* is the mother of God. 12. They defended *themselves* with great courage. 13. *We* praise Christ and Mary, *His* mother. *She* was holy. God gave *her* a great reward. All holy men will see *her* and *her* Son in heaven. They will all pray with *her* for *us*. 14. Holy men pray both for *themselves* and for *us*. 15. God is in *us* by grace. 16. You were fighting on your own behalf.¹ 17. We shall not surrender to the barbarians. 18. *You* praise *your* mother don't you? 19. Caesar knew in how much danger *his* men were. 20. *They* surrendered to Caesar after the slaughter of *their* leaders. 21. Caesar killed the barbarians after the death of *their* leaders. 22. The new cohort withdrew into the city. 23. *They* hid in the forest. 24. The commander in chief had many lieutenants with *him* in Gaul. 25. They asked whether the centurion had sent Caesar a message about *their* danger.

Honōrā² patrem tuum et mātrem tuam.

—The Fourth Commandment

¹ *Warning.* Before translating change to *for yourselves*.

² Honōrā: *Honor* (imperative).

Ignōta¹ enim erat ante Chrīstī adventum via vītae.

—*The Roman Breviary*

IN CASTRĪS RŌMĀNĪS

[A Problem in Conduct]

SCENE I: In castrīs Rōmānīs. Nōn multae cohortēs castra tenent. Abest Caesar. Undique audīmus clāmōrem hostium. Undique hostēs in Rōmānōs tēla et pīla jaciunt. Rōmānī tamen fortiter impetum sustinent; hostēs repellunt atque rejiciunt. Omnēs ferē mīlitēs Rōmānī vulnera habent.

MILES. Magnus numerus hostium est. Nōs nōn multī sumus. Undique in nōs tēla jaciunt. Nōs aut occīdent aut capient.

CENTURIO. Spem in virtūte pōnēmus. Usque ad mortem pugnēmus. Sciet Caesar quantā cum virtūte pugnāverīmus.

MILES. Spem nōn habēmus. Etiam magnae Germānōrum cōpiae trāns flūmen venient. Nuntiōs ad Caesarem saepe mīsimus sed ad eum nōn pervēnērunt. Gallī equitēs nostrōs aut cēpērunt aut occīdērunt. Caesar longē abest. Auxilium ad nōs nōn mittet neque nōs in prōvinciam redūcet.

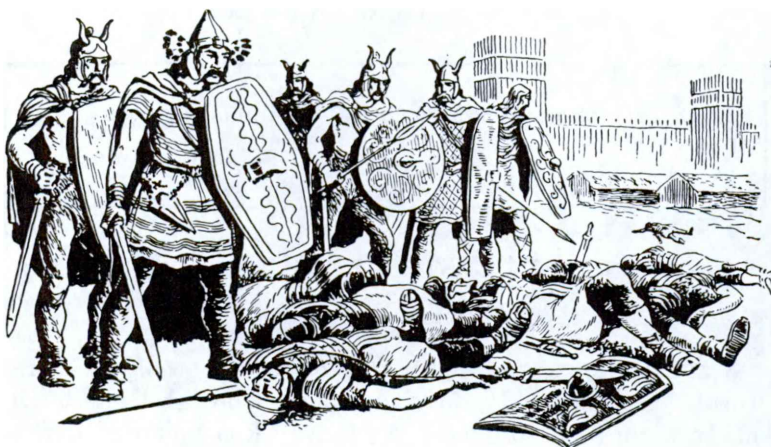
SCENE II: The same. Several hours have passed. Darkness is beginning to come on. Only a handful of weary and wounded men fight on at the palisade.

MILES. Castra diūtius nōn tenēbimus.

MILITES. Num nōs nostrarque signa hostibus dēdēmus?

CENTURIO. Spēs salūtis nōbīs nōn est. (*By now the scene is almost completely dark.*) Nōn multī sumus. Caesar cum cōpiīs

¹ ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*.



“ROMANORUM CEPIMUS CORPORA!”

integrīs nōn veniet. Primā lūce hostēs impetum facient atque nōs capient. Quid faciēmus?

MILITES. Nōs nōn capient!

(*Omnēs sē occidunt.*)

SCENE III: In castrīs Rōmānīs. Primā lūce hostium clāmōrem audīmus. Hostēs castrīs appropinquant. In castra veniunt vident-que corpora.

HOSTIUM DUX. Rōmānōrum cēpimus corpora!

— FINIS —

Respondē Anglicē:

1. Cūr Rōmānī sē occidērunt? 2. Num propter id eōs laudā-
mus? 3. Num milītēs Chrīstiānī sē occidunt? 4. Cūr Chrīstiānī
sē nōn occidunt?

LESSON 7: INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND OF -IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD; *EX, DĒ, AB*

VOCABULARY

dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hurl down} \\ \text{cast down} \end{array} \right.$
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bring together} \\ \text{collect} \\ \text{force} \end{array} \right.$
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{leave} \\ \text{leave behind} \end{array} \right.$
dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{divide} \\ \text{separate} \end{array} \right.$
fuga, ae	<i>flight</i>
in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus, 1, tr.	<i>put to flight</i>
ex (ē), prep. w. abl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{out of} \\ \text{from} \end{array} \right.$
dē, prep. w. abl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{down from} \\ \text{out of} \\ \text{from} \\ \text{concerning (about)} \end{array} \right.$
ab (ā), prep. w. abl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{by (agent)} \\ \text{away from} \\ \text{from} \end{array} \right.$

NOTE

The forms *ā* (for *ab*) and *ē* (for *ex*) are never used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*. The form *abs* (for *ab*) is sometimes used before *tē*.

Notice the use of *fugā*, *in flight* or *by flight*:

Barbarī fugā salūtem petīvērunt.
The barbarians sought safety in flight.

Barbari fugā silvās petivērunt.

The barbarians sought (made for) the forest in flight.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Cogent ; dejected ; reliquary ; dividend ; fugitive.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Jaciō ; fugiō.

WORD STUDY

PROBLEMS: 1. If *ē* means *out of*, what does *ēdūcō* mean?
2. If you know the English word *fugitive*, and the Latin words *fuga* and *fugiō*, what do you think *fugitivus*, *ī* means?

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 243-266 ; 322-324 ; 330.

EXERCISE 42

[Cumulative Review]

Translate :

A.

1. Dējiciuntur. 2. Cōguntur. 3. Relinquitur. 4. Dīviditur.
5. Pācātur. 6. Redūcuntur. 7. Dūcuntur. 8. Remittuntur.
9. Jaciuntur. 10. Pellitur.

B.

1. Militēs dē mūrō dējiciēbantur. 2. Obsidēs in castra cōgēbantur. 3. Praesidium ibi relinquēbātur. 4. Cōpiae hostium dīviduntur. 5. Gallia pācābātur. 6. Legiō redūcēbātur. 7. Cōpiae ex hibernīs dūcēbantur. 8. Litterae ad Caesarem remittēbantur. 9. Tēla undique jaciēbantur. 10. Hostēs in silvās pellēbantur.

C.

1. Militēs nostrī dē mūrō vallōque tēlis hostium dējectī sunt.
2. Obsidēs ex oppidīs Gallōrum in castra Rōmāna coāctī sunt.

3. Praesidium in castris ā Caesare relictum est. 4. Cōpiae hostium ā duce in multās partēs divīsaē sunt. 5. Omnēs Galliae gentēs caede et armīs pācātaē sunt. 6. Legiō ex silvis in castra ā Caesare reducta est. 7. Equitēs ex prōvinciā in hostium finēs ā lēgātō ductī sunt. 8. Obsidēs ex castris ad urbem remissī sunt. 9. Multa tēla ex castris hostium in nostrōs jacta sunt. 10. Hostēs ā vallō tēlis pilisque repulsī sunt.

EXERCISE 43

1. *Translate;*

2. *Change the tenses for drill and repeat the entire Latin sentence:*

(*The first sentence shows how the verbs are to be changed.*)

1. They are being led out of the camp. [They were being led out of the camp. They will be led out of the camp. They have been led out of the camp. They were led out of the camp. They had been led out of the camp.] 2. They are being driven back from the river. 3. He is being sent away from the camp. 4. I am being warned. 5. The javelins are being thrown against the enemy. 6. We are being sent back from the hill. 7. They are being led back into the province. 8. They are being hurled down from the wall. 9. They are being left in the winter quarters.

EXERCISE 44

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the precise use and meaning of the italicized prepositions:*

1. Helvētiī *dē* finibus suis ā principibus ductī sunt. 2. Barbarī *dē* colle *in* nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. 3. Nuntii *dē* lēgātī periculō *ad* Caesarem missī sunt. 4. Centuriōnēs *dē* mūrō sē dējēcērunt. 5. Multī *dē* nostris occīsī sunt. 6. Equitēs ā flūmine fūgērunt. 7. Hostēs *ab* equitibus *in* fugam datī sunt. 8. Castra hostium ā nostris castris longē aberant. 9. Barbarī *ex* flūmine veniēbant. 10. Equitēs sē *ex* fugā recēpērunt. 11. Legiōnēs sē *in* locum tūtum recēpērunt. 12. Plūrimī equitēs *ex* proeliō fūgērunt. 13. Dux *ex*

itinere oppidum oppugnāvit. 14. *Ab* urbe fugit. 15. *Ex* oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. 16. Suntne Germānī longē *ā* finibus nostrīs? 17. Mīlitēs sē *ex* timōre recēpērunt.

JŪSTITIA¹ OMNIBUS

(Motto of the District of Columbia)

EXERCISE 45

Translate:

1. The cohorts sought safety in flight. 2. The enemy was hurled down from the hill by the cavalry. 3. The forces were being divided by the consul. 4. He was cast down from the rampart. 5. Afterwards they withdrew from the battle line and hid in the mountains. 6. He marched down from the high mountain and stormed the town. 7. A garrison was left behind in the town by Caesar. 8. Forces were being collected in the forest and arms were being prepared. 9. A council was brought together by the leader. 10. The fresh forces were led out of the province by the lieutenant. 11. The barbarians recovered from their fear. 12. Afterwards he led the first legion back to Italy. 13. Grain and arms were being carried out of the town into the camp. 14. They pitched camp in a suitable place. 15. They were far from the camp of the barbarians. 16. A message was sent back from the first battle line. 17. They asked whether the enemy had been driven out of the territory of the Gauls. 18. All Gaul was pacified by Caesar. 19. The cavalry was driven back from the river. 20. He led his men away from the enemy's camp. 21. The column was coming out of the river. 22. Javelins were being hurled down on the enemy from the rampart. 23. A letter was being sent by the commander in chief to the consuls concerning a serious affair. 24. Not many of the soldiers withdrew from the battle. 25. Caesar was far away from his men.

¹ jūstitia, ae, justice.

EXERCISE 46

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the tenses of the subjunctive:*

1. They asked whether the soldiers had withdrawn from (their) flight. 2. The consuls ask whether troops have been collected by the commander in chief. 3. You asked whether the soldiers were seeking safety in flight. 4. I ask who are being left in the city.

EX LITTERĪS SĀNCTĪ PAULĪ

St. Paul begins his First Epistle to Timothy thus:

Paulus, apostolus¹ Jēsū Chrīstī, secundum² imperium Deī Salvātōris³ nostrī, et Chrīstī Jēsū speī nostrae, Timotheō,⁴ dilēctō⁵ filiō in fide: grātia, misericordia⁶ et pāx ā Deō Patre, et Chrīstō Jēsū Dominō nostrō.

Our religion has come to us from the East, from Palestine. From the West, Rome, we received the basis of our legal systems. This is summed up in the epigram:

Ex oriente⁷ LŪX

Ex occidente⁸ LĒX

¹ apostolus, ī, *apostle*.

² secundum, prep. w. acc., *according to*.

³ salvātor, salvātōris, *savior*.

⁴ Timotheus, ī, *Timothy*.

⁵ dilēctus, a, um, *beloved*.

⁶ misericordia, ae, *mercy*.

⁷ oriēns, orientis, *the east* (cf. oriental).

⁸ occidēns, occidentis, *the west* (cf. occidental).

LESSON 8: *HIC, IS, ILLE*

VOCABULARY

<i>hic, haec, hoc</i>	<i>this (pl., these)</i>
<i>is, ea, id</i>	<i>{ that (pl., those)</i> <i>{ he, she, it, they, etc.</i>
<i>ille, illa, illud</i>	<i>{ that (pl., those)</i> <i>{ he, she, it, they, etc.</i>
<i>causa, ae</i>	<i>{ cause</i> <i>{ reason</i>
<i>causā, preceded by gen.</i>	<i>for the sake of</i>
<i>ratio, rationis</i>	<i>{ method</i> <i>{ reason</i> <i>{ plan</i> <i>{ way</i>
<i>diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctus, 3, tr.</i>	<i>love</i>
<i>contrā, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>{ against</i> <i>{ opposite</i>

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Man is a *rational* animal. What is the *cause* of an eclipse of the moon? Communism and democracy are *contradictory* political positions.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 128; 133-135; 464; 479; 790-797.

NOTE

The preposition *dē* when used with *causā* means *for, on account of*.

Hāc dē causā, for this reason.

You now know the following meanings for *dē*:

<i>dē, prep. w. abl.</i>	{	<i>down from</i>
		<i>out of</i>
		<i>from</i>
		<i>concerning (about)</i>
		<i>for (w. causā)</i>

EXERCISE 47

1. *Supply the correct form of hic, is, ille, in succession;*

2. *Translate:*

1. reī causa	11. in itinere
2. per prōvinciam	12. ad hominem
3. propter rem	13. in castra
4. prō urbe	14. ex locō
5. dē causā	15. dē montibus
6. trāns flūmen	16. ex agrīs
7. post bellum	17. dē rē
8. propter victōriam	18. ab locō
9. sine virō	19. cum rēge
10. cum amīcō	20. cum centuriōnibus

EXERCISE 48

1. *Put these phrases in the genitive and dative cases;*

2. *Translate:*

1. Hoc (illud, id) praesidium. 2. Haec (illa, ea) crux. 3. Hic (ille, is) cōsul. 4. Haec (illa, ea) classis. 5. Haec (illa, ea) causa. 6. Hic (ille, is) timor. 7. Hoc (illud, id) pīlum.

EXERCISE 49

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. *Haec* cīvītās nostra est; *hī* agrī atque *hae* urbēs nostrae sunt. Itaque prō *hāc* cīvītātē fortiter pugnābimus atque *hōs* agrōs et *hās* urbēs semper dēfendēmus. 2. Equitēs in fugam datī sunt. *Hī* autem sē ex timōre recēpērunt atque in aciem ā Caesare remissī

sunt. 3. Et Hannibal et Caesar magnās cōpiās in aliēnōs finēs glōriāe causā dūxērunt. *Hic* omnem Galliam pācāvit; *ille* autem ā Rōmānīs victus est. 4. Barbarī obsidēs inter sē dabant et dē bellī ratiōne agēbant. Hāc dē causā Caesar legiōnēs contrā eōs dūxit. *Illī* autem lēgātōs dē pāce ad eum mīsērunt et sē suaque omnia eī dēdīdērunt. 5. Deus est pater noster. Itaque eum omnī ratiōne diligāmus. 6. Militēs in agrōs frūmentī causā remīsīt. Contrā eōs autem equitēs hostium missī sunt. Hāc dē causā illī sē in castra celeriter recēpērunt. 7. Equitēs Rōmānī nōbīs appropinquant; legiōnēs autem in castrīs ā Caesare continentur. Itaque equitēs contrā illōs mittāmus, nam hae propter timōrem ē castrīs nōn venient. 8. Absuntne Germānī longē ab hīs nostrīs finibus? 9. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinuit. 10. Italia ā Galliā altīs montibus dividitur. 11. Erat in Galliā prōvincia Rōmāna. Ab hāc prōvincia Belgae longē aberant. 12. Montēs altī Italiam ā Galliā dīvidunt.

EXERCISE 50

Translate:

1. The horsemen were put to flight, but the legions remained on that hill and repelled every attack. To these therefore the general gave a reward, but to those rewards were not given. 2. The Americans sent troops into France¹ and drove the Germans back into Germany.² For this reason a large supply of arms was sent to those troops. After this war many of³ those soldiers remained longer in France.¹ 3. Caesar sent troops into the fields for the sake of grain. Against them the leader of the enemy sent cavalry. 4. God loves all men. For this reason let us also love them. 5. For the sake of peace let us in every way strengthen friendship among men and nations. 6. The Gauls and the Germans waged war with Caesar. The latter he drove back across the river, the former he conquered and pacified. 7. For this reason he pitched camp opposite the Germans.

¹ France, Gallia, ae.

² Germany, Germānia, ae.

³ of, dē, prep. w. abl.



"NONNE FORTIS EST?"

DĒ MĀTRIBUS

Omnēs puerī interdum¹ malī sunt. Tamen mātērēs filiōs suōs laudant, aliēnōs filiōs saepe nōn laudant. Cūr ita agunt?

EXERCISE 51

[Vocabulary Review]

Give one English meaning for:

1. vīvō	5. quot	9. idōneus
2. aperiō	6. classis	10. proximus
3. quō (<i>adv.</i>)	7. auctōritās	11. sciō
4. reprimō	8. incolō	12. timor

¹ interdum, adv., *occasionally*.

LESSON 9: SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND OF -IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD; PURPOSE CLAUSES

VOCABULARY

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfec- tus, 3, tr.	<i>kill</i>
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, 3, tr.	<i>{ lead to induce influence</i>
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspeḡ, cōnspec- tus, 3, tr.	<i>{ observe perceive</i>
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, 3, tr.	<i>{ accomplish finish exhaust</i>
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, 3, tr.	<i>{ receive take</i>
facilius, comp. adv.	<i>more easily</i>
ut, conj.	<i>{ that in order that (in purpose clauses)</i>
nē, conj.	<i>{ that . . . not in order that not (in neg- ative purpose clauses)</i>
quō, conj.	<i>{ that in order that (in purpose clauses containing a comparative adverb or adjective)</i>

NOTE

Explain the meanings of **addūcō, dēdūcō, accipiō (ad + capiō)** from their composition.

PROBLEM: What would *adjiciō* (cf. *dējiciō*) mean?

ASSIGNMENT: 1. GRAMMAR 267-282; 325-326; 330.

2. GRAMMAR 546-547 (omit relative clauses).

EXERCISE 52

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Obsidēs ad Caesarem addūcunt *ut* hāc ratiōne pāx cōnfirmētur. 2. Firmīs praesidiīs omnēs viās tenēbant *nē* illa nova legiō per montēs in Galliam dēdūcerētur. 3. Praesidia firma plūrimīs locīs collocāvit *quō* facilius prōvincia dēfenderētur. 4. Ē proeliō mīles malus fūgit *nē* vulnera acciperet. 5. Dux castra fossā vallōque mūnivit *nē* mīlitēs impetū hostium interficerentur. 6. Multās legiōnēs integrās in Galliam sēcum dūxit *ut* hoc bellum celeriter cōnfigerētur. 7. Per silvās equitēs dēdūcit *nē* ab hostibus cōnspiciātur. 8. Erantne illī mīlitēs fortēs? Nōn erant, nam in locum tūtum *sē* ē proeliō recēpērunt *nē* interficerentur. Itaque illis praemium *nē* dētur. 9. Ab omnibus Deus omnī ratiōne et semper diligātur! 10. Scīsne num nostrī itinere et vulneribus cōnfectī sint? 11. Illum centuriōnem rogāvit num multa vulnera ā suis acceptae essent. 12. Illum servum rogāvit quō cōpiae ā hostibus dēductae essent. 13. Quaerō abs tē num omnēs hominēs glōriā addūcantur. 14. Et fossa et vallum celeriter cōnficiantur! 15. *Nē* interficiātur! 16. Post proelium rogāvit num litterae dē illō proeliō acceptae essent. 17. *Nē* cōnspiciāmur! Celeriter in silvās nōs abdāmus! 18. Tribūnus mīlitum rogāvit num aciēs hostium ab equitibus cōnspecta esset.

Timeat Dominum omnis terra.

—The Roman Breviary

EXERCISE 53

[Drill on Subjunctive Forms]

1. *Translate, changing verbs in the subordinate clauses to include all those shown in parentheses;*
2. *Change the subordinate clause to the active and translate:*

1. We asked whether they had been killed (received, exhausted, led away, observed, influenced, pacified, captured, heard, helped, stationed, aroused).

2. Caesar asks whether it has been captured (finished, received, observed, held, heard, desired, attended to, prepared, preserved, given, seized, stormed, got ready).

3. We ask whether he is being held (captured, heard, killed, influenced, repulsed, exhausted, received, restrained, warned, feared, seen, dismissed).

4. Caesar asked whether it was being seized (held, captured, heard, finished, received, preserved, burned, sent, prepared, guarded, managed, given, requested, placed, handed over, fortified, conquered).

EXERCISE 54

Translate:

1. He at once attacked the column that the war might be swiftly finished. 2. They collected troops and prepared a supply of grain and arms in order that they might not be conquered and killed by the Romans. 3. This military tribune conducted fresh legions into Gaul that the winter quarters might be defended more easily. 4. He at once pitched camp in a suitable place lest his men be exhausted from the journey. 5. They led the slaves to Caesar that he might ask them how many men had been led down into the province. 6. He came to collect troops. 7. The soldiers had received many wounds and had been exhausted by the journey and the battle. For this reason their general led them away from the territory of the enemy into the Roman province. 8. Let them be led away. 9. May they not be killed. 10. He came to kill the king. 11. Let him take the letter. 12. They came to lead the

fresh legions away into Gaul. 13. May we not be killed. 14. For the sake of Christ's friendship, let us love all men. 15. Let us pitch camp opposite the city. 16. The Jews led Christ to Pilate that He might be killed. 17. Caesar often killed the hostages and leading men of a tribe to pacify it.

EXERCISE 55

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Hostem *interficiāmus*. 2. Nē *interficiāmur*. 3. Eum *nē interficiat*. 4. Nē *interficiātur*. 5. Virōs bonōs *nē interficiant*. 6. Virī malī *interficiantur*. 7. Mīles mittitur *ut puerōs interficiat*. 8. Jōsēphus cum Jēsū et Mariā *fūgit nē Jēsūs interficerētur*. 9. Jūdaei Chrīstum ad Pilātum addūxērunt *ut ā Rōmānīs interficerētur*. 10. Rogō *num Rōmānī eum interfēcerint*. 11. Rogō *ā quō interfectus sit*. 12. Scīvitne Sānctus Paulus *cūr Jēsūs interfectus esset?* 13. Scīsne *ubi Chrīstus, Deī Filius, interfectus sit?* 14. Scīvēruntne Rōmānī *quis ā sē interficerētur?*

EXERCISE 56

Give the principal parts, etc., of the Latin verbs meaning:

1. throw	5. inhabit	9. give up
2. release	6. take	10. conceal
3. beat back	7. force	11. uncover
4. restrain	8. separate	12. exhort

LESSON 10: OTHER ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION; DATIVE VERBS

VOCABULARY

diligēns (<i>gen. diligentis</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{careful} \\ \text{exact} \end{array} \right.$
audāx (<i>gen. audācis</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{daring} \\ \text{bold} \\ \text{courageous} \end{array} \right.$
ācer, ācris, ācre	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sharp} \\ \text{fierce} \\ \text{eager} \end{array} \right.$
celer, celeris, celere	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{swift} \end{array} \right.$
studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, intr.; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am eager (for)} \\ \text{strive (after)} \\ \text{am devoted (to)} \end{array} \right.$
resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, intr.; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{remain behind} \\ \text{resist} \\ \text{withstand} \end{array} \right.$
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, irreg., intr.; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am over} \\ \text{am in command of} \end{array} \right.$
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, intr.; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{harm} \\ \text{injure} \end{array} \right.$
praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, 3, tr.; w. dat. of thing of which	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{put in command of} \end{array} \right.$

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *diligent* and *studious* pupil learns to read Latin with great *celerity*. Burning sulphur has an *acrid* odor. We destroy *noxious* weeds. Caesar was an *audacious* general. The *audacity* of an attack is often the cause of its success. The *prefect* of the Sodality should be exemplary.

WORD STUDY

Many abstract nouns are formed in Latin with the ending **-tās**, thus:

liber, *free*

vērus, *true*

libertās, **libertātis**, *freedom, liberty*

vēritās, **vēritātis**, *truth*

PROBLEM: If **celer** means *swift*, what does **celeritās** mean?

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 79-82; 739-740.

EXERCISE 57

Decline:

1. vir audāx	3. mors celeris
2. proelium ācre	4. nauta dīligēns

EXERCISE 58

1. *Translate;*
 2. *Substitute the required forms of audāx, celer, ācer, dīligēns, liber, integer, and fortis for bonus and translate:*¹

1. Cum virō *bonō*. 2. Praemia puerīs *bonīs* dabimus. 3. Puer *bonus* praemium accipiet. 4. Fortūna mīlitum *bonōrum*. 5. Nau-tae *bonī* in classī sunt. 6. Praemia puerī *bonī* sunt magna. 7. Grātiās ducī *bonō* agimus. 8. Sine amīcīs *bonīs*. 9. Per servum *bonum*. 10. Rēx multōs hominēs *bonōs* interfēcit.

EXERCISE 59

Translate:

1. Kings and chiefs are often eager for glory. 2. Daring men resisted the Germans and injured them in every way. 3. Who was in command of the swift cavalry? 4. Caesar, a bold and careful leader, led the legions away into the forest; the cavalry remained behind. 5. Whom shall we put in command of our army and our

¹ If this exercise is done orally, the entire phrase or sentence should be repeated in each case.



—Ewing Galloway

A BAND OF PHILIPPINE GUERRILLAS ON MINDANAO

fleet? Will we not put an exact and courageous man in charge of them? 6. The Gauls strove after liberty, but their daring leaders and eager soldiers were conquered by the swift and daring Roman cavalry. 7. Caesar was over the Roman army, and he did harm in every way to the troops of the Gauls. 8. There were sharp battles in the forests and fields of Gaul. 9. All men are by nature devoted to liberty. Nevertheless, many wretched men are slaves. 10. We have often waged war with fierce barbarians. Our daring soldiers have bravely withstood them.

EXERCISE 60

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Caesar, vir audāx atque ācer, *exercitū* Rōmānō in Galliā praeerat. 2. Multae gentēs et *Rōmānīs* et *Germānīs* restitērunt. 3. Caesar *lēgātum* diligentem atque ācrem *legiōnī* saepe praefēcit. 4. Rogō *num* Sāncta Mariā *glōriae suae studuerit*. 5. In bellō *hostibus* omnī *ratione* nocēmus. 6. Gallī *equitātū* studēbant. 7. *Libertātis* causā *rēgibus* et *principibus* fortiter resistēmus. 8. In exercitū bonō, imperātor audāx et ācer est, equitēs celerēs sunt, centuriōnēs et tribūnī mīlitum diligentēs atque ācrēs, mīlitēs fortēs et audācēs. 9. Dux custōdēs diligentēs in omnibus portīs collocāvit. 10. Ducēs Rōmānī, virī diligentēs et ācrēs, castra *fossā* vallōque semper mūnīvērunt.

EXERCISE 61

DĒ PHILIPPĪNĒNSIBUS

Translate:

In illō magnō omnium gentium bellō, Philippīnēnsēs, hominēs audācēs et fortēs, hostibus resistēbant atque omnī *ratione* nocēbant. Multī dē illis sē in silvīs et montibus abdidērunt nē ā Japōnibus caperentur. Ex eis locis puerī et virī audācēs in oppida et urbēs clam¹ vērunt ut Japōnibus nocērent. Japōnēs custōdēs

¹ clam, adv., *secretly*.

diligentēs omnibus locīs collocāvērunt ; tamen frūmentum ā puerīs audācibus incēsum est ; centuriōnēs et militēs occīsī, arma capta, castra pontēsque incēnsī. Ita illi Japōnibus nocuērunt atque celeriter sē in silvās montēsque recēpērunt. Etiam nuntiōs dē bellī ratiōne Japōnumque cōsiliīs ad ducēs Americānōs mīsērunt. Posteā imperātor Americānus cōpiās suās in Īnsulās Philippīnās¹ redūxit. Tum illi virī audācēs militēs Americānōs omnī ratiōne adjuvābant. Tandem repulsī sunt Japōnēs atque victī.

Nōne hāc dē causā illīs virīs diligentibus et fortibus grātiās agēmus, illōsque laudābimus atque memōriā semper tenēbimus?

USE OF DATIVE VERBS IN THE PASSIVE

Intransitive verbs which take a dative object are used impersonally in the passive.

ACTIVE: *The enemy were harming the sailors.*

Hostēs nautīs nocēbant.

PASSIVE: *The sailors were being harmed by the enemy.*

(Change to: *It was being harmed to the sailors by the enemy.*)

Nautīs ab hostibus nocēbātur.

The enemy were bravely resisted by our men.

Hostibus ā nostrīs fortiter resistēbātur.

Since **praeficiō** takes an accusative object as well as a dative, it is used personally in the passive. The accusative becomes the subject and the dative remains:

ACTIVE: *They put Caesar in command of the province.*

Caesarem prōvinciae praefēcērunt.

PASSIVE: *Caesar was put in command of the province by them.*

Caesar ab eīs prōvinciae praefectus est.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 331-332 ; 741.

¹ Īnsulae (Īnsulārum) Philippīnae (Philippīnārum), *Philippine Islands*.

EXERCISE 62

A.

Translate:

1. The grain was damaged¹ by the enemy. 2. The barbarians were resisted by our men. 3. The daring lieutenant was put in command of the legion.

B.

Translate into good English:

1. Equitibus ā custōdibus ācriter resistēbātur. 2. Agrōs vastāvit ut hāc ratiōne hostibus nocērētur.

C.

Change Sentences 2, 5, and 10 of Exercise 59 to the passive and translate.

VERBA² DOMINĪ NOSTRĪ JĒSŪ CHRĪSTĪ

“Ego vēnī³ ut vītā habeant et abundantius⁴ habeant.”

Hīs verbīs² Chrīstus dē vītā grātiaē agit, nam Chrīstus nōn vēnit ut in hōc mundō facilius vīverēmus sed ut grātiā in Deō vīverēmus et Deus in nōbīs.

¹ *damage* = *harm*.

² *verbum*, *ī*, *word*.

³ *Vēnī* is here a present perfect (*I have come*); hence, it may take primary sequence, Gr. 540.

⁴ *abundantius*, comp. adv., *more abundantly*.

LESSON 11: INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS; *CUM*-TEMPORAL CLAUSES IN PAST TIME

VOCABULARY

hortor, 1, <i>tr.</i>	{ urge encourage
vereor, 2, <i>tr.</i>	fear
sequor, sequī, secūsus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ follow pursue
patior, patī, passus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ suffer allow
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, <i>intr.</i>	{ rise arise
loquor, loquī, locūsus sum, 3, <i>tr. and intr.</i>	{ talk speak
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	{ set out depart
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ advance to attack
cum, <i>conj.</i>	when

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We now understand the *sequence* of tenses. The Bible describes the *origin* of man. Salesmen are sometimes too *aggressive*. Some men say women are *loquacious*.

WORD STUDY

Aggredior is a compound of **ad** and **gradior** (*go, walk*). If you go *towards* (*ad*) an enemy, you *attack* him.

PROBLEM: If **ad** + **gradior**, means *go to*, what would **ēgre-**dior and **ingredior** mean?

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 334-335; 561.

EXERCISE 63

[Cumulative Drill]

Translate:

A.

1. Hortātur. 2. Verentur. 3. Sequuntur. 4. Patitur. 5. Oriuntur. 6. Loquēris. 7. Proficīscitur. 8. Aggredior.

B.

1. Dux suōs hortābātur. 2. Gallī cōsulem Rōmānum verēbantur. 3. Equitēs eōs celeriter sequēbantur. 4. Christus multa in cruce patiēbātur. 5. Bella saepe oriēbantur. 6. Quibuscum loquēbāris? 7. Classis proficīscēbātur. 8. Hostēs aggrediēbāmur.

C.

1. Dux cohortēs vehementer hortātus est. 2. Gallī cōsulēs Rōmānōs propter auctōritātem eōrum veritī sunt. 3. Equitēs hostēs celeriter secūtī sunt ut eōs interficerent. 4. Christus nostrae salutis causā multa in cruce passus est. 5. Bella saepe libertātis causā orta sunt. 6. Quōcum dē hāc rē locūtī estis? 7. Cōsul propter timōrem ab urbe profectus est. 8. Hostēs cum cohortibus reliquīs aggressus sum.

D.

1. Eōs hortētur. 2. Deum vereantur. 3. Statim sequantur equitēs. 4. Multōs dolōrēs utinam nē patiāminī. 5. Nē oriātur bellum. 6. Dē hāc rē gravī nē loquātur. 7. Proficīscātur. 8. Barbarōs aggrediāmur.

E.

1. Imperātor, cum suōs ad proelium hortārētur, tēlō interfectus est. 2. Rogō vōs num Deum vereāminī. 3. Equitēs, cum hostēs usque ad flūmen secūtī essent atque magnum eōrum numerum interfēcissent, in castra remissī sunt. 4. Christus, cum multōs et magnōs dolōrēs in cruce passus esset atque postea cum suis locūtus

esset, in Caelum ad Patrem receptus est. 5. Cum Caesar cum rēge Germānōrum loquerētur, equitēs Germānī celeriter appropinquāvērunt et impetum in custōdēs Rōmānōs fortiter fēcērunt. Ille autem neque captus neque interfectus est, nam milītēs Rōmānī magnā cum virtūte impetum sustinuērunt atque barbarōs rejēcērunt. Itaque Caesar in castra tūtus pervēnit. 6. Cum novum bellum in Galliā commūnis omnium salūtis ac libertātis causā ortum esset, Caesar cum cohortibus reliquīs ab urbe statim profectus est. 7. Cum barbarī agmen aggressi essent, Caesar equitēs contrā eōs mīsīt et legiōnēs in castra tūtās redūxit.

Sī¹ Deus prō nōbīs, quis contrā nōs?

—Sānctus Paulus

EXERCISE 64

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Caesar, cum dē novō bellō *audīvisset*, ab urbe profectus est. 2. Barbarī cum hiberna *aggrederentur* plūrima vulnera accēpērunt. 3. Caesar cum suōs ad proelium *hortātus esset* aciem in colle instrūxit. 4. Cum hostēs sē ex aciē *reciperent*, eōs equitēs celeriter secūtī sunt nē in castra *pervenirent*. 5. Cum Caesar in Italiam *profectus esset*, novum bellum in Galliā ortum est. 6. Cum Christus dē Sānctō corporis suī Sacramētō² *locūtus esset*, plūrimī eum reliquērunt. 7. Cum Caesar obsidēs Gallōrum *interfēcisset*, multī eum verēbantur. 8. Christus propter nōs multōs dolōrēs passus est. 9. Rogāvit *num* novum bellum *ortum esset*. 10. Pontem in flūmine fēcīt *quō* facilius illōs *sequeretur*. 11. Eōs *sequāmur*. 12. Eōs statim *aggrēdiāmur*.

¹ sī, conj., *if*.

² sacramētum, ī, *sacrament*.

EXERCISE 65

Translate:

When a new war had arisen in Gaul, Caesar set out from the city and swiftly arrived in the province. There he at once called the chiefs of the Haedui in order to strengthen their faithfulness. For the Haedui were friends of the Roman Senate and people and often helped Caesar. They gave him grain when he asked (for it) and sent cavalry to his army. When the envoys had arrived in his camp, Caesar spoke with them concerning his war¹ plans. When he had encouraged the envoys and had praised their faithfulness, he dismissed them. When they had departed, he hastened with all the cavalry into the territory of the Haedui lest they suffer the wrongs of war. He put a lieutenant in command of the legions. These swiftly followed the cavalry. When Caesar had arrived in the fields of the Haedui, the enemy did not attack them, for they feared Caesar. Therefore they withdrew swiftly into their own territory and there waited for the coming of the Roman army. Caesar did not at once pursue them but he waited for fresh troops. These were being led from Italy by a lieutenant.

Vivent nōmina eōrum in aeternum.²

—Office of the Martyrs, *The Roman Breviary*

EXERCISE 66

Give one English meaning for:

1. cupiō	5. mittō	9. aperiō
2. capiō	6. remittō	10. fugiō
3. dō	7. vīvō	11. fuga
4. dēdō	8. incolō	12. dīmittō

¹ Say of war.

² in aeternum: unto eternity, forever.

DĒ SĀNCTŌ ANDRĒAS¹ BOBŌLA

Andrĕas¹ Bobŏla, Societātis² Jĕsū sacerdos,³ per Lithuaniam⁴ ex oppidō in oppidum sē recipiēbat ut omnēs ad fidem Catholicam⁵ hortārētur. Dē grātiā Dēi et dē Christō Jĕsū cum omnibus locūtus est. Vir sānctissimus erat; hominēs omni ratiōne adjuvābat et in Christī amicitīā grātiāque cōfirmābat. Multōs schismaticōs⁶ ad vĕritātem addūxit. Neque labōribus cōfectus est neque periculīs territus est; propter nōmen Christī ad omnia parātus erat.

Hīs omnibus rēbus hostēs fidei Catholicae vehementer incitātī sunt. Itaque illum petīvērunt ut interficerent.

Cosacī,⁷ hominēs barbarī atque fidei Catholicae hostēs, in Lithuaniam contendērunt ut agrōs et oppida vastārent et Catholicōs aggredierentur. Ad oppidum quoddam⁸ pervēnērunt. Ex eō oppidō paulō antē⁹ Bobŏla profectus est. Cosacī,⁷ cum hoc audīvissent, eum celeriter secūtī sunt atque cēpērunt. Ille miser cum ad eōrum ducem adductus esset, magnōs dolōrēs propter fidem et nōmen Christī passus est. Tamen in fide firmus manēbat. Neque mortis metū neque dolōribus territus est. Itaque illī barbarī eum gladiō occidērunt atque ita Caelum Sānctō aperuērunt.

Sāncte Andrĕa, ōrā prō nobīs

¹ Andrĕas, ae, *Andrew*.

² societās, societātis, *society*.

³ sacerdos, sacerdotis, *priest*.

⁴ Lithuania, ae, *Lithuania*.

⁵ Catholicus, a, um, *Catholic*.

⁶ schismaticus, ī, *schismatic*; here a member of the Orthodox Church.

⁷ Cosacus, ī, a *Cossack*.

⁸ quīdam, quaedam quoddam, *certain*.

⁹ paulō antē: *shortly before*.

LESSON 12: COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES; *QUAM*; ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

POSITIVE DEGREE. An adjective may simply describe a noun, as :

The Gaul is brave. Gallus est fortis.

This is called the POSITIVE DEGREE of the adjective.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE. An adjective may COMPARE a noun with some other noun either expressed or understood. In this case the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of the adjective is used. In English the comparative degree is formed either by adding *-er* to the positive or by using the adverb *more* with the positive.

The Roman is braver than the Gaul.

Braver is the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of *brave*. The "other noun" (*Gaul*) is EXPRESSED.

This war is more difficult.

More difficult is the COMPARATIVE DEGREE of *difficult*. Another noun (*some other war*) is here UNDERSTOOD.

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE. An adjective may show that a noun has a quality in the HIGHEST DEGREE. In this case the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of the adjective is used. In English the superlative degree is formed either by adding *-est* to the positive or by using the adverb *most* with the positive.

The Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.

Bravest is the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of *brave*.

This war is most difficult.

Most difficult is the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE of *difficult*.

To COMPARE an adjective means to give the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees, e. g. :

COMPARISON OF FORTIS AND DIFFICILIS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
fortis, e brave	fortior, fortius braver	fortissimus, a, um bravest
difficilis, e difficult	difficilior, difficilius more difficult	difficillimus, a, um most difficult

VOCABULARY

cohortor, 1, tr.	encourage
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3, intr.	{ go forward advance proceed
dubius, a, um	{ doubtful uncertain
certus, a, um	{ certain fixed
certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; dē w. abl.	inform (lit., make (someone) more certain)
quam, adv.	than
apud, prep. w. acc.	{ among in the presence of
nihil (short form: nīl), n., indecl. noun	nothing
nihil, adv.	{ not not at all
sub, prep. w. abl.	{ under at the foot of
sub, prep. w. acc. ¹	{ under beneath up to about } of time toward }

¹ Sub is used with the accusative case whenever movement or motion is expressed; otherwise the ablative case is used.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

What is an arithmetical *progression*? We Americans are said to be extraordinarily *progressive*. Who invented the *submarine*? *Dubious*.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Hortor; **aggredior**.

WORD STUDY

Prō means *in front of, on behalf of*. When combined with other words it therefore adds the idea of *before, on behalf of, forth, or forward*. The word **gradior** means *go or walk*; **prō** + **gradior** (**prōgredior**) therefore means *to go forward*.

PROBLEM: What would **prōmoveō**, **prōmittō**, **prōpellō** mean?

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 89-98; 101-102; 777-780; 853-854; 856-857.

EXERCISE 67

[GRAMMAR 91-92]

Compare:

1. altus	7. aliēnus	12. nōbilis
2. angustus	8. ūtilis	13. dīligēns
3. cupidus	9. brevis	14. audāx
4. longus	10. commūnis	15. certus
5. sānctus	11. fortis	16. lātus
6. tūtus		

EXERCISE 68

[GRAMMAR 94-95]

Compare:

1. integer	3. miser	5. celer
2. liber	4. ācer	

EXERCISE 69

[GRAMMAR 96-98]

Compare:

1. difficilis	3. similis
2. facilis	4. dubius

EXERCISE 70

Decline:

1. Servus miserior. 2. Via difficilior. 3. Flūmen latius. 4. Praesidium firmissimum. 5. Cīvitās liberrima. 6. Agmen longissimum.

EXERCISE 71

Form the ablative singular, the neuter plural accusative, and the genitive plural of the comparatives of all adjectives in Exercises 67, 68, and 69.

NOTE

1. *Quam, than*, takes the same case after as before it.

They are braver than the Gauls.

Eī fortiōrēs sunt quam Gallī (nominative).

He said that they were braver than the Gauls.

Dīxit eōs fortiōrēs esse quam Gallōs.

2. *Certiōrem (-ēs)* is the comparative of *certus*. Literally the phrase *certiōrem facere* means *to make (someone) more certain*. *Certiōrem (-ēs)* will therefore always agree with the DIRECT OBJECT of *faciō*.

They informed Caesar.

Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt.

(Literally: *They made Caesar more certain.*)

He informed the Gauls.

Gallōs certiōrēs fēcīt.

Certiōrem (-ēs) facere may take either: (1) *dē* with the

ablative, (2) an indirect question, (3) or the accusative with the infinitive. We shall see this construction farther on.

He informed Caesar about this matter.

Caesarem dē hāc rē certiōrem fēcit.

He informed Caesar how large the forces were.

Caesarem certiōrem fēcit quantae cōpiae essent.

EXERCISE 72

[Comparative and Quam]

Translate:

1. Haec via brevior est quam illa. 2. In bellō castra sunt tūtiōra quam aciēs. 3. Mōns altior est quam collis. 4. Nihil habēmus nōbilius quam grātiā Deī. 5. Caesar audācior atque fortior quam ducēs Gallōrum fuit. 6. Nōne sāctī Chrīstō similiōrēs sunt quam plūrimī Christiānī?

Fortī et fidēlī¹ nihil difficile.

EXERCISE 73

[Ablative of Comparison]

Translate:

1. Quid virtūte nōbilius est? 2. Quid nostrā fide sāctius est? 3. Fuitne Lincoln Washingtoniō fortior? 4. Quid spē commūnius hominibus est? 5. Nihil miserius est servō dominī malī et ācris.

EXERCISE 74

Wherever possible substitute the ablative of comparison for *quam* and the nominative or accusative in Exercise 72.

¹ *fidēlis, e, faithful.*

EXERCISE 75

Translate:

(Wherever *possible* translate in two ways: using (1) *quam* and (2) the ablative of comparison.)

1. Are the marines¹ braver and more daring than our sailors?
2. Is Rome more renowned than your city? 3. Nothing is more certain than death. 4. Nothing is more doubtful than victory.
5. Is this river deeper than that? 6. Were the Romans braver than the Gauls? 7. Is this mountain higher than that? 8. Is this place more suitable for a camp? 9. Are we more free than the Romans were? 10. What is more wretched than a slave? 11. What is swifter than a jack rabbit?² 12. Was Caesar more daring than Eisenhower? 13. Is the Mississippi longer than the Rhine?³

EXERCISE 76

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Quid in bellō *magis* dubium est quam *victōria*? 2. Apud Rōmānōs *audācissimus* atque fortissimus fuit Caesar. 3. Viā *longiōre* in hostium finēs prōgressus est. 4. Nihil *morte* certius est.
5. Caesarem dē novō bellō *certiōrem* fēcērunt. 6. Gallōs dē Caesaris adventū *certiōrēs* fēcērunt. 7. Estne iter per montēs *difficilius* quam per silvās? 8. Caesar, cum suōs vehementer cohortātus esset, locō aliēnissimō sub *colle* aciem instrūxit. 9. Cum equitibus audācissimīs sub *collem* prōgressus est. 10. Caesar apud Gallōrum *prīncipēs* saepe dē rē gravissimā locūtus est. 11. Castra fossā *vallō*que mūnīvit *quō* tūtiōrēs militēs essent. 12. Imperātor rogāvit num hoc iter brevissimum *esset*. 13. Viā breviōre *prōgrediāmur*. 14. *Hortētur* militēs. 15. In proeliō militēs saepe inter spem et metum *dubii* sunt. 16. Rogō *quis sit* amicus certior quam Christus.

¹ *marines*, *classici*, *classicōrum* (cf. *classis*).

² Use *lepus*, *leporis*, m.

³ *Rhine*, *Rhēnus*, ī.

EXERCISE 77

Translate:

1. Caesar, a very daring and very brave man, often encouraged his men when the enemy was attacking them. 2. Is not Mary the holiest of all the saints? 3. The bravest soldiers do not flee from the battle line into the safest places. 4. The Gauls were most eager for liberty; they fought most bitterly for the sake of liberty but were conquered. Therefore they were very wretched. 5. The life of man is very short and often full of toil and sorrow. 6. The holiest men are most like Christ. 7. Caesar was often informed of¹ the plans of the enemy by slaves. 8. The leader of the enemy, a very daring man, drew up the battle line at the foot of the hill in a very unfavorable place. 9. The enemy advanced into a very narrow place. 10. Death is a most certain thing.

EXERCISE 78

THE FATE OF CAESAR

Translate:

Caesar made many journeys across very high mountains and very wide rivers, through the narrowest and most difficult places, into the territory of the bravest and most daring barbarians. He waged war with the bravest and most daring tribes. He fought with the swiftest cavalry and with the bravest and boldest men.

Not often did he withdraw from the battle line or into the province. He advanced bravely and swiftly into the territory of the enemy. He stormed their cities; burned their grain; killed their hostages; and captured their leading men. He pitched camp in very unfavorable places. He fought in the forest, on hills, at the foot of mountains. The most wretched Gauls feared him and, most eager for liberty and peace, fought bravely and bitterly against him to drive him and his legions out of Gaul. Victory was often most doubtful and most difficult.

¹ of: *dē*. In the passive *certior* is nominative case (*certior factus est*).

Nevertheless, Caesar was not captured; his legions were neither conquered nor driven out of Gaul into the Roman province. And when he had pacified all Gaul and had conquered all enemies, he was killed, not in a sharp and doubtful battle, but in the Roman Senate; not by fierce barbarians but by Romans. This was the wretched fortune of Caesar, a man most eager for glory.

EXERCISE 79

Give the principal parts and the meanings of:

1. aperiō	4. dō	7. dīligō
2. cupiō	5. dēdō	8. dīvidō
3. rejiciō	6. relinquō	9. cōgō

Nīl sine magnō
Vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.¹

—Horace²

¹ mortālibus: *to mortals*, i. e., *to men*.

² Quintus Horatius Flaccus, a Roman poet.

LESSON 13: RELATIVE CLAUSES; *QUI, QUAE, QUOD*; RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

VOCABULARY

quī, quae, quod	<i>who</i> <i>what</i> <i>which</i> <i>that</i>
committō, committere, commīsī, commis- sus, 3, tr.	<i>commit</i> <i>allow</i>
proelium committere	<i>to join battle</i> <i>to begin battle</i>
angustiae, angustiārum	<i>defile</i> <i>narrow place</i> <i>difficulties</i>
inquit¹	<i>he says</i> <i>he said</i>
peccātum, ī	<i>mistake</i> <i>sin</i> (in Christian Latin)
ante, prep. w. acc.	<i>before</i> (of time or place) <i>in front of</i>

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Angustus; mittō.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 139; 479; 615-618; 625 (546).

¹ *Inquit* is used with direct quotations only. It is usually placed after the first word or phrase of the quotation.

EXERCISE 80

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Legiōnēs ā *quibus* Caesar aberat nōn saepe proelium cum hostibus committēbant, nam sine imperātōre magnam victōriae spem nōn habēbant. Hostēs autem in ea hiberna *in quibus* Caesar nōn erat saepe magnā cum spē impetum faciēbant. Caesarem enim et Rōmānī laudābant et hostēs verēbantur. 2. Gallī cum Germānīs *quī* trāns flūmen incolēbant saepe proelia commīsērunt. *Hī* enim *illōrum* agrōs vastābant atque oppida incendēbant. 3. Cum proelium ante Caesaris oculōs¹ committerent, milītēs *quī* ad virtūtem praemiōrum spē incitābantur, ācritē et fortiter pugnābant. 4. Caesar cum per montēs iter faceret, in angustiīs ab eīs gentibus *quae* ibi incolēbant, premēbātur. 5. Petrus, *cui* Chrīstus imperium rēgnī suī dederat, fūgit cum milītēs Chrīstum cēpissent. 6. Omnēs ferē *quī* in hōc mundō sumus peccāta commīsimus. 7. Rōmānī *quī* in angustiīs undique continēbantur sē occidērunt nē ā barbarīs caperentur. 8. Hērōdēs milītēs mīsīt *quī* omnēs puerōs in illō oppidō *occiderent* nē Jēsūs vīveret. Jōsēphus tamen cum Jēsū et Mariā in aliēnās terrās fūgit. Cum ad eōrum oppidum milītēs *quōs* Hērōdēs mīserat pervēnissent, puerōs ante mātrum oculōs¹ occidērunt; Jēsūs autem *quem* quaerēbant longē aberat. 9. Princeps, "Dabisne," inquit, "nōbīs, *quī* inopiae angustiīs premimur, frūmentī cōpiam?" 10. Benedictus Arnold, *quī* in fide cum suis nōn mānsit, ex Americānōrum castrīs ad Britannōs sē recēpit nē ab illīs occiderētur.

EXERCISE 81

Translate:

1. Caesar began battle with the soldiers who were in the defile. 2. They killed the slave, to whom the letter had been given, in front of the camp. 3. The army which the lieutenant had led away was hard pressed by difficulties. 4. To those who follow

¹ oculus, ī, eye.

Him Christ says, "You will be in the Kingdom of Heaven." 5. On account of the mistake of the lieutenant, whom he had put in charge of the cohorts, very many were captured. 6. On account of our sins Christ, who is the Son of God, suffered deep¹ sorrows. 7. The sins which men commit are often serious. 8. The cohort which had been sent into the enemy's territory was driven into a narrow place and there conquered. 9. Caesar often burned the grain that was in the fields. 10. The slave to whom Caesar gave the dispatch before the battle was captured and killed. Therefore the Senate did not receive the message about the new war which had arisen in Gaul. 11. Before the war the tribes were preparing everything that is most useful for war. 12. The cohorts with whom Caesar advanced to the river were the bravest and boldest. 13. Caesar often burned the towns which he had taken. 14. The Gauls attacked the town in which Caesar had left the hostages. 15. The mountains across which Caesar often led his forces separate Italy from Gaul. 16. The town, out of which all had fled, was afterwards burned by Caesar. 17. The soldiers whom the enemy had forced into the defile were killed by javelins and darts. 18. Caesar, whose victories we all remember, was a very bold and very brave general.

Benedictus² quī venit in nōmine Domini.

EXERCISE 82

Use the following words in good Latin sentences, each of which contains a relative clause:

1. redūcō	4. pācō	7. quot
2. pīlum	5. idōneus	8. vīvō
3. ubi	6. rejiciō	9. reprimō

¹ Use *gravis*, *e*.

² *benedictus*, *a*, *um*, *blessed*.

DĒ ADVENTŪ GALLŌRUM

INTRODUCTION

Caesar's conquest of Gaul began in 58 B. C. Centuries before, the Gauls had invaded Italy, and the terror of that invasion remained indelibly in the memory of Rome. Before beginning Caesar's account of his own conquest, we shall read the story of this first clash between Roman and Gallic arms.

1. VENIUNT GALLI!

[391 B. C.]

Galli quī trāns Rhēnum progressī erant omnēsque Galliae agrōs occupāverant, novōrum agrōrum cupidī, per Alpēs in Italiam vēnērunt. Agrōs quī sub montibus erant occupāverunt. Tum in finēs Clūsīnōrum¹ cōpiās dūxērunt ut eōs vincerent eōrumque agrōs caperent. Clūsīnī hōc novō bellō territī sunt. Itaque lēgātōs ad Rōmānōs mīsērunt quī auxilium ab senātū peterent atque amicitiam cum populō Rōmānō cōfirmārent. Auxilium Rōmānī nōn mīsērunt sed lēgātōs, quī nōmine Senātūs Populīque Rōmānī cum Gallis dē Clūsīnōrum salūte agerent, mīsērunt. Rōmānī enim bellī cupidī nōn erant sed ad bellum amicitiae Clūsīnōrum causā erant parātī.

Illī tamen lēgātī ācriōrēs atque magis Gallis quam Rōmānīs similēs erant. Quī, cum ad Gallōs pervēnissent, in conciliō cum eīs ēgērunt. Hoc respōnsum² ā Gallis datum est:

"The Roman name is new to us, yet do we believe the Romans to be valiant fighters, since from them the Clusini have sought help in their extremity. Since the Romans have chosen to deal with us peacefully, we will not spurn the proffered peace. But unless the Clusini cede land to us, there can be no peace. If they refuse to do so, we shall fight before the eyes of the Roman envoys so that they may report our superior prowess to Rome."

¹ Clūsīnī, Clūsīnōrum, *the Clusini*, inhabitants of Clusium, an important town in Etruria.

² respōnsum, *i, answer.*

Tum Clūsīnī et Gallī proelium committēbant. Ibi lēgātī Rōmānī contrā jūs gentium¹ arma cēpērunt atque cum Clūsīnīs Gallōs aggrediēbantur. Quīntus Fabius, lēgātus Rōmānus fortissimus et nōbilissimus, ducem Gallōrum occīdit. Gallī lēgātōs Rōmānōs agnōvērunt.² Statim ē proeliō sē recēpērunt atque, cum dē hāc gravissimā rē cōsiliū cēpissent, lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum mīsērunt quī dē hāc injūriā agerent.

The Senate was greatly incensed at the action of its envoys and recognized the justice of the Gauls' complaint. Yet, for political reasons, they referred the matter to the people. The influence of the popular Fabius outweighed justice. The citizens not only rejected the Gallic demands but even elected Fabius a military tribune.

Itaque Gallī, cum ad suōs sē recēpissent, bellum contrā populum Rōmānum parābant.

Respondē Latīnē:

1. Cūr Gallī in Italiam vēnērunt? 2. In quōrum finēs cōpiās dūxērunt? 3. Cūr Clūsīnī lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum mīsērunt? 4. Mīsēruntne Rōmānī auxilium statim? 5. Cūr lēgātī Rōmānī Gallīs magis quam Rōmānīs similēs erant? 6. Quid cupīvērunt Gallī? 7. Quid contrā jūs gentium¹ commīsērunt lēgātī Rōmānī? 8. Quis ducem Gallōrum interfēcit? 9. Cūr Gallī parāvērunt bellum?

¹ jūs (jūris) gentium, the law of nations, i. e., international law.

² agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnōtus, 3, tr., recognize.

LESSON 14: IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

VOCABULARY

extrēmus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{outermost} \\ \textit{farthest} \\ \textit{last} \end{array} \right.$
superior, superius	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{higher} \\ \textit{former} \end{array} \right.$
summus, a, um	<i>highest</i>
ulterior, ulterius	<i>farther</i>
ultimus, a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{farthest} \\ \textit{last} \end{array} \right.$
medius, a, um	<i>middle</i>

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 99, 1-6, and footnote 2; 851.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Politicians frequently have *ulterior* motives. The *summits* of high mountains are snow-capped. Austria delivered an *ultimatum* to Serbia in 1914. Some crimes demand *extreme* penalties. What is an *optimist*? What is a *pessimist*? Our country has survived many *major* crises. We should all try to *ameliorate* the living conditions of the poor. Should there be *minimum*-wage laws?

EXERCISE 83

Translate:

1. Peccāta et maxima et minima relinquāmus ut ad summam virtūtem perveniāmus. 2. Caesar saepe parvō militum numerō mājōrēs cōpiās in fugam dedit, nam dux optimus maximusque fuit. 3. Multī hominēs miserī summō dolōre cōficiuntur. Prō eis ōrāmus. 4. Caesar, "Apud Helvētiōs," inquit, "longē nōbilis-

simus fuit Orgetorix." 5. Virtus amicitia melior est. 6. Cum prima a vallō sē reciperent, ultimī eīs locum nōn dabant. 7. Sancti nōn sine maximō labōre ad summam virtutem pervēnerunt. 8. Rōmānī castra locis superiōribus saepe posuerunt atque fossā vallōque mūniverunt nē hostēs in eōs impetum facile facerent. 9. Dux aciem in colle instrūxit ut ē locō superiōre in hostēs tela jacerentur. 10. Peccatum est res omnium rerum pessima. 11. Salus populi sit summa lex. 12. Caesar in Italiā fuit. Cum de novō bellō audivisset ab urbe profectus est et in Galliam Ulteriorem¹ contendit. 13. Cicerō, vir optimus diligentissimusque, multas orationes optimas habuit.² 14. Quid peccatō pejus est? 15. Fuitne Benedictus Arnold homō pessimus? 16. Fortuna Caesaris melior Cicerōnis nōn fuit. Nam et ille et hic a Rōmānīs occisi sunt. 17. Estne virtus pax melior? 18. Milites, cum a Caesare laudati essent, majore cum virtute pugnaverunt. 19. Malorum hominum et vita et mors pessimae sunt. 20. Fuitne Herodēs Pilatō peior? Ille milites misit qui Christum puerum occiderent; hic autem Christum virum ad mortem misit. 21. Quis omnium ducum optimus maximusque fuit? Caesar? Napoleon?

EXERCISE 84

Translate:

1. What is better and greater than the grace of God? 2. Caesar often conquered very large forces with smaller forces. 3. St. John³ will not be the least⁴ in the Kingdom of God. 4. The Gauls, when they joined battle with Caesar, often fought with the greatest courage; nevertheless, they were often beaten back and overcome. 5. He was the worst man of all. 6. Was Caesar the greatest of all the Romans? 7. Was this the best plan of battle? 8. He filled

¹ Gallia (ae) Ulterior (Ulterioris), *Farther Gaul*, so called to distinguish it from the region occupied by the Gauls in northern Italy. The latter was called *Hither Gaul*, Gallia Citerior.

² Habeō with oratio means *deliver*.

³ John, Jōannēs, Jōannis.

⁴ least = *smallest*.

the higher part of the hill with men. 9. We conquered them in former battles. Let us conquer them now. 10. When Caesar had overcome this tribe, messages about his victory were sent even to the farthest tribes of the Germans. 11. Caesar at once set out from Italy and swiftly arrived in Farther Gaul. 12. They held the hill and hurled javelins down from the higher position¹ onto the enemy. 13. Caesar led his forces to the farther parts of Gaul.

EXERCISE 85

[GRAMMAR 851]

Examples: in summō monte

on the top of the mountain

in mediō flūmine

*in the middle of the river**Translate:*

A.

1. Impetum in mediōs hostēs fēcērunt. 2. Equitēs nostrī in summō colle ab hostibus cōspectī sunt. 3. Summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. 4. Castra in summō colle posita erant. Militēs ē castris dūxit atque in mediō colle sub castris instrūxit. 5. Hī ex mediā caede ad Caesarem fūgērunt et eum dē illā caede certiorē fēcērunt. 6. In extrēmā ōrātiōne eōs laudāvit atque hortātus est.

B.

Warning. Use GRAMMAR 851 to translate the italicized phrases.

1. Caesar put the baggage on the *top of the hill*. The lieutenant with the fresh legions held the *middle of the battle line*. Then they joined battle, and Caesar sent the cavalry into the *midst of the enemy*. 2. The cavalry withdrew into the *middle of the column*. 3. He drew up the new legions *midway up the hill*. 4. On the *end of the bridge* he stationed very careful guards.

¹ position = place.

EXERCISE 86

[Plūs, Plūra]

Translate:

A.

1. Plūs frūmentī. 2. Plūs auctōritātis. 3. Plūs dolōris. 4. Plūs armōrum. 5. Cum plūribus centuriōnibus. 6. Ante plūrēs lēgātōs. 7. Propter plūra peccāta. 8. Propter peccāta plūrium ducum.

B.

1. Bellum plūs labōris dolōrisque quam glōriae habet. 2. Dē hāc rē plūra nōn audiam. 3. Plūrium hominum clāmor audītus est. 4. Plūribus locīs pugnābant. 5. Nōs militēs sumus et, quod plūs est, Rōmānī. Itaque impetum in mediōs hostēs sine metū faciāmus!

C.

1. The Romans requested more grain; the Gauls, however, did not have more grain. 2. Christ has more influence with¹ me than Caesar or Cicero, for Christ is the Way, the Truth, and the Life. 3. Let us give thanks to more men.

Quis plūrimum habet? Is quī omnium minimum cupit.

—Publilius Syrus

EXERCISE 87

[Review]

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Peccātum principis *plūrimīs* nocet. 2. Rogāvit num superiōrēs victōriās memoriā *tenērent*. 3. Rogat num *sē vereantur*.

¹ Use *apud*.

THANKS IN VERSE

FROM CATULLUS THE POET TO CICERO THE LAWYER

Grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
 Agit, pessimus omnium poēta,¹
 Tantō² pessimus omnium poēta,¹
 Quantō³ tū optimus omnium's⁴ patrōnus.⁵

Optima hērēditās⁶ ā patribus liberīs⁷ trāditur—glōria virtūtis
 atque rērum gestārum.⁸

—Cicero

DĒ ADVENTŪ GALLŌRUM

2. THE BATTLE OF THE ALLIA⁹

[390 B. C.]

Eīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus¹⁰ injūriīs Gallī ad bellum incitātī
 sunt. Cum omnibus cōpiīs iter ingressī sunt.¹¹ Rōmānī, cum dē suō
 periculō nuntiīs Clūsīnōrum certiōrēs factī essent, vehementer

¹ poēta, ae, m., poet, producer.

² tantō: so much, to such a degree.

³ quantō: as; parallel to tantō.

⁴ omnium's = omnium es; a colloquial contraction like our *doesn't* for *does not*.

⁵ patrōnus, ī, advocate, lawyer.

⁶ hērēditās, hērēditātis, heritage, inheritance.

⁷ liberī, liberōrum, children.

⁸ rēs (rerum) gestae (gestarum), literally, things done—a usual phrase for exploits, achievements, etc.

⁹ The Allia is a small river north of Rome.

¹⁰ dēmōnstrō, 1, tr., show, point out.

¹¹ ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum, 3, tr., go into, enter upon.

mōtī territīque sunt. Cōpiaē celeriter coāctae sunt atque ex urbe dēductae. Cum nōn longē ab urbe prōgressī essent, cōpiās hostium cōspexērunt. Tribūnī militum quī Rōmānīs praeerant neque castra posuērunt neque vallum parāvērunt. Aciem statim instrūxērunt. Gallī maximō clāmōre proelium commīsērunt. Rōmānī autem vehementer territī sunt atque statim in fugam sē dedērunt. Maxima fuit Rōmānōrum caedēs. Māior pars cōpiārum Rōmānārum Veiōs¹ contendit; minor autem pars Rōmam fugā petivit. Illī nuntium ad Rōmānōs nōn mīsērunt; hī, cum ad urbem pervēnissent, in arcem² celeriter contendērunt. Gallī tamen nōn statim eōs secūtī sunt nam īnsidiās³ verēbantur. Postea iter Rōmam celeriter fēcērunt.

THE FORGIVENESS OF SINS

Jēsūs, "Pāx vōbīs," inquit, "sicut mīsīt mē Pater et ego mittō vōs." Haec cum dixisset,⁴ insufflāvit⁵ et dixit eis: "Accipite⁶ Spīritum Sāctum. Quōrum remiseritis peccāta, remittuntur eis, et quōrum retinueritis, retenta sunt."

By this divine authority, received from Christ Himself, the Catholic Church has ever since forgiven the sins of those who repent. The following is the short formula of absolution used in emergencies by the priests of the Latin Rite.

Ego tē absolvō⁷ ab omnibus censūrīs⁸ et peccātīs, in nōmine Patris et Filii et Spīritūs Sāctī. Āmēn.

¹ Veiī, Veiōrum, *Veiī*, a city of Etruria. The accusative of names of towns is used without a preposition to express place to which, Gr. 917.

² arx, arcis, *citadel*, a fortified section in the highest parts of an ancient city, the last refuge of its defenders.

³ īnsidiae, īnsidiārum, *ambush*.

⁴ dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, 3, tr., *say*.

⁵ insufflō, 1, intr., *breathe upon*.

⁶ accipite; imperative.

⁷ absolvō, absolvere, absolvi, absolūtus, 3, tr., *absolve, free from*.

⁸ censūra, ae, *censure*.

LESSON 15: *EŌ*; ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE AND TIME

Before studying the vocabulary, answer this question:

If *eō* means *go*—what would *adeō*, *exeō*, *ineō*, *trānseō* mean?

Now you know the first five words in the vocabulary. Notice that the principal parts are alike except that the transitive verbs have **-US** in the participle while the intransitive ones have **-UM**.

VOCABULARY

<i>eō</i> , <i>īre</i> , <i>īvī</i> (<i>īī</i>), <i>itum</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>intr.</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>exeō</i> , <i>exīre</i> , <i>exiī</i> (<i>-īvī</i>), <i>exitum</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>intr.</i>	<i>go out</i>
<i>trānseō</i> , <i>trānsīre</i> , <i>trānsiī</i> (<i>-īvī</i>), <i>trān-</i> <i>situs</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>tr.</i>	<i>{ go across</i> <i>cross</i> <i>pass</i>
<i>ineō</i> , <i>inīre</i> , <i>iniī</i> (<i>-īvī</i>), <i>initus</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>tr.</i>	<i>{ go into</i> <i>enter upon</i>
<i>adeō</i> , <i>adīre</i> , <i>adiī</i> (<i>-īvī</i>), <i>aditus</i> , <i>irreg.</i> , <i>tr.</i>	<i>{ go to</i> <i>approach</i> <i>visit</i>
<i>hōra</i> , <i>ae</i>	<i>hour</i>
<i>diēs</i> , <i>diēī</i> , <i>m.</i> (<i>f.</i>)	<i>day</i>
<i>mille</i> , <i>indecl. adj.</i>	<i>thousand</i>
<i>mīlia</i> , <i>mīlium</i> , <i>noun</i> (<i>Gr. 117</i>)	<i>thousands</i>
<i>decem</i> , <i>indecl. numeral</i>	<i>ten</i>
<i>quattuor</i> , <i>indecl. numeral</i>	<i>four</i>
<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>foot</i> (of an animal, mountain, etc.; or a unit of measure)
<i>passus</i> , <i>ūs</i>	<i>a pace</i> ¹
<i>mīlle passūs</i>	<i>a mile</i> ¹

¹ A pace was 5 Roman feet; a mile was 5,000 Roman feet or 1,618 English yards, 142 yards less than our mile.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

Initial; exit; transition; transit; mile; decimal; pedestrian.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 362-365; 375-376; 761.

EXERCISE 88

[Indicative of Eō]

Translate:

1. Īvērunt. 2. Flūmen trānsiit. 3. Quis in castra īvit? 4. Cōnsilia nova ineunt. 5. Quis hāc viā exiit? 6. Ībam. 7. Propter timōrem exhibit. 8. Illa loca adībunt. 9. Quot milītēs trānsiērunt? 10. Imperātor in castra it. 11. Castra ineunt. 12. Flūmen lātissimum trānsiverant. 13. Per prōvinciam nōn trānsībunt. 14. Urbēs plūrimās adibat. 15. Hostēs iter ineunt. 16. Proelium iniērunt. 17. Novam bellī ratiōnem inībat. 18. Caelum virī sāctī inībunt.

EXERCISE 89

[Accusative of Extent of Space and Time]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Plūrimī milītēs *quattuor hōrās* īvērunt. 2. Vallum quod milītēs fēcērunt *decem pedēs* lātum erat. 3. Caesar multa *mīlia passuum* aberat. 4. Flūmen quod trānsierant *decem pedēs* altum erat. 5. *Quattuor mīlia passuum* īvērunt atque castra locō idōneō posuērunt. 6. *Quattuor diēs* impetūs hostium fortiter sustinuērunt. 7. Castra *mīlle passūs* ā flūmine aberant. 8. Ibi *decem diēs* mānsit.

EXERCISE 90

Translate:

1. They went ten miles. 2. He went into the winter quarters. 3. Caesar often crossed wide rivers. 4. They marched for four hours. 5. The bridge was ten feet wide. 6. They remained for many hours. 7. We shall visit many very large cities. 8. Caesar

visited all the towns of the province. 9. They entered upon a new plan. 10. The camp was a mile from the river. 11. The cavalry was almost four miles from the battle line. 12. The ditch was four feet wide. 13. The river was ten feet deep. 14. For four hours they resisted the enemy.

EXERCISE 91

[Subjunctive of *Eō*]1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Rogāvit quis castra *iniisset*. 2. Scīsne num flūmen *trānsierint*? 3. Rogō num hostēs iter nunc *ineant*. 4. Dux rogābat num barbarī ad castra *adirent*. 5. Viam mūniēbant *quō* facilius prōvinciam *adirent*. 6. Ōrāmus *ut* in Caelum *eāmus*. 7. Praesidia collocāvit *nē* barbarī flūmen *trānsirent*. 8. Equitēs mīsīt quī flūmen *trānsirent* et proelium cum barbarīs *committerent*. 9. *Nē* flūmen *trānseant*. 10. Utinam *exeās*. 11. *Eāmus*. 12. Ex hibernīs *exeant*. 13. Castra *nē* *ineāmus*. 14. Equitēs, cum ē silvīs *exivissent*, cum hostibus proelium commīsērunt. 15. Miles, cum ē flūmine *exiret*, tēlis interfectus est.

Ad Mājōrem Deī Glōriam

(Motto of the Jesuits)

EXERCISE 92

Translate:

1. Let us go. 2. Let them go into the city. 3. May they not go. 4. Let him not go out of the camp. 5. He made a bridge that he might more easily cross the river. 6. When they had crossed the river, they joined battle with the enemy's cavalry. 7. He knew how many men had crossed the river. 8. They asked whether Caesar had passed through this territory. 9. When they were

crossing the river, they were killed by darts and javelins. 10. He called envoys to enter on a new plan of war. 11. When they had gone four miles, they observed the enemy's battle line.

DĒ ADVENTŪ GALLŌRUM

3. THE BURNING OF ROME

[390 B. C.]

Rōmānī, cum mājor pars ex aciē Veiōs petīvissent neque nuntium Rōmam mīsissent, clāmōre dolōris plēnō urbem complēvērunt. Adventum Gallōrum sine spē expectābant. Militēs in arcem¹ sē recēpērunt ut illam defenderent. Reliquī in urbe manēbant et Gallōs expectābant.

When every disposition for the defense of the citadel was completed those who were unable to bear arms dispersed to their homes or fields and awaited the coming of the Gauls. The magistrates, clothed in the robes of their office, seated themselves on ivory chairs at the entrance to their homes. The next day the Gauls arrived, marching through the open Colline gate, gazing in wonder at the temples of the gods and the citadel on the Capitoline. Leaving a small guard to prevent a foray from the citadel, they dispersed to plunder the city. The very defenselessness and solitude overawed them, and they marveled at the grave magistrates seated in silent dignity before the open portals of their homes. One of the Gauls, in wonder and curiosity, stroked the beard of one of the magistrates; the latter, incensed at this indignity, struck the Gaul on the head with his ivory sceptre. This single act of resistance released the wild fury of the Gauls.

Tum Gallī omnēs quī in arce nōn erant occidērunt atque urbem incendērunt. Omnia caede atque clāmōre complēbantur.

¹ arx, arcis, citadel.

LESSON 16: FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

VOCABULARY

<i>diū, adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \text{ long time} \\ long \text{ (of time)} \end{array} \right.$
<i>parum, adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} little \\ too \text{ little} \end{array} \right.$
<i>parum, indecl. noun; w. gen.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} too \text{ little} \\ not \text{ enough} \end{array} \right.$
<i>satis, adv.</i>	<i>sufficiently</i>
<i>satis, indecl. noun; w. gen.</i>	<i>enough</i>
<i>tūtō, adv.</i>	<i>safely</i>
<i>multum, adv.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} much \\ greatly \end{array} \right.$
<i>facile, adv.</i>	<i>easily</i>

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 103-111; 686; 690.

NOTE

The rules for the formation of adverbs are general and do not apply in all cases. However, they will enable you to recognize an adverb in a Latin context and understand its meaning without consulting the vocabulary.

The English words used to translate the adverbs given in GRAMMAR 111 vary widely for different contexts. Keep the sense, but choose idiomatic English expressions.

EXERCISE 93

Form adverbs from these adjectives and give the meanings:

1. longus	4. diligēns	7. liber
2. brevis	5. miser	8. ācer
3. fortis	6. lātus	9. tūtus

EXERCISE 94

1. Give the comparative adjective and adverb and their meanings;
2. Give the superlative adjective and adverb and their meanings:

1. facilis	7. difficilis	13. miser
2. liber	8. brevis	14. audāx
3. ācer	9. fortis	15. bonus
4. longus	10. diligēns	16. malus
5. lātus	11. certus	17. gravis
6. celer	12. tūtus	

EXERCISE 95

1. Translate;
2. Give the comparative adverb and meaning;
3. Give the superlative adverb and meaning:

1. magnōpere	7. ācriter	13. nūper ¹
2. multum	8. diū	14. tūtō
3. diligenter	9. prope	15. facile
4. parum	10. male	16. longē
5. saepe	11. bene	17. graviter
6. liberē	12. lātē	

EXERCISE 96

Translate:

1. Dē Jēsū Christō Sāctus Lūcās, "Omnia," inquit, "bene fēcit." 2. Caesar nōn facile Galliae imperium obtinuit. 3. Caesar bellum cum gentibus Galliae diū gessit. 4. Christus, "Remittuntur," inquit, "eī peccāta multa quoniam² dilēxit multum." 5. Tūtō castra inibant. 6. Male agit quī neque Deum neque hominem diligit. 7. Gallī saepe ab equitibus Rōmānīs territī sunt. 8. Diligisne

¹ This adverb has no comparative; give only the superlative.

² quoniam = quod.

eum plūs quam mē? 9. Quis nūperrimē nostrae cīvitātī praefectus est? 10. Militēs nostrī in Bataan diūtissimē hostium impetūs sustinuērunt. 11. Gallī equitātūī maximē studēbant. 12. Diūtius nōn manēbō. 13. Virtūtem potius quam glōriam cupiāmus. 14. Plūs frūmentī Rōmānī rogāvērunt sed Gallī plūs frūmentī nōn habēbant. 15. Vir sānctus saepissimē est vir optimus. 16. Hic locus satis idōneus ad castra est. 17. Habēmusne satis frūmentī? Parum frūmentī habēmus. 18. Nōs Americānī saepissimē parum ad bellum parātī fuimus.

Nōn quī parum habet sed quī plūs cupit pauper¹ est.

—Seneca

EXERCISE 97

Translate:

1. Caesar managed the war well. 2. The Gauls very often managed things badly. 3. They were greatly terrified by the arrival of Caesar. 4. We were recently too little prepared for war. 5. Caesar managed the war better than the Gauls. 6. Do you praise Caesar rather than Cicero? 7. The Romans remained in Gaul a long time. 8. Were the Gauls less brave and daring than Caesar? 9. This was done very well.² 10. These legions were recently led into Gaul. 11. We love God most of all. 12. They arrived safely at the camp. 13. The chief said, "We shall easily conquer the Romans." 14. They did not have enough grain. 15. We had too little grain.

¹ pauper, pauperis, a poor man.

² very well = best.

DĒ ADVENTŪ GALLŌRUM

4. DE GALLORUM CAEDE

Primā lūce ducēs Gallōrum signum suis dederunt, et omnēs Gallī in Forō¹ instructī sunt. Impetum in arcem² fortiter fēcērunt, sed Rōmānī eōs dējēcērunt atque in eōs ex locō superiōre pīla jēcērunt. Itaque Gallī arcem² nōn cēpērunt.

Tum Gallī custōdēs collocāvērunt nē Rōmānī quī in arce² erant plūs frumentī comparārent. Interim frumentum ex agrīs in urbem portāvērunt atque agrōs oppidaque longē lātēque vastāvērunt.

Meanwhile the Romans who had fled to Veii were regaining their strength and their courage. They contrived to send a message to the besieged citadel and obtained the official appointment of Camillus as dictator. Camillus at once organized a relief expedition to Rome.

The Gauls discovered the path by which the messenger had ascended the Capitoline Hill to the citadel. By night they stealthily climbed this path. No alarm was raised till they reached the very top; then the geese sacred to Juno roused the Romans by cackling and fluttering their wings.

Eōrum clāmōre vocātus Manlius arma cēpit et primum Gallum quī jam in summō monte erat dējēcīt. Plūrimī Rōmānī ad clāmōrem contendērunt ut Manlium adjuvārent. Reliquōs Gallōs tēlīs saxisque³ perturbāvērunt atque dējēcērunt. Ita servāta est arx.³

However, as the relieving army under Camillus still delayed its preparations, the garrison on the Capitoline could no longer bear the famine and fatigue. At last they bargained with the Gauls to buy peace for a great weight of gold. But before the bargain could be carried out Camilius arrived. He cancelled the disgraceful agreement and challenged the Gauls to battle.

¹ Forum, ī, *the Forum*, the market place at Rome.

² arx, arcis, *citadel*.

³ saxum, ī, *a rock*.

Gallī, novā rē perturbātī, arma cēpērunt atque irā¹ potius quam cōnsiliō impetum in Rōmānōs fēcērunt. Sed et fortūna et ducis cōnsilia Rōmānōs adjūvērunt. Primō impetū Gallī rejectī sunt atque in fugam datī. Postea, cum Gallī aciem nōn longē ab urbe instrūxissent, proelium rursus commisērunt. Hōc proeliō Gallī victī sunt. Atque ibi maxima caedēs facta est. Etiam Gallōrum castra capta sunt neque nuntius caedis relictus est. Ita et Rōma et glōria nōminis Rōmānī ā Camillō cōservātae sunt.

A PROVERB

Quī mājōra cupit

Saepe minōra capit.

¹ *ira, ae, anger, wrath*

LESSON 17: IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES; NUMERALS

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 1-2

VOCABULARY

(Adjectives which have *-īus* in the genitive singular;
-ī in the dative singular)

<i>ūllus</i> , a, um	<i>any</i>
<i>nūllus</i> , a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{no} \\ \textit{none} \end{array} \right.$
<i>sōlus</i> , a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{alone} \\ \textit{only} \text{ (as an adjective)} \end{array} \right.$
<i>tōtus</i> , a, um	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{whole} \\ \textit{all of} \\ \textit{the whole of} \end{array} \right.$
<i>ūnus</i> , a, um	<i>one</i>
<i>alius</i> , alia, aliud (<i>Gr. 85-86</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{other} \\ \textit{another} \end{array} \right.$
<i>alter</i> , altera, alterum (<i>Gr. 87</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the other} \\ \textit{the one} \end{array} \right\}$ (of two)
<i>uterque</i> , utraque, utrumque (<i>gen. utriusque</i> ; <i>dat. utri-</i> <i>que</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{each} \\ \textit{both} \end{array} \right\}$ (of two)

(Other words)

<i>duo</i> , duae, duo (<i>Gr. 115</i>)	<i>two</i>
<i>trēs</i> , tria (<i>declined like the</i> <i>plural of gravis</i>)	<i>three</i>
<i>centum</i> , <i>indecl. numeral</i>	<i>one hundred</i>
<i>prīmus</i> , a, um	<i>first</i>
<i>secundus</i> , a, um	<i>second</i>
<i>alter</i> , altera, alterum	

<i>tertius, a, um</i>	<i>third</i>
<i>prohibeō, 2, tr.; w. abl. of</i>	{ <i>ward off (from)</i> <i>prevent</i>
<i>separation</i>	

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *solitary* is one who lives alone. A *solo* flight. A marriage performed for Catholics by a Protestant minister is *null* and void. Prejudice often *nullifies* the best arguments. The *passus* was a Roman *unit* of measure. A *unilateral* (*latus, lateris, side*) contract. Circumstances frequently *alter* cases. A *centennial* celebration cannot be held very frequently. *Prohibition* in America was a terrible failure. Charity is of *primary* importance.

NOTE

When *tōtus* modifies the ablative of a noun indicating place where, *in* is not used.

tōtā urbe, in the whole city

tōtīs castrīs, in the whole camp

tōtā aciē, in the whole battle line

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 84-87; 114-116; 766-767; 770; 822-828.

EXERCISE 98

1. *Put in genitive and dative singular;*
2. *Translate:*

1. <i>nūlla amīcitia</i>	9. <i>secundus annus</i>
2. <i>corpus tōtum</i>	10. <i>Deus sōlus</i>
3. <i>ūllus custōs</i>	11. <i>uterque filius</i>
4. <i>alter cōsul</i>	12. <i>legiō tertia</i>
5. <i>prīma aciēs</i>	13. <i>tōta urbs</i>
6. <i>ūnus dominus</i>	14. <i>nūllus amīcus</i>
7. <i>alius puer</i>	15. <i>uterque cōsul</i>
8. <i>nūlla fidēs</i>	16. <i>ūna rēs</i>

EXERCISE 99

Translate:

1. Of no soldier. 2. With one man. 3. In no direction (*acc.*). 4. Of this king alone. 5. With three cohorts. 6. With another leader. 7. With the other brother. 8. To each army (*dat.*). 9. In the third battle line. 10. In three towns. 11. With a hundred horsemen. 12. Without any fear.

Adde¹ parvum parvō—magnus acervus² erit.

—Adapted from Ovid

EXERCISE 100

Translate:

1. Lēgātus tōtum montem militibus complēvit nē hostēs eum caperent. 2. Sōlī Deō, Rēgī Caelī et terrae, sit glōria in saecula saeculōrum. 3. Aliam viam habēmus nūllam. 4. Caesar, “Nōn dabō,” inquit, “ūllī iter per prōvinciam.” 5. Cum Caesar in Galliam Ulteriōrem pervēnisset, erat ibi ūna legiō. 6. Prīma et secunda aciēs contrā eōs quī sē in collem recēperant pugnāvērunt; tertia autem aciēs cum cōpiīs integrīs proelium commisit. 7. Rōmānī aliārū gentiū imperium diū obtinuērunt. 8. Aliōs omnī ratiōne adjuvēmus. 9. Napoleon et Hitler tōtīus Eurōpae imperium cupivērunt. Hōrum alter Gallus fuit, alter Germānus; uterque post caedem et dolōrem victus est. 10. Alterī nē noceat. 11. Utraque hostiū aciēs in fugam data est. Alterī in silvās proximās sē abdidērunt, alterī autem sē in oppidum celeriter recēperunt. 12. Aliī glōriam cupiunt; aliī autem grātiā cupiunt. 13. Hōrum duōrum frātrum, alter mīles, alter nauta est. 14. Aliī aliōs ducēs laudant. 15. Alterum diem iter per prōvinciam faciē-

¹ adde: add; imperative.

² acervus, ī, heap.

bat. 16. Post equitum impetum aliī fugā montēs petivērunt, aliī trāns flūmen contendērunt. 17. Tōtius Eurōpae imperium Napoleon cupīvit. 18. Princeps Gallōrum, "Sine ūllā injūriā," inquit, "īter per prōvinciam faciēmus." 19. Cum Japōnēs praesidia omnibus locīs collocāvissent, nūlla via Americānis quī in Bataan erant relinquebātur. 20. Cum hostium clāmor audītus esset, mīlitēs tōtis castris perturbāti sunt atque alius ex aliō causam clāmōris quaesivit. 21. "Ūnus ergō¹ Pater, nōn trēs Patrēs; ūnus Filius, nōn trēs Filii; ūnus Spīritus Sāctus, nōn trēs Spīritūs Sāctī."² 22. Cum ad proelium exīret, impedimenta tōtius exercitūs in castris reliquit. Legiō tertia relicta est nē hostēs castra facile inīrent. 23. Omnēs cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae sunt. 24. Dux duās legiōnēs in summō monte collocāvit. 25. Caesar et cum Gallis et cum Germānis bellum gessit. Alterōs ex Galliā trāns flūmen reppulit; alterōs armīs pācāvit. 26. In bellō aliī tēlis, aliī gladiis, aliī pilis occidēbantur. 27. Aliī aliis rēbus student. 28. Nostrī neque ūllō metū neque ūllō periculō terrentur. 29. Cōpiās in duās partēs divīsīt, quārum alteram in oppidō reliquit, alteram in hostium finēs redūxit. 30. Ex hīs duōbus centuriōnibus alter occīsus est, alter sē hostibus dēdidit. 31. Cicerō, "Sine amīcitiā," inquit, "vīta est nūlla." 32. Aliōs adjuvēmus. 33. Cicerō, vir optimus maximusque, "Nec ūlla rēs," inquit, "rem pūblicam³ vehementius continet quam fidēs." 34. Christus, "Ego," inquit, "et Pater ūnum sumus." 35. Ūnus fuit semper spīritus in eis et ūna fidēs.⁴

Sic⁵ trānsit glōria mundi.

¹ ergō, adv., *therefore*.

² From the creed "Quicumque," called the Athanasian Creed, composed in the fifth century, possibly in Spain.

³ rēs (rei) pūblica (ae), *the state, the republic*.

⁴ Office of the Martyrs, *Roman Breviary*.

⁵ sic, adv., *thus*.

EXERCISE 101

[Ablatives of Separation and Respect]

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the italicized words:*

1. Rēgēs et prīncipēs *metū* ac *timōre* liberī nōn sunt. 2. Christus nōs *ab hoste* dēfendēt. 3. Castra quae in *summō colle* posita erant et *fossā vallōque* erant mūnīta, ab omnī *periculō* tūta¹ erant. 4. Gallī Germānōs suis *finibus* prohibēbant. 5. Caesar, "Prōvinciam," inquit, "*ā vōbīs* dēfendam." 6. Post Caesaris victoriās Italia *ā barbarīs* diū tūta erat. 7. Alpēs Italiam *ā Galliā* dīvidunt.¹ 8. Caesar, "Flūmen Rhodanus," inquit, "prōvinciam nostram *ab Helvētiīs* dividit." 9. Gallī *numerō* Rōmānīs superiōrēs erant, tamen victī sunt. 10. Gallī Rōmānīs *equitātū* superiōrēs erant. 11. Optimōrum mors *ā timōre* tūta est; mors pessimōrum miserima et metūs plēna est. 12. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs *virtūte* superābant. 13. Puerī *pede* celerēs sunt.

EXERCISE 102

Translate:

1. In the whole camp the soldiers were terrified and disturbed. 2. The brave centurion said, "We are surpassed in number but not in courage." 3. Washington and Lincoln were very great men. Each was at the head of² our state when we were in difficulties. The one was both a very good general and a very good president;³ the other was a great president.³ 4. Through the sin of one man death came into the world; through the suffering and death of one man, we have conquered death. 5. Did Caesar surpass the leaders of the Gauls in courage? 6. Without any fear let us put our trust and hope in the grace of God alone. Through it we shall be safe from sin. No danger will terrify us nor will any sorrow conquer us. We shall also help others and defend them from all dangers.

¹ Tūtus, dīvidō, and dēfendō MAY have ab (ā) with things.

² was at the head of = was in charge of.

³ president, praeses, praesidis, m.



—Courtesy of D. Appleton-Century Company

THE ONWARD MARCH OF ROMAN IMPERIALISM

The legions were Caesar's most important and effective military weapon.
Note the standards or *aquilae*.

EXERCISE 103

Translate:

Our soldiers have always defended us against¹ the enemy. Some Americans fought with the enemy for two or three years; others were left behind to prepare arms and a supply of provisions.² These soldiers of ours³ fought most bravely; some were killed, others received many serious wounds, others were uninjured. To them all let us give thanks.

Recently, in two fierce wars, our soldiers and sailors warded off the enemy from our territory, drove them back into their fields, and there conquered them. In one of these wars we sent our forces many miles to fight with the Germans. In the other we waged war with the Germans and the Japanese; both⁴ of them we conquered. In each of these wars we put our one hope in the courage alone of our soldiers and sailors. Therefore we are freer than many other nations from fear and the power of foreign nations.

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

1. DE LEGIONE

Caesar's fighting forces included cavalry, light-armed auxiliaries (*auxilia*), and the heavy-armed infantry of the legions. The legions were his most important and effective military weapon. They carried the assault, met the main force of the enemy in hand-to-hand fighting, and everywhere bore the brunt of the attack. Their discipline, skill, and truly Roman spirit won for the armies of Rome, in Gaul as elsewhere, their high reputation and assured the continued effectiveness of Roman military operations.

A legion consisted of 6,000 men, but in actual campaigns the full complement was, of course, not maintained. Caesar's legions

¹ Translate *from*.

² Translate *grain*.

³ Use *noster* in agreement with soldiers.

⁴ Use *uterque*.

averaged perhaps about 4,000 men, though at times disease and battle losses further reduced the ranks. The following table presents the organization of the legion :

century		100 men
2 centuries	1 maniples	200 men
3 maniples	1 cohort	600 men
10 cohorts	1 legion	6,000 men

Each legion had six tribunes (*tribūnī militum*) who took command of the legions by turns. Since many tribunes had received their commission through political influence and were therefore inexperienced or even unfit, Caesar often put a *lēgātus* in charge of the legion during actual operations. The *lēgātī* were immediate assistants to Caesar himself. They had no fixed command and could be employed in any way Caesar wished, for nonmilitary as well as for military purposes.

Each legion had its own standard, an image of an eagle on the top of a wooden staff. It was therefore called the *aquila* (*aquila*, *ae*, *eagle*). A legion considered the loss of its *aquila* to the enemy as a disaster and a disgrace.

*Respondē Latīnē:*¹

1. In quot partēs dīvisae sunt cōpiae Caesaris? 2. Ex hīs erantne legiōnēs firmissimae atque ad proelium ūtilissimae? 3. Nōne in legiōnum virtūte posita est spēs victōriae? 4. Quot hominēs in ūnā legiōne erant? 5. Quot cohortēs in ūnā legiōne erant? 6. Quī legiōnī praeerant? 7. Erantne tribūnī militum quī cum Caesare in exercitū erant maximē idōneī atque dīligentissimī? 8. Quōs Caesar; cum proelium committeret, legiōnibus praefecit? 9. Habēbantne legiōnēs signa? 10. Quid vocātur² signum legiōnis?

¹ Give simple answers in complete sentences based on *Dē Legiōne*.

² In the passive *vocō* is a linking verb; hence it is followed by a predicate noun.

EXERCISE 104

[Exercise in Imitation]

Imitate the word order and structure of the model sentence in translating these sentences:

MODEL: Gallia omnis in trēs partēs dīvīsa est.

1. A legion was divided into ten cohorts.
2. Caesar's forces were divided into three parts.
3. Our state is divided into many parts.

Invia¹ virtūtī nūlla est via.

—Ovid

ŌRĀTIŌ CHRĪSTIĀNA

Dominus nōs benedicat;² et ab omnī malō dēfendat, et ad vītam perdūcat³ aeternam.⁴

ALIA SUNT PERĪCULA BELLĪ;
ALIA PERĪCULA PĀCIS

Corpora hominum in bellō armīs, in pāce autem voluptātibus⁵ vulnerantur.⁶

¹ invius, a, um, *impassable*.

² benedicō, benedicere, benedīxī, benedictus, 3, tr., *bless* (bene + dicō, say).

³ perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, 3, tr., *conduct, lead through* (per + dūcō).

⁴ aeternus, a, um, *eternal*.

⁵ voluptās, voluptātis, *pleasure* (cf. voluptuous).

⁶ vulnerō, 1, tr., *wound* (cf. vulnus).

LESSON 18: THE ACTIVE AND PERFECT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF *FERŌ*; *IPSE*; PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 3-21

VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, irreg., tr.	bear bring carry
inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus, irreg., tr.; w. dat. of person	bring (upon) inflict (upon) inspire (in)¹
differō, differre, distulī, dilātus, irreg., tr.	scatter put off differ
cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus, irreg., tr. with a reflexive pronoun	bring together compare betake oneself
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, irreg., tr.	bring back report refer
pedem referre	to fall back to retreat
ipse, ipsa, ipsum	self
praeter, prep. w. acc.	except past contrary to
socius, ī	companion ally

¹ The person on whom something is brought, inflicted, or inspired is put in the dative case.

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{undertake} \\ \text{take (upon oneself)} \end{array} \right.$
vīs (<i>gen.</i> vis [<i>rare</i>]; <i>acc.</i> vim; <i>abl.</i> vī)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{force} \\ \text{power} \\ \text{violence} \end{array} \right.$
vī (<i>abl.</i> of vīs)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{violently} \\ \text{by force} \end{array} \right.$
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lead in} \\ \text{lead on} \\ \text{influence} \end{array} \right.$

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We should be aware of our *social* obligations. Laws are carried in the legislature. A strong *inducement* influences us to accept an offer. After the war delegates were brought together for a *conference*. The speaker made a *reference* to the American tradition of freedom.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Vīta; dūcō.

WORD STUDY

Explain the meanings of *īnferō*, *cōnferō*, and *referō* from their composition.

Dis- in compounds adds the idea of *apart*, *away*, *in different directions*, or of negation (*not*). Thus **dis** + **ferō** (*differō*) means *carry apart*; hence *scatter*. **Dis** + **mittō** (*dīmittō*) means *send apart* or *away*; hence *dismiss*.

1. FORMS OF FERŌ

Ferō is irregular only in a few forms. In the indicative it has some irregular forms in the PRESENT only (**fers**, **fert**, **fertis**). In the subjunctive the IMPERFECT is irregular throughout. Otherwise **ferō** is exactly like any THIRD CONJUGATION VERB. The perfect, just like the perfect of any other verb, is

built on the stem *tul-* in the active voice and is formed with the perfect participle passive *lātus* and forms of the verb *sum* in the passive voice. Therefore study very carefully the PRESENT INDICATIVE and the IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 362; 369-371; 386-387.

EXERCISE 105

Translate:

1. ferēbam	8. rettulit	15. illātum est
2. tulit	9. lātus est	16. cōfertis
3. fert	10. contulit	17. fers
4. infert	11. distulērunt	18. collāta sunt
5. contulerātis	12. tulērunt	19. inferētis
6. referet	13. cōferēbās	20. infertis
7. differunt	14. different	21. dīlātī sunt

EXERCISE 106

Translate:

1. He was carrying. 2. They bore. 3. They were scattered.
 4. He is putting off. 5. They differ. 6. They had referred. 7. They brought together. 8. You bear. 9. They had been brought together. 10. He betook himself. 11. He reported. 12. They inflicted. 13. They have borne. 14. You will refer.

EXERCISE 107

1. *Translate;*

2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Hanc rem ad senātum *referāmus*. 2. Hostēs cum omnibus cōpiīs in prōvinciam *vēnerunt* ut bellum sociīs populī Rōmānī *inferrent*. 3. Rogāvit quis haec *rettulisset*. 4. Sociī, cum hostēs bellum *intulissent*, vim eōrum nōn sustinuērunt. 5. Hostēs scīvērunt quae ad Caesarem *relāta essent*. 6. Equitēs mīsīt *quī* maximum timōrem hostibus *inferrent*. 7. Haec ad populum

referāmus. 8. *In Italiam sē cōnferat!* 9. *Nē bellum nōbīs aliēnae gentēs inferant!*

EXERCISE 108

Translate:

1. He asked whether the slaves had carried enough grain into the camp. 2. I ask whether you have borne very heavy and very great sorrow. 3. Do you know how many men bore arms in the Second World War?¹ 4. Mary knew why her Son was carrying the heavy cross.

2. PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

A PARTICIPLE is a VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

The enemy, having been swiftly repulsed, hastened into the mountains.

In this sentence *having been repulsed* is a participle. It is an ADJECTIVE because it modifies the noun *enemy*. It is a VERB because it expresses ACTION. Since it is a verb, it may be modified by an adverb (*swiftly*).

The fourth principal part of regular verbs in Latin is the PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE. It is declined like *magnus, a, um*.

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, a, um
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, a, um
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, a, um
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, a, um

EXERCISE 109

Decline in full:

1. <i>laudātus, a, um</i>	3. <i>missus, a, um</i>
2. <i>monitus, a, um</i>	4. <i>audītus, a, um</i>

¹ *world war, bellum (ī) omnium gentium.*

The perfect participle passive may be translated into English either by the long English form :

laudātus, a, um, having been praised

or the shorter English form :

laudātus, a, um, praised

Since the perfect participle passive is an adjective, it can modify any noun or pronoun in a sentence according as the sense requires.

Caesar multis nuntiis perturbātus novās legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit.
Caesar, having been disturbed (disturbed) by many messages, led new legions into Gaul.

Caesar collem ab equitibus occupātum vallō mūnivit.
Caesar fortified with a rampart the hill seized by the cavalry.

Propter lēgātōs occisōs Caesar oppida barbarōrum incendit.
On account of the murdered envoys Caesar burned the towns of the barbarians.

Rōmānī Gallīs victīs frūmentum nōn dedērunt.
The Romans did not give grain to the conquered Gauls.

NOTE

1. When a verb is INTRANSITIVE, it can have only a NEUTER participle PASSIVE. In intransitive verbs, therefore, the fourth principal part is always given as neuter, as :

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum, 1, intr.

2. When a verb is DEFECTIVE and has no perfect participle passive at all, the FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE (which we shall study later) is given as the fourth principal part :

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, intr.

Cēdō has no perfect participle passive. The future participle active always ends in -ŪRUS (*cess-ūrus*).

3. When a verb has neither a perfect participle passive nor a future participle active, only three parts are given, as:

contendō, contendere, contendī, 3, intr.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 907-909; 911.

EXERCISE 110

1. Give the perfect participle passive;

2. Give two English translations of the participle:

1. adjuvō	26. inferō	51. occupō
2. compleō	27. quaerō	52. accipiō
3. agō	28. superō	53. premō
4. capiō	29. instruō	54. repellō
5. audiō	30. mittō	55. cōspiciō
6. ferō	31. servō	56. oppugnō
7. administrō	32. dējiciō	57. obtineō
8. aperiō	33. occidō	58. retineō
9. collocō	34. pellō	59. reducō
10. mūniō	35. abdō	60. ineō
11. cōnficiō	36. petō	61. expectō
12. pācō	37. cōgō	62. moveō
13. contineō	38. cōservō	63. committō
14. cōnferō	39. dō	64. trādō
15. dīmittō	40. cupiō	65. remittō
16. dūcō	41. differō	66. expugnō
17. vocō	42. explōrō	67. vincō
18. perturbō	43. moneō	68. cognōscō
19. faciō	44. diligō	69. prohibeō
20. portō	45. sustineō	70. dēducō
21. reprimō	46. pōnō	71. suscipiō
22. referō	47. interficiō	72. praefficiō
23. jaciō	48. incitō	73. vastō
24. incendō	49. laudō	74. recipiō
25. sciō	50. rogō	75. dēfendō

76. dēdō	80. addūcō	84. habeō
77. relinquō	81. comparō	85. gerō
78. dīvidō	82. adeō	86. indūcō
79. appellō	83. videō	

EXERCISE 111

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the agreement and relative time of the participles:*

1. Gallī, ā Rōmānīs *victī*, nūllam habēbant libertātem. 2. Corpora militum *occīsōrum* ex castrīs tulērunt. 3. Servōs ab equitibus *reductōs* occīdit. 4. Sociīs labōre *cōnfectīs* auxilium tulit. 5. Gallī, timōre *inductī*, sē in oppidum contulērunt. 6. Vīta Gallōrum *captōrum* ā lēgātō servāta est. 7. Equitēs hostibus hāc rē *perturbātīs* timōrem intulērunt. 8. Dē cōsiliīs ab eis *initīs* Caesar ā sociīs certior factus est. 9. Hostēs nostrōs in angustias *coāctōs* occīdērunt. 10. Legiō, nūper in Galliam *dēducta*, missa est ut agrōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī ab hostibus vī dēfenderet. 11. Gallōrum sociī, spē salūtis *mōtī*, celeriter fūgērunt.

NOTE

In Exercise 111 notice that adverbial modifiers regularly precede the participle. Thus:

The Gauls, having been repulsed by Caesar, sought peace.

Gallī, ā Caesare repulsī, pācem petivērunt.

EXERCISE 112

Translate:

1. They often killed the captured Gauls. 2. The Gauls, having been terrified by the arrival of Caesar, sought peace. 3. They pitched camp on the hill seized by the cavalry. 4. The force of the river damaged¹ the bridge made by Caesar. 5. They burned the captured town. 6. The lot² of the conquered allies was most

¹ *damage* = *harm*.

² *lot* = *fortūna*.

wretched. 7. Caesar, having been informed in how great danger the allies of the Roman people were, sent the cavalry to help them. 8. The Gauls, led on by hope of victory, undertook a new war.

**Fīlium suum ūnigenitum¹ mīsit² Deus in mundum, ut vīvāmus
per eum.**

—Sānctus Jōānnēs

EXERCISE 113

Translate:

1. Eī quī in rē pūblicā versantur³ magnam sibi auctōritātem suscipiunt; tamen, timōre perturbātī, saepe rēs gravissimās aut in proximum annum⁴ differunt aut ad populum referunt. 2. Sociī populī Rōmānī multa dē cōsiliīs Gallōrum ad Caesarem referēbant. 3. Ille certissimē fortūnam malam fert quī nūllōs habet amīcōs, quī nūllōs dolōris et glōriae suae sociōs habet. Nam Cicerō, “Sine amīcitiā,” inquit, “vīta est nūlla.” Praeter virtūtem ac Deī grātiā amīcitiā est ūna omnium rērum optima. 4. Rōmānōrum servī saepe maximum dolōrem et labōrem ferēbant. Multī servī cum exercitū Caesaris erant. Hī omnia quae ad bellum ūtilia erant in castra ferēbant. 5. Centuriō omnia quae explorāverat ad Caesarem rettulit. 6. Via quae per silvās et montēs fert saepissimē periculōrum plēna est. 7. Rōmānī cum sociīs suis multīs aliīs gentibus bellum intulērunt. 8. Flūmen Mississippī nōs praeter multās et maximās urbēs feret. 9. Cōsulēs Rōmānī rēs gravissimās ad senātum referēbant. 10. Ante proelium Caesar omnia impedimenta in ūnum locum cōferēbat quō facilius ā hostibus dēfenderentur. 11. Equitēs hostibus ab legiōne pulsīs timōrem intulērunt. 12. Helvētiī, cum in fugam ā nostrīs datī

¹ ūnigenitus, a, um, *only-begotten*.

² mīsit; present perfect with primary sequence, Gr. 540.

³ in rē pūblicā versor, 1, intr., *take part in public affairs*.

⁴ annus, ī, *year*.

essent, ad impedimenta celeriter sē contulērunt. 13. Gallī, ad bellum injūriis Rōmānōrum incitātī, frūmentum ex agrīs in oppida cōferēbant ut per bellum satis magnam frūmentī cōpiam habērent. 14. Nōs Americānī, hominēs liberī, rēgem nōn ferēmus. 15. Caedēs hominum quī nūllam injūriam aliīs intulerant praeter lēgem Deī facta est. 16. Sociī populī Rōmānī, inopiae angustīis pressī, saepe vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt. 17. Hostēs, spē victōriae inductī, impetum in hiberna fēcērunt. Cum equitēs ā Caesare missī auxilium nostrīs tulissent atque eōs prohibērent, hostēs pedem rettulērunt. 18. Rōmānī in itinere magnam frūmentī cōpiam sēcum tulērunt. 19. Hī arma ferēbant. 20. Terra frūgēs¹ fert. 21. Virī sānctissimī praemium glōriae ferent. 22. Impedimenta in ūnum locum collāta sunt nē ab hostibus caperentur. 23. Virī fortissimī saepe magnum labōrem sibi suscipiunt. 24. Haec ad Caesarem relāta sunt. 25. Caesar, injūriis incitātus, oppidum vī cēpit et incendit.

3. IPSE

Except in the nominative masculine singular, **ipse** is declined like **ūnus**, **nūllus**, etc., on the stem **ips-**.

EXERCISE 114

Before studying the GRAMMAR assignment write out the complete declension of **ipse**.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 138; 808-810; 812.

EXERCISE 115

Translate:

(The italicized words are to be translated by **ipse**.)

1. The soldier *himself* came. 2. They *themselves* came. 3. She *herself* did this. 4. He did this *himself*. 5. In this *very* city. 6. In

¹ frūgēs, frūgum, f., *crops*.

the Senate *itself*. 7. On account of the victories of this *very* man.
 8. Throughout that *very* hour. 9. On account of this *very* thing.
 10. They killed the king *himself*. 11. We praise virtue *itself*.
 12. They injured the king *himself*. 13. The soldiers fled, but the
 leader *himself* was captured.

EXERCISE 116

Translate:

1. Caesar, litteris senātūs inductus, hanc rem ipse sibi suscepit.
 2. Caesar lēgātum in Helvētiōs mīsīt; ipse in prōvinciam sē con-
 tulit. 3. Rēgem et sociōs ejus cēpērunt; hōs in castra dēdūxērunt,
 ipsum autem occīdērunt. 4. Rēx ipse interfectus est. 5. Caesar
 Labiēnum in silvās mīsīt; ipse flūmen per vim trānsiit. 6. In
 eō ipsō proeliō et hostēs repulsī sunt et eōrum dux interfectus.
 7. Deus ipse nōs diligit. 8. In hāc ipsā urbe rēgēs quondam¹
 laudātī sunt. 9. Deus omnia quae in caelō et in terrā sunt ipse
 fēcīt.

NOTE

Although the literal English translation of *ipse* and of *suī* is
 often the same (*himself*, etc.), you must be careful to use *ipse*
 when the pronoun is INTENSIVE and *suī* when it is REFLEX-
 IVE. A careful study of the following examples will make the
 difference clear.

REFLEXIVE: *The king killed himself.*

Himself is the object of *killed* but REFERS BACK to the
 subject.

Rēx sē occīdit.

rēx	occīdit	sē

¹ quondam, adv., *once, at one time.*

INTENSIVE: *The king himself came.*
The king came himself.

Himself AGREES DIRECTLY with the subject and is not the object of *came*.

Rēx ipse vēnit.	
rēx	vēnit
ipse	

EXERCISE 117

Translate:

1. Mary *herself* was there.
2. Mary did not praise *herself*.
3. Virtue *itself* is praised.
4. Virtue is praised on account of *itself*.
5. He praised the Gauls *themselves*.
6. The Gauls were hard pressed by want *themselves*.
7. He harmed the Roman Senate *itself*.
8. The Roman Senate *itself* praised Caesar.
9. The Roman Senate *itself* was terrified.

Cōnsuētūdō¹ est altera nātūra.

4. PERFECT PARTICIPLE OF DEPONENT VERBS

The perfect participle of deponent verbs is to be found in the third principal part. It is ACTIVE in meaning.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum

Perfect participle: secūtus, a, um, *having followed* (NOT *having been followed*).

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 910.

¹ cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, *habit, custom*.

EXERCISE 118

1. *Translate;*
2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Equitēs barbarōs *secūtī* eīs timōrem intulērunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs castra Rōmāna *aggressōs* in silvās pepulit. 3. Propter bellum novum *ortum*, Caesar in Galliam profectus est. 4. Chrīstus, maximum dolōrem propter nostram salūtem *passus*, ad glōriam pervēnit. 5. Equitēs in hostium fīnēs decem mīlia passuum *prōgressī* aciem hostium cōspexērunt.

EXERCISE 119

[Review of Lesson 18]

Translate:

1. Caesar, informed of the danger of the envoy, sent the cavalry to inspire fear in the enemy; he himself followed at once with the legions. 2. The soldiers, having been observed¹ by the enemy, brought the baggage together into one place and, having been drawn up in a suitable place, very bravely withstood the force of the attack. 3. Caesar, having been put in command of the province, undertook a very great war to pacify the Gauls and seize all power in Gaul.² 4. After these battles Caesar also brought war upon the Germans in order to defend the allies of the Roman people against³ them. 5. The Senate itself, having been informed of Caesar's victory, gave very great thanks to him. 6. These tribes differed among themselves in laws and many other things. 7. Christ, having been made man,⁴ bore the greatest toil and sorrow on our account. 8. The fleet, having set out from the harbor, was scattered in all directions. 9. The barbarians, having been put to flight, betook themselves into the mountains. 10. They carried a large supply of grain with them. 11. The baggage was

¹ *observe* = *see*.

² Translate *the power of all Gaul*.

³ Translate *from*.

⁴ A predicate noun, Gr. 746-747.

brought together into this very place. 12. Caesar sent the allies to inspire fear in the enemy; he himself led the legions into the territory of the enemy. 13. Let us compare the life of Caesar with the life of Cicero. 14. They seized the bridge by force. 15. Shall we compare Caesar with Napoleon in courage? 16. He put off this serious matter. 17. They did not withstand the force of the enemy. 18. The force of the river damaged¹ the bridge. 19. The Gauls did not surpass the Romans in courage. 20. Caesar brought war upon many tribes which had been free from the power of Rome. The very name of Caesar inspired fear in the enemy. 21. The cavalry reported to Caesar what they had seen. 22. They swiftly betook themselves into the camp. 23. These men themselves will bear arms. 24. They brought back the message. 25. The matter was referred to the Roman people.

Magnārum rērum ipse cōnātus² magnus est.

—Aelred of Rivaux

EXERCISE 120

[Exercise in Imitation]

*Imitate the word order and structure of the model
in translating these sentences:*

MODEL: Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

1. Of all these cities the largest was Rome.
2. Of all these soldiers the bravest was Titus.
3. Of all Roman consuls the greatest was Cicero.
4. Of all Roman generals the greatest was Caesar.
5. Of all wars the greatest was the Second World War.³

¹ damage = harm.

² cōnātus, ūs, attempt (cf. cōnor).

³ world war: bellum (ī) omnium gentium.

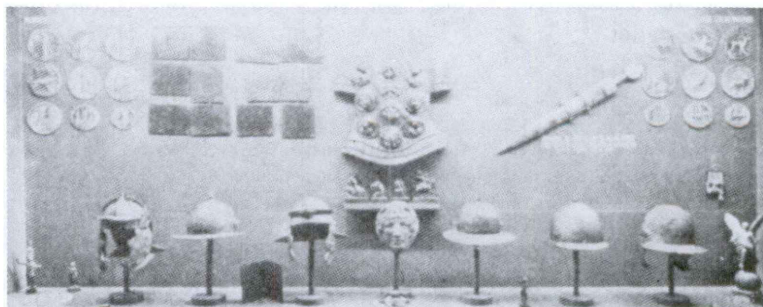
DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

2. DE COHORTIBUS

The cohort, consisting, as we have seen, of 600 men, was the tactical unit of Caesar's legion. The legions were arranged and deployed for battle by cohorts, each cohort forming an integrated fighting team. Each cohort had a standard (*signum*) of a distinctive design—the form of an animal, a hand, etc.—carried by a *signifer* (gen. *signiferi*; *signum* + *ferō*). On the pole below the figure were displayed the decorations—initials, wreaths, tassels, etc.—awarded the cohort. The soldiers found their places and moved in battle by observing their own standards. This simple device was very effective and made for concerted orderliness, especially under sudden attack or in the confusion of hand-to-hand fighting when shouted commands would often be useless. This practice explains the expressions we find in Roman military language: *signa inferre*, to attack (lit., to carry the standards against), *signa referre*, to retreat (lit., to carry the standards back), *signa convertere*, to wheel about (lit., to turn the standards around), etc.

Respondē Anglicē:

1. Quot militēs erant in ūnā cohorte? 2. Cūr ūtilissima erant



—Courtesy of Istituto Nazionale Luce

RELICS OF THE ROMAN ARMY: INSIGNIA, HELMETS, AND SO FORTH

cohortium signa? 3. Nōne intellegis¹ "signa referre," "signa inferre"?

Est ūnus quisque² faber³ ipse fortūnae suae.

DĒ HOMINE

In homine optimum quid est? Ratiō—hāc enim superat animalia,⁴ deōs sequitur. (*Adapted from Seneca.*)

Impius⁵ ipse sibi poena⁶ est.

—St. Ambrose

DĒ POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ

Cicero, "Maximē," inquit, "populus Rōmānus animī⁷ magnitudinē⁸ excellet."⁹

¹ intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, 3, tr., *understand*.

² quisque, quidque, *each one, every man, everything*.

³ faber, fabrī, *maker, fashioner*.

⁴ animal, animālis, n., *animal*.

⁵ impius, a, um, *impious, wicked*.

⁶ poena, ae, *punishment*.

⁷ animus, ī, *soul, spirit*.

⁸ magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, *greatness*.

⁹ excellō, excellere, excelsus, 3, intr., *excel, am eminent*.

LESSON 19: POSSUM; THE INFINITIVE AS A NOUN

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 22-74

VOCABULARY

possum, posse, potuī, <i>irreg., intr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>am able</i> <i>can</i>
cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, 3, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>place</i> <i>set up</i> <i>decide</i> <i>determine</i>
cōnor, 1, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>try</i> <i>attempt</i>
coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>began</i> <i>have begun</i>
dēbeō, 2, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>ought</i> <i>owe</i>
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, 2, <i>tr.; acc. w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>order</i> <i>command</i>
mandō, 1, <i>tr.; w. dat. of person</i>	{ <i>commit</i> <i>entrust</i>
parō, 1, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	{ <i>prepare</i> <i>get ready</i>
cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecūtus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>follow up</i> <i>overtake</i> <i>gain</i>
jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūctus, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>join</i> <i>unite</i>
conjungō, conjungere, conjūnxī, conjūctus, 3, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>join together</i> <i>unite</i>
permovēō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ <i>arouse</i> <i>influence</i>

imperō, <i>1, tr.; w. dat. of person</i>	levy
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, <i>2, intr.; acc. w. pres. infin.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it behooves} \\ \text{it is necessary} \end{array} \right.$
parātus, a, um; <i>w. pres. infin. or ad w. acc.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{prepared (for)} \\ \text{ready} \end{array} \right.$

NOTE

When *coepī* governs a passive infinitive it is changed to the passive form, *coeptus sum*. It is, however, translated as ACTIVE.

Eum laudāre coepī. I began to praise him.

Laudārī coeptus est. He began to be praised.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

We should pay our just *debts*. The atomic bomb is a *potent* instrument of destruction. The *Constitution* gives the president a veto power. What is a *conjunction*? Many American towns grew up at railroad *junctions*.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 398-401; 411-413.

1. POSSUM

EXERCISE 121

Translate:

1. He is able. 2. They can. 3. They were able. 4. He could.
5. We had been able. 6. You will be able. 7. They are able.
8. He was able. 9. You could. 10. We are able. 11. Can you?
12. Were they able?

EXERCISE 122

Translate:

(Where possible give more than one English meaning.)

1. potuit	4. potuerās	7. poterit
2. possum	5. potuerunt	8. possunt
3. poterās	6. potest	9. poterant

EXERCISE 123

What forms are these?

1. possit	3. possem	5. potuerit
2. potuisset	4. possum	6. poterit

2. THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

Study the present infinitives of the following regular and irregular verbs:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I	laud-āre	<i>to praise</i>	laud-ārī	<i>to be praised</i>
II	mon-ēre	<i>to warn</i>	mon-ērī	<i>to be warned</i>
III	mitt-ere	<i>to send</i>	mitt-ī	<i>to be sent</i>
III (-iō)	cap-ere	<i>to take</i>	cap-ī	<i>to be taken</i>
IV	aud-īre	<i>to hear</i>	aud-īrī	<i>to be heard</i>
sum	esse	<i>to be</i>		
eō	īre	<i>to go</i>		
ferō	ferre	<i>to bear</i>	ferrī	<i>to be borne</i>
possum	posse	<i>to be able</i>		

Notice that the passive is formed by changing the final *e* of the ending to *ī*, EXCEPT in the third conjugation, where *ī* is the entire passive ending.

Deponent verbs have the PASSIVE ENDINGS in the present infinitive but ACTIVE meanings.

cōnor cōnārī *to try*

EXERCISE 124

Give the active and passive present infinitives of all the verbs in Exercise 110 and of these:

1. cōstituō	4. mandō	7. permovēō
2. dēbeō	5. jungō	8. conjungō
3. jubeō	6. imperō	

EXERCISE 125

Give the present infinitive of these words and translate:

1. cōnor	5. patior	9. loquor
2. cōnsequor	6. possum	10. proficīscor
3. hortor	7. sum	11. aggredior
4. sequor	8. orior	12. cohortor

A ROMAN PROVERB¹
In silvam ligna² fert.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 888-896.

EXERCISE 126

1. *Translate;*
2. *Parse the italicized words:*

A.

[GRAMMAR 892]

MODEL: Nōs omnēs ōrāre possumus.

We can all pray.

We are all able to pray.

1. Miles *pugnāre* potest. 2. Timēsne *pugnāre*? 3. *Proficīscī* parātī sunt. 4. *Exīre* parant. 5. Barbarī *trānsīre* cōnātī sunt. 6. *Prōgredi* coopērunt. 7. *Ōrāre* debēmus. 8. Hīs litterīs permōtus, *proficīscī* cōstituit. 9. Hāc rē permōtī, *fugere* cōnātī sunt.

¹ This proverb is equivalent to our "carrying water to the sea" or "carrying coals to Newcastle." Newcastle, a city and port of New South Wales, Australia, produced for the year ending June 30, 1952 a total of 9,343,900 tons of black coal.

² lignum, ī, wood.

B.

[GRAMMAR 888]

MODEL: Caesar hostēs vī prohibēre cōstituit.*Caesar determined to ward off the enemy by force.*

1. Haedui sē suaque ab Helvētiis *dēfendere* nōn poterant. 2. Equitēs flūmen *trānsire* cōnābantur. 3. Quā dē rē certior factus, cōpiās suās *conjungere* cōstituit. 4. Helvētiī ex suis finibus nōn facile *exire* poterant. 5. Eī magnam frūmentī cōpiam sēcum *ferre* cōstituērunt. 6. Dē novō bellō ortō certior factus, *prōvinciae* tōtī magnum militum numerum *imperāre* cōstituit. 7. Cum Helvētiī in prōvinciam *trānsire* cōnārentur, Caesar eōs vī *prohibēre* cōstituit. 8. Praesidia collocāvit quō facilius barbarōs *prohibēre* posset. 9. Caesar sociōs et amīcōs populī Rōmānī *dēfendere* atque adjuvāre dēbuit. 10. Equitēs eōs statim cōsequī nōn poterant.

C.

[GRAMMAR 889-890]

MODEL: Optimum est Deum diligere.*It is very good to love God.**To love God is very good.*

1. Tūtissimum est in castrīs *manēre*. 2. Estne ūtilissimum arma *parāre*? 3. Optimum est semper *orāre*. 4. Peccātum est mātrem nōn *diligere*. 5. Difficile fuit omnēs Galliae gentēs *vincere* atque *pācāre*. 6. Bonum est amīcōs *adjuvāre*. 7. Miserōs *adjuvāre* est lēgem Deī *servāre*. 8. Difficile est multās cīvitatēs *conjungere*.

D.

[GRAMMAR 888]

MODEL: Agrī nostrī vastārī nōn dēbent.*Our fields ought not to be laid waste.*

1. Potuitne Rōma facile *dēfendī*? 2. Potuēruntne Gallī facillimē *pācārī*? 3. Oppida longē lātēque *incendī coepta sunt*. 4. Mātrēs et patrēs ā filiis *diligī* dēbent. 5. Hostēs *reji*cī nōn poterant. 6. Urbs *capī* facillimē poterit.

E.

[GRAMMAR 331; 891; 893]

MODEL: Oportet nōs Deum diligere.*It behooves us to love God.**We {ought to
must} love God.*

1. Oportet nōs omnēs hominēs *diligere*. 2. Oportuit Caesarem vitās obsidum *conservāre*. 3. Oportet militēs fortissimē *pugnāre*. 4. Oportet Americānōs civitātem suam diligentissimē *dēfendere*. 5. Oportuit Caesarem fidem hostibus *datam servāre*. 6. Oportet omnia *esse* commūnia inter amīcōs.

F.

[GRAMMAR 893; 895]

MODEL: Caesar equitēs hostēs cōsequī jussit.*Caesar ordered the cavalry to follow up the enemy.*

1. Caesar eōs adventum suum *expectāre* jussit. 2. Lēgātus militēs *victōriās* superiōrēs memoriā *tenēre* jussit. 3. Centuriō eōs pontem *facere* jussit. 4. Caesar, dē periculō *suōrum* certior factus, equitēs auxilium eīs *ferre* jussit. 5. Imperātor eōs impetum statim *facere* jussit. 6. Militēs impetum in hostēs statim *facere* jussī sunt. 7. Dux obsidēs *interficere* jussus est. 8. Equitēs hostēs celerrimē *cōsequī* jussī sunt.

G.

[GRAMMAR 894]

MODEL: Ducēs audācissimī esse dēbent.**Oportet ducēs esse audācissimōs.***Leaders ought to be very daring.*

1. Possuntne puerī semper *bonī* esse? 2. Potesne *sāctus* esse?
3. *Sāctī* esse ā Chrīstō jussī sumus. 4. Potestisne ad proelium *parātī* esse?
5. Oportet nōs semper ad mortem *parātōs* esse.
6. Inter amīcōs *omnia commūnia* esse dēbent.

NOTE

In Sections A-G of Exercises 126 and 127 the following usages are illustrated:

A. When the sense requires it, some verbs and *parātus* take a PRESENT INFINITIVE to COMPLETE their meaning.

B. The infinitive may take an OBJECT and may be modified by an ADVERB or ADVERBIAL PHRASE.

C. The infinitive is always NEUTER.

D. The infinitive may be in the PASSIVE VOICE.

E. An infinitive clause, with SUBJECT in the ACCUSATIVE case, may be used with the impersonal verb *oportet* and other similar verbs and expressions.

F. An infinitive clause, with SUBJECT in the ACCUSATIVE case, may be used as the object of *jubeō* and other similar verbs.

G. A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE after an infinitive agrees with the word to which it REFERS, the subject either of the main verb or the infinitive.

EXERCISE 127

*Translate:*A.¹

1. At dawn we were prepared to set out. 2. We can remain.
3. These tribes, having been united, were able to go across.

B.

1. He determined to entrust this affair to the lieutenant. 2. They were not able to follow up the legions at once. 3. Aroused by these wrongs, they began to join other tribes to themselves.

C.

1. It is good and holy to help others. 2. It is difficult to gain the highest virtue. 3. It is very difficult to cross the Alps.

¹ The letters refer to corresponding sections of Exercise 126.

D.

1. The soldiers, forced into the defile, began to be killed by darts and javelins. 2. God ought to be loved and praised by all men. 3. A certain number of horsemen ought to be levied on the tribe.

E.

1. It behooves us to preserve our liberty. 2. We should very carefully keep the law of God. 3. It behooved Caesar to join his forces together.

F.

1. The Senate ordered the consuls to lead the legions against the enemy. 2. The soldiers were ordered to remain in the camp to defend the baggage. 3. They ordered them to try to capture that hill.

G.

1. We Christians, moved by the pains of Christ and led on by the grace of God, ought to be very holy. 2. Those who love God ought to be free from the fear of death. 3. They began to be eager for glory.

NOTE

Note that in English sentences the infinitive is frequently put in the perfect tense (*to have been*), while the Latin sentences use a present infinitive (*esse*) and the main verb is put in the perfect tense (*oportuit, dēbuimus*).

We should have been brave. Oportuit nōs fortēs esse.

We ought to have been brave. Fortēs esse dēbuimus.

EXERCISE 128

Translate:

1. We should have helped our friends more. 2. The Gauls ought to have fought more bravely. 3. Pilate ought to have tried to spare the life of Christ. 4. The leading men of Gaul ought to

have joined all the tribes together. 5. Should the Romans have sent Caesar into Gaul?

ALTER IPSE—AMĪCUS

EXERCISE 129

Translate:

1. Helvētīi, ōrātiōne prīncipis permōtī, per finēs sociōrum populī Rōmānī ire parābant. 2. Hostēs, vī prohibitī, illud flūmen trānsire nōn potuērunt. 3. Prīnceps, glōriae cupidus, "Facile," inquit, "tōtīus Galliae imperium obtinēre possumus." 4. Equitēs, ā Caesare celerrimē missī, facile timōrem hostibus inferre poterant. 5. Cum hostēs in fugam ā nostrīs datī essent, equitēs eōs sequī coepērunt. 6. Rēgēs bellum aliīs inferre saepissimē parant. 7. Ab alterā viā repulsī, viā difficillimā et angustissimā ex suis finibus exīre cōstituērunt. 8. Lēgātus, "In cōspectū," inquit, "exercitūs Rōmānī, nostrī agrī vastārī certissimē nōn dēbent." 9. Dēbuitne Caesar oppida agrōsque Galliae occupāre? 10. Pilātus, timōre permōtus, Christum ad mortem dūcī iussit.

EXERCISE 130

Translate:

1. Through the grace of God we can arrive at the highest virtue. 2. We ought to try to be like Christ. 3. Columbus determined to go to the Indies¹ by a new route. 4. St. Louis² tried to be a very good and very holy king. 5. Christ, when He was on the cross, entrusted His mother Mary to St. John.³ 6. Washington deter-

¹ *Indies*, India, ae.

² *Louis*, Ludovīcus, ī.

³ *John*, Jōannēs, Jōannis.

mined to unite all Americans and to fight for liberty even to death. 7. Napoleon was able to levy a large number of soldiers on France.¹ 8. Daring men can gain the greatest glory. 9. When the soldiers saw Caesar, their commander in chief, in the first battle line, they began to fight more fiercely and bravely. Thus we, having been informed how much pain Christ suffered for us, ought to fight more fiercely and boldly against sin. 10. Let us try to help all men, for we are all brothers in Christ.

IDIOM STUDY

Quam maximum numerum parāvērunt.

They prepared as large a number as possible.

Quam is an adverb modifying **maximum**. The superlative (**maximum**) is used where in English the positive (*large*) is used.

There need not be in Latin any expression like the English *as possible*. Sometimes, however, the idea *as possible* is expressed in Latin by using the form of **possum** required by the context.

Quam maximum potuērunt numerum parāvērunt.

They prepared as large a number as $\begin{cases} \text{possible.} \\ \text{they could.} \end{cases}$

EXERCISE 131

1. *Translate into good English;*

2. *Explain the italicized idioms:*

1. Caesar prōvinciae *quam maximum potuit* mīlitum numerum imperāvit. 2. Caesar *quam maximīs potuit* itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Cōpiās *quam maximās possunt* cōgunt. 4. Haec *quam celerrimē potuit* administrāvit. 5. Equitēs *quam maximum potuērunt* timōrem hostibus intulērunt. 6. Caesar equitēs *quam longissimē* prōgredi jussit. 7. Finēs *quam lātissimē* vastāvērunt. 8. Obsidēs *quam plūrimōs* imperāvit.

¹ Use Gallia, ae.

SENTENTIAE SĒLECTAE¹

1. Tūtissima rēs—timēre nihil praeter Deum. (*Publilius Syrus.*)
2. Chrīstus, "Quī manet in mē," inquit, "et ego in eō, hic fert fructum² multum, quia³ sine mē nihil potestis facere." (*John 15:5.*)
3. Virtūs hominem jungit Deō. (*Cicero.*)
4. Fortior est quī cupiditātēs⁴ suās quam quī hostēs subjicit.⁵ (*Publilius Syrus.*)
5. Beātum⁶ est magis dare quam accipere. (*Acts 20:35.*)
6. Sāctus Paulus, "Omnia,"⁷ inquit, "possum in eō quī mē confortat."⁸ (*Philippians 4:13.*)
7. Accipere quam facere praestat⁹ injūriam.
8. Et mihi rēs, nōn mē rēbus, subjungere¹⁰ cōnor.
9. Nūllus sine victōriā poterit corōnārī.¹¹ (*Office of the Martyrs, The Roman Breviary.*)

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

3. THE EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

The Roman soldier wore a short-sleeved woolen shirt or tunic reaching almost to the knees and gathered in at the waist. He wore tight-fitting trousers, or at least bandages of cloth about his legs. In addition, he had a heavy cloak for bad weather and for sleep

¹ sēlectus, a, um, chosen, selected.

² fructus, ūs, fruit.

³ quia, conj., because (like quod).

⁴ cupiditās, cupiditātis, desire.

⁵ subjiciō, subjicere, subjēcī, subjectus, 3, tr., conquer, subject.

⁶ beātus, a, um, blessed.

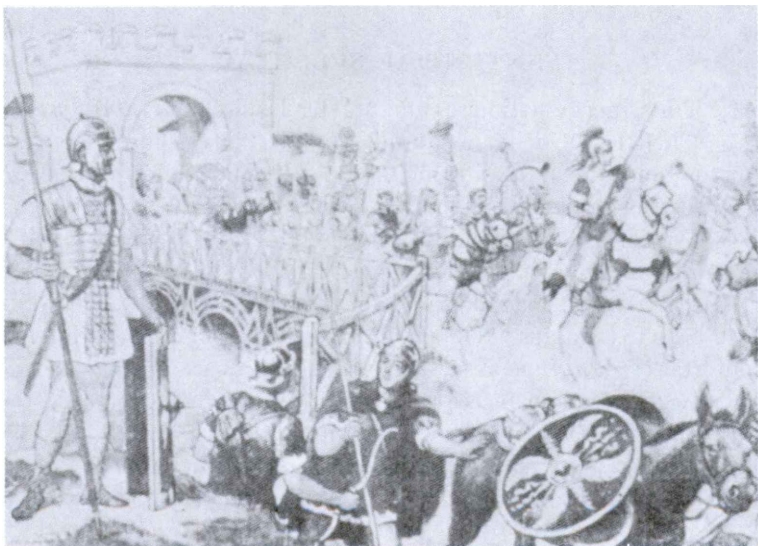
⁷ Notice the use of a neuter adjective as the object of possum: *I can (do) a³ things.*

⁸ confortō, 1, tr., strengthen (cf. fortis).

⁹ praestat: it is better.

¹⁰ subjungō, subjungere, subjūnxī, subjūctus, 3, tr., join from beneath; i. e., subject to.

¹¹ corōnō, 1, tr., crown.



MILITES ROMANI

The Roman army on the march with baggage and packs was a colorful and interesting sight. The soldier in the left foreground is 'modeling' the standard Roman outfit. The long *pilum* which he holds is much like the modern javelin used in track competition; his *gladius*—the two-edged sword for hand-to-hand fighting—hangs from his shoulder. He is protected by helmet, breastplate, and shield. He would thus be prepared for actual service in the field; on the march the helmet was carried in the pack and the shield was generally inclosed in a bag to protect it.

ing. This was worn loosely about the shoulders, leaving the arms free for movement.

In battle the upper part of the body was protected by a leather coat (the *lōrica*), strengthened with metal bands across the shoulders and around breast and back. His helmet was of leather, reinforced with bronze (*galea*) or entirely of metal (*cassis*). He carried a shield (the *scūtum*), about four feet high and two and a half feet wide. It was made of light wood covered with leather and curved to protect the body. His weapons were the *pilum* and the *gladius*.

The *pilum* consisted of a wooden shaft about an inch thick and four feet long, from which projected iron about two to three feet

long, ending in a long steel point. The javelin could pierce metal but, having soft iron just back of the point, would bend after piercing. Thus it could be withdrawn only with difficulty and could not be re-used at once by the enemy. After a battle the soldiers would gather the bent javelins from the field and hammer them straight.

The *gladius* had a two-edged pointed blade about two feet long and almost four inches wide. It would be used for thrusting or striking, and in the hands of a trained Roman soldier it was a deadly weapon. It was carried in a scabbard on the right side, hung on a belt passing over the left shoulder.

Each soldier carried a share of the picks, utensils, and rations, as well as his personal belongings. All this was made up into a bundle (the *sarcina*) weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds and strapped to a forked stick carried over the shoulder. When not readied for action, the helmet and shield were kept in a covering and attached to the *sarcina*. Thus burdened the soldiers were said to be *impediti* (from *impediō*, *encumber*). Before going into action they stacked the *sarcinae*, uncovered and adjusted the helmet and shield, and carried the *pila*. They were then described as *expediti*, ready for action.

LESSON 20: ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 75-145

VOCABULARY

putō, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>think</i>
negō, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>deny</i> <i>say . . . not</i>
exīstimō, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>think</i>
dēmōnstrō, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>show</i> <i>point out</i>
cōnfirmō, 1, tr.	{ <i>encourage</i> <i>strengthen</i>
<i>with acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>affirm</i>
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, 2, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>answer</i>
intelligō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, 3, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>understand</i> <i>perceive</i>
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 3, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>say</i> <i>tell</i>
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animad- versus, 3, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>attend to</i> <i>notice</i>
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>feel</i> <i>perceive</i> <i>think</i>
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>find (out)</i>
sciō, 4, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	<i>know</i>
arbitror, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>consider</i> <i>think</i>
nuntiō, 1, tr.; acc. w. <i>infin.</i>	{ <i>announce</i> <i>report</i>

polliceor, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin. (usually future)	promise
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, 3, tr. and intr.; w. dat. of person to whom or in whom; acc. w. infin.	{ believe trust entrust
dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, 3, tr.	{ distribute station
cōnscribō, cōnscribere, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ enroll write
revertor, revertī, { revertī, { reversus sum, } 3, intr.	return
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, tr.; two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.	{ lead across lead over
impediō, 4, tr.	{ hinder impede

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

A *demonstrative* pronoun is one that points out the person or thing referred to. A *demonstration* shows that something is true. A radio speaker should have very good *diction*. The voting in a democracy reveals the *sentiments* of the people. A *scientist* is one whose work is *scientific* research. Disputes between capital and labor as well as between nations should be settled by *arbitration*. A *creed* is the summary of one's beliefs. A spy attempts to discover the *disposition* of the enemy's troops. Is a *conscript* army as brave as a volunteer army? They gave a *negative* answer. All Catholics should receive *confirmation* to strengthen them in their faith. St. Thomas Aquinas was a man of great *intelligence*.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Impedīmenta; nuntius; firmus.

WORD STUDY

In compounds *trāns*, *across*, *over*, is sometimes shortened to *trā*.

PROBLEM: Explain the meaning of *trādō* from its composition.

Scribō means *write*. **Cōn** (a form for *cum* used in compounds) adds the idea of *together, with*. When soldiers are enrolled, their names are written together on the roll. Hence **cōnscrībō**, *enroll*.

PROBLEMS: 1. Explain the meaning of **conveniō** and **cōnferō** from their composition.

2. Explain the meaning of **dispōnō** from its composition.

1. THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

ASSIGNMENT: 1. Review the present infinitive, page 421.
2. GRAMMAR 885; 897-898.

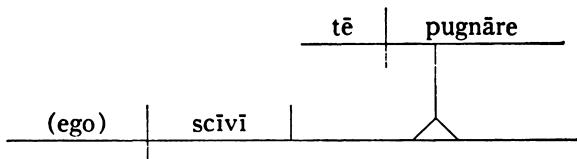
EXERCISE 132

MODELS:¹ **Sciō tē pugnāre.**

I know that you are fighting.

Scīvī tē pugnāre.

I knew that you were fighting.



Translate:

1. Dīcō omnēs nostrōs mīlitēs fortiter pugnāre. 2. Putō omnēs hominēs amīcitiā quaerere. 3. Dēmōnstrābō omnēs sānctōs Deū vehementissimē diligere. 4. Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs ex suis finibus exīre. 5. Caesar animadvertit suōs ab hostium equitibus premī. 6. Imperātor audīvit hostēs in silvīs esse. 7. Caesar vīdit legiōnem tertiam in maximō perīculō esse. 8. Caesar intellēxit mīlitēs in angustīās cōactōs difficillimē vim

¹ In English the tense in the noun clause is different with a present and a past main verb; in Latin the present infinitive is used to express action which takes place at the same time as the action of the main verb.

hostium sustinēre. 9. Rōmānī audivērunt Gallōs omne frūmentum incendere. 10. Galli putāvērunt Caesarem longē abesse.

EXERCISE 133

Translate:

1. I know that there are ten cohorts in one legion. 2. Good men do not deny that God is and that He manages all things in the world very well. 3. Caesar saw that the soldiers were impeded by the baggage. 4. I have shown you that you can arrive at the highest virtue by the grace of God. What is hindering you? 5. I feel that not very many men try to harm others.

2. THE PERFECT INFINITIVE

The PERFECT INFINITIVE ACTIVE of all active Latin verbs, regular and irregular, is formed by adding the ending **-isse** to the perfect active stem.

laudō	{	Perfect active stem: laudāv-
	{	Perfect infinitive active: laudāvisse, <i>to have praised</i>

The PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE is a compound tense made up of the perfect participle passive and **esse**.

laudātus (a, um) esse, *to have been praised*

Deponent verbs form the perfect infinitive in the same way but have ACTIVE meanings.

cōnor	{	Perfect infinitive: cōnātus (a, um) esse,
	{	<i>to have tried</i> (NOT <i>to have been tried</i>)

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 886 ; 899.

EXERCISE 134

1. Form the perfect infinitives, active and passive, of the verbs in Exercise 110 and Exercise 124.

2. Form the perfect infinitives of the verbs in Exercise 125.

EXERCISE 135

MODELS: Sciō tē hoc fēcisse.

I know that you did this.

Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse.

I knew that you had done this.

Translate:

1. Sciō Rōmānōs Chrīstum ad mortem dūxisse. 2. Scītisne Caesarem, virum maximum atque fortissimum, Gallōs vīcissee et pācāvissee? 3. Omnēs puerī Americānī sciunt Columbum maximā cum virtūte ē portū profectum ad novās terrās pervēnissee. 4. Lēgātus dīxit hostēs trāns flūmen iissee. 5. Scīmus Chrīstum summōs dolōrēs prō nōbīs sustinuissee.

EXERCISE 136

MODELS: Scīmus Gallōs ā Caesare victōs¹ esse.

We know that the Gauls were conquered by Caesar.

Scīvimus Caesarem ad Galliam ā senātū missum¹ esse.

We knew that Caesar had been sent to Gaul by the Senate.

Translate:

1. Dicunt obsidēs propter injūriās Gallōrum ā Caesare saepe occīsōs esse. 2. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōsulem Rōmānum ab Helvētiīs superātum atque occīsum esse. 3. Omnēs puerī Rōmānī scīvērunt Rōmam ipsam ā Gallīs captam atque incēnsam esse. 4. Crēdimus Deum omnia et in Caelō et in terrā fēcisse. 5. Dixit hostēs primā lūce profectōs esse.

¹ Remember that in a compound tense the participle must agree with the word to which it refers.

EXERCISE 137

Translate:

1. The Gauls saw that the province had been conquered and held by the Romans. 2. Caesar knew that the Gauls had come into Italy, and had captured and burned Rome itself. 3. We have seen that Caesar, having encouraged his men, often put all his hope in the courage of the legions. 4. We have found out that Caesar very often put a lieutenant in command of the legions. 5. Do you know that a centurion was in command of a hundred men? 6. We shall see that many Romans were killed by the Gauls.

Vīs est vīta.

—Lucilius

3. THE FUTURE INFINITIVE

The FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE is a compound tense, made up of the future participle active and **esse**.

The future participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the stem of the perfect participle passive.

Perfect participle passive: **laudātus, a, um**; Stem: **laudāt-**

Future participle active: **laudāt-ūrus, a, um**

Future infinitive active: **laudātūrus (a, um) esse**

Deponent verbs form their future infinitives in the same way. They therefore have both ACTIVE FORMS and ACTIVE MEANINGS in the future infinitive; thus:

Perfect participle: **cōnātus, a, um**

Future participle: **cōnātūrus, a, um**

Future infinitive: **cōnātūrus (a, um) esse**

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 887; 897-899.

EXERCISE 138

MODELS: Exīstimāvit Helvētiōs fugitūrōs esse.

He thought the Helvetians would flee.

Dīcō mē mānsūrum esse.

I say that I will remain.

Translate:

1. Caesar, dē Helvētiōrum cōsiliīs certior factus, nōn arbitrātus est eōs sine ūllā injūriā iter per prōvinciam factūrōs esse.
2. Caesar respondit hoc magnum perīculum prōvinciae futūrū esse.
3. Caesar audīvit Helvētiōs flūmen vī trānsitūrōs esse.
4. Helvētīi putāvērunt Caesarem in prōvinciā mānsūrum esse.
5. Dīcō Americānōs civitātem suam ab hostibus semper dēfēnsūrōs esse.
6. Exīstimō sānctōs Deum in saecula saeculōrum laudātūrōs esse.

EXERCISE 139

Translate:

1. We believe that God will help us in all dangers.
2. Caesar knew that the Helvetians would lead all their forces across the river into the province and that the danger to the province would be very great.
3. I shall show you¹ that God is very good and that He loves all men.
4. He reported that the Helvetians would cross the river at dawn.
5. Caesar felt that without any fear the legions would attack the enemy.

4. USE OF PRONOUNS IN THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 800-804.

¹ Indirect object of *show*.

EXERCISE 140

MODEL: Caesar negāvit sē illis iter per prōvinciam datū-
rum esse.

Caesar said that he would not give them a passage
(route) through the province.

1. Translate;

2. Parse the italicized words:

1. Gallī dixerunt sē usque ad mortem contrā Rōmānōs pugnātūrōs esse. Gallī dixerunt eōs usque ad mortem sēcum contrā Rōmānōs pugnātūrōs esse. 2. Caesar dixit eōs usque ad mortem contrā sē pugnātūrōs esse. 3. Lēgātus intellēxit suōs, ab equitibus pulsōs, in maximō periculō esse. 4. Dīcō mē usque ad extrēmam vītā in Chrīstī fidē mānsūrum esse. 5. Caesar cōscripsit Gallōs sibi saepe vehementissimē resistere. 6. Caesar negāvit sē ē Galliā ante victōriam comparātam exitūrum esse. 7. Chrīstus cōfirmāvit Spīritum Sānctum ventūrum esse. 8. Rōmānī scīvērunt suōs saepe in maximō periculō fuisse. 9. Helvētīi dēmōnstrāvērunt sē exercitum Rōmānum pepulisse. 10. Negāvistī tē hoc fēcisse.

EXERCISE 141

Translate:

1. We affirm that we shall always remain in the faith of Christ. 2. The Helvetians thought that they could carry enough grain with them. 3. Caesar thought that they would not pass through the province without doing damage.¹ 4. Caesar knew that the leading men of the Gauls feared him. 5. They denied that they would harm the province. 6. The Gauls said that they would harm Caesar in every way. 7. They said that they would not surrender to him.

¹ Translate without wrongs.

5. PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 473-474; 900.

EXERCISE 142

MODELS: *Christus dixit sē esse rēgem.*

Christ said that He was a king.

Caesar dixit suōs esse fortissimōs.

Caesar said that his men were very brave.

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the agreement of the italicized words:*

1. *Christus*, ab eīs rogātus, respondit sē esse *Fīlium* Deī. 2. *Caesar* dixit *Helvētiōs* glōriae *cupidōs* esse. 3. *Dēmōnstrāvit* Belgās omnium Gallōrum *fortissimōs* esse. 4. *Putāsne* *Caesarem* *meliorē* fuisse quam aliōs ducēs? 5. Aliī putābant *Columbum* *audācissimum* esse. 6. Scīmus nōs *sānctōs* esse dēbere.

EXERCISE 143

Translate:

1. We think that our soldiers are all very daring and very brave.
2. We believe that Christ is the King of all men and the Son of God.
3. We affirm that Mary is the mother of God and the holiest of all the saints.
4. All boys know that two and two are four.
5. The Gauls knew that the province, having been conquered by the Romans, was not free. Therefore they themselves determined to fight even to death to defend their liberty.
6. Cicero wrote that he thought friendship a very good thing.
7. We know that we ought to be brave.

DĒ DEŌ ET MUNDŌ

The creation of the world is expressed in the Psalms thus:

Ipse dixit—et facta sunt.

6. IMPERSONAL VERBS IN THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

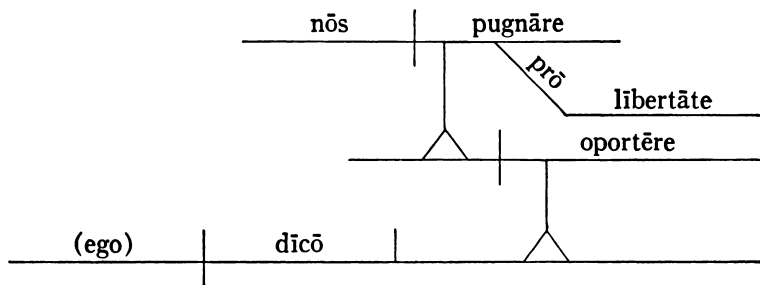
ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 331.

EXERCISE 144

MODEL: Dicō oportēre nōs prō libertāte pugnāre.

I say that it behooves us to fight for liberty.

I say we should fight for liberty.



Translate:

1. Caesar arbitrātus est nōn oportēre sē Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam dare. 2. Existimāvit oportēre sē eōs vī prohibēre. 3. Putāvit oportēre sē omnia ad bellum ūtilia comparāre. 4. Pilātus scīvit oportēre sē vītam Chrīstī cōservāre cōnārī. 5. Dicō oportuisse Pilātum Chrīstī vītam servāre.

EXERCISE 145

Translate:

1. Caesar thought that it behooved him to defend the province. 2. We believe that it behooves us to help others. 3. We know that we should not harm anyone. 4. Do you think that Caesar should not have harmed the Gauls? 5. Cicero wrote that he thought there could be no friendship without virtue. 6. We know that it behooves us to fight on behalf of our liberty. 7. Do you think that Caesar should have waged war with the Gauls?

EXERCISE 146

[Review of Lesson 20]

Translate:

1. I believe there is a God. 2. We know that Caesar was brave. 3. We shall show you that Caesar was a great general. 4. We think that a good king makes a good kingdom. 5. The Senate was informed by Caesar's dispatches that he had pacified Gaul. 6. We have pointed out that the Roman soldiers defended their standards most fiercely. 7. You know that the Romans had very many slaves. 8. Don't you think that slaves are most wretched? 9. Do you think that soldiers are most eager for victory and glory? 10. Americans say that they will always fight most fiercely for liberty. 11. All men know that we Christians put all our hope in the grace of God. 12. They reported to Caesar that the Senate thanked him on account of his victories. 13. Do you deny that kings and chiefs often desire other's fields? 14. We have seen that the Romans waged war with the neighboring tribes for many years. 15. Christ said that He had come into the world that men might know God the Father and Jesus Christ, His Son. 16. Let us remember that the slave of sin is not free. 17. You know that the Germans crossed the Rhine¹ River and seized the fields of Gaul, and that after that they led their forces into Italy and there waged war with the Romans. 18. I think Pilate was not a brave man. 19. Do you think that Caesar was greater than Napoleon? 20. We have seen that Caesar opened all Gaul to the Romans. 21. Do you know that Perry² arrived at Japan³ with our fleet and opened those places to Americans? 22. Do you know that the Jews handed Christ over to the Romans? 23. Caesar said that when the enemy saw the standards of the legions, they withdrew very swiftly into the mountains. 24. Do you think that the Gauls feared Caesar?

¹ *Rhine*, *Rhēnus*, ī.

² Use the English form unchanged in Latin.

³ *Japan*, *Japōnia*, ae.

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

4. THE OFFICERS

In a regular Roman army the officers of the legions were: the commander in chief (*imperātor*), the lieutenants or lieutenants general (*lēgātī*), the quaestor (*quaestor*), the military tribunes (*tribūnī militum*), and the centurions (*centuriōnēs*).

Is quī tōtī bellō et tōtī exercituī praefuit, “dux bellī” aut “imperātor” appellābātur. Summum imperium in suā prōvinciā tenēbat; omnia administrābat omnibusque rēbus praefuit.

The *lēgātī* were the highest officers in the army and were immediate aides to the general. They had no set command and could be employed by the *imperātor* in any capacity he saw fit.

Omnēs *lēgātī* cōsulārēs¹ erant et ā senātū ad exercitum missi sunt. Caesar eōs *lēgātōs* quī idōneī erant saepissimē legiōnibus et exercituī praefēcit. *Lēgātī* saepe ā Caesare missi sunt ad prīncipēs et gentēs Galliae ut cum eīs dē rēbus gravissimīs agerent. Multī ex eīs *lēgātīs* quī cum Caesare in exercitū erant virī optimī atque audācissimī erant eōrumque omnium fortissimus atque diligentissimus fuit Labiēnus, cūjus cōsiliū ac fidem ipse Caesar maximē laudābat.

The *quaestor* was the quartermaster of the army, in charge of supplies and finances. He held the rank of a *lēgātus* and, when capable, took command of units in battle.

There were six military tribunes in each legion and these took command of the legion in rotation. However, many of the tribunes in Caesar's army held their appointment through political favoritism. In actual operations, therefore, Caesar regularly used his lieutenants and the quaestor as commanders of the legions.

Erant sex *centuriōnēs* in ūnā cohorte. *Centuriōnēs* ita appellābantur quod centum militibus praefuērunt. Ex ipsīs militibus

¹ cōsulārīs, e, of consular rank.

ēligēbantur¹ omniumque fortissimī atque ācerimī erant. Cum militibus suis in ipsā aciē pugnābant atque ab ipsō Caesare saepissimē laudābantur.

The centurions, since they rose from the ranks, could expect no further promotion, but there were grades of centurions. The highest was that of the first centurion of the first cohort in a legion, who was called the *primīpīlus*. The *primīpīlus* and a few others were classed as centurions of the first rank (*centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum* or *primī ordinēs*) and were commonly called into the council of war, together with the legates and the military tribunes.

Respondē Latīnē:

1. Quid appellābātur is quī tōtī exercituī praefuit? 2. Quī lēgātōs ad exercitum mīsērunt? 3. Quis fuit optimus omnium lēgātōrum quōs Caesar sēcum habuit? 4. Quot centuriōnēs erant in ūnā cohorte? 5. Quot militibus praeerant?

DĒ SUMMŌ IMPERĀTŌRE

Marcus Tullius Cicero, the greatest of Roman orators, tells us what qualities he expects in a truly great general:

Cicerō, "Ego enim," inquit, "sīc exīstimō in summō imperātōre quattuor hās rēs inesse² oportēre—scientiam³ rei militāris,⁴ virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem.⁵

Read Belloc's description of a great general, pages 8-9. Do Cicero and Belloc agree? Do you agree with them?

¹ ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, 3, tr., choose, select.

² insum, inesse, infuī, intr., am in, belong to.

³ scientia, ae, knowledge.

⁴ rēs (rei) militāris (is), warfare.

⁵ fēlicitās, fēlicitātis, good fortune, luck.

NŌN AMŌ TĒ

Martial, a Roman satirist and writer of epigrams, expresses a personal dislike in the following words:

Nōn amō¹ tē, Sabidī,² nec possum dicere quārē.³

Hoc tantum⁴ possum dicere—nōn amō tē.

HOMŌ SUM

Men are naturally interested in what their fellow men are thinking, saying, and doing. Terence, a Roman playwright, summed up this universal interest of mankind in a line that is often quoted:

Homō sum; hūmānī⁵ nihil ā mē aliēnum⁶ putō.

DĒ AMĪCITIĀ

Possuntne hominēs malī esse vērī⁷ amīcī? Cicerō, vir optimus, arbitrātus est eōs nōn posse vērōs⁷ esse amīcōs, nam haec cōscripsit:

“Sed hoc primum sentiō nisi⁸ in bonīs amīcitiā esse nōn posse.”

¹ amō, 1, tr., *like, love*.

² Sabidius, i, *Sabidius*. Sabidī is vocative case, Gr. 28.

³ quārē, adv., *why*.

⁴ tantum, adv., *only*.

⁵ hūmānus, a, um, *human*. Hūmānī is a partitive genitive with nihil, Gr. 686-687.

⁶ Esse is understood.

⁷ vērūs, a, um, *true, real* (cf. vērītās).

⁸ nisi, conj., *if not, except, unless*.

LESSON 21: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE; INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 146-171

1. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 886; 912-913.

EXERCISE 147

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the relative time of the italicized words;*
3. *Translate the ablative absolutes by a temporal clause:*

1. Hōc proeliō *nuntiātō*, dux cōpiās suās in castra redūxit.
2. Bellis Gallōrum *cōfectis*, Caesar in Italiam profectus est.
3. Armīs *trāditis*, Gallī sē Caesarī dēdidērunt. 4. Acīē hostium
visā, Caesar aciem sub colle celerrimē instrūxit. 5. Ponte *captō*,
Caesar cōpiās suās celerrimē trādūxit. 6. Militēs, pīlis ē locō
superiōre *missis*, in hostēs impetum fortissimē fēcērunt.

EXERCISE 148

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the italicized phrases:*

1. *Caesare duce*, Rōmānī Gallōs proeliō superāvērunt. 2. *Henricō¹ rēge*, Sānctus Thōmas Morus² propter fidem ad mortem ductus est. 3. *Cicerōne cōsule*, magnum bellī periculum erat. 4. *Nōn magnā annī³ parte reliquā*, in Italiam proficiscī contendit. 5. *Washingtoniō duce*, hostēs ex nostrīs finibus pulsī sunt. 6. *Christō duce*, in Caelum magnā cum glōriā perveniāmus.

¹ Henricus, ī, *Henry*.

² Thōmas (ae) Morus (ī), *Thomas More*.

³ annus, ī, *year*.

EXERCISE 149

Translate, using the ablative absolute for the italicized phrases:

1. *These things having been reported*, the barbarians fled.
2. *Rome having been captured*, Camillus was put in command of the army.
3. *This great war having been finished*, peace was made.
4. *The leaders of the Gauls having been killed*, peace was made.
5. *The forces of the enemy having been observed*, Caesar pitched camp.
6. *You being leader*, we shall conquer all our enemies.

EXERCISE 150

Translate:¹

1. Reliquīs aut occīsīs aut captīs, mille milītēs in castra reversī sunt.
2. Vulneribus cōfectus, ad urbem pervenīre nōn potuit.
3. Prīncipēs, diū inter sē locūtī, lēgātōs ad nōs mittere cōstituērunt.
4. Flūmen trānsīre jussī, id facere diligentissimē cōnābantur.
5. Armīs positīs, in fugam sē dedērunt.
6. Hōc proeliō factō, milītēs in hīberna dēdūxit.
7. Duce occīsō, barbarī in omnēs partēs fugērunt.
8. Ponte celeriter factō, cōpiās quās sēcum habēbat trādūxit.
9. Castrīs in idōneō locō positīs, aciem īnstrūxit.
10. Armīs acceptīs, quam maximum obsidum numerum eīs imperāvit.
11. Barbarī dē adventū Caesaris certiōrēs factī, cōpiīs undique coāctīs, finēs suos dēfendere cōstituērunt.
12. Ariovistō duce, Germānī cum Caesare bellum gessērunt.

EXERCISE 151

Translate:

1. The towns having been burned, the barbarians betook themselves into the mountains.
2. Caesar said that, large forces having been collected, the enemy had pitched camp across the river.
3. The Gauls, many wounds having been received, sought safety

¹ Try to find good English expressions for the ablative absolutes. See GRAMMAR 913.

in flight. 4. A favorable¹ battle having been fought,² the lieutenant led the cavalry back into the camp. 5. Gaul having been pacified, Caesar determined to set out for Italy. 6. Caesar said that the cavalry, the enemy having been seen, fled.

NOTE

In English transitive verbs have both an ACTIVE and a PASSIVE past participle: *these things having been said*; *having said these things*.

In Latin regular transitive verbs have ONLY a perfect participle PASSIVE; deponent verbs have ONLY a perfect participle ACTIVE (in meaning).

These things having been said. Hīs dictīs.

Since *dicō* has no perfect participle ACTIVE, it cannot be used to translate an active English participle. Either a deponent verb (if Latin has one with the required meaning) must be used or the construction must be changed to the passive:

Caesar, having said these things, set out.

Caesar, haec locūtus, profectus est.

(Or change to: *These things having been said, Caesar set out.*)

Hīs dictīs, Caesar profectus est.

Caesar, having captured the city, made peace.

(Change to: *The city having been captured, Caesar made peace.*)

Urbe captā, Caesar pācem fēcit.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 914.

EXERCISE 152

Translate:

1. Caesar, having conquered the Gauls, led his army into Italy.
2. The envoys, having said these things,³ went out of the camp.

¹ *favorable, secundus, a, um.*

² Use *faciō*.

³ Translate in two ways.

3. The soldiers, having hurled the javelins, joined battle. 4. Having seen the city, we departed. 5. The soldiers, having received many wounds, remained in the camp for ten days.

NOTE

We have seen that in translating an English ACTIVE past participle either a deponent verb must be used or the construction must be changed to the passive (usually to an ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE).

Sometimes, however, there is no Latin deponent verb with the required meaning and the verb cannot be made passive. In this case the participle must be changed to a clause.

Having come to the town, he pitched camp.

We cannot say, either in English or Latin, *the town having been come to*. We therefore change the sentence to:

When he had come to the town, he pitched camp.

Cum ad urbem vēnisset, castra posuit.

EXERCISE 153

Translate:

(The active participles must be translated by (1) a deponent verb, (2) a passive Latin construction, or (3) a clause.)

1. Caesar, *having observed* the enemy's cavalry, pitched camp. 2. The column, *having advanced* five miles, arrived at a very wide river. 3. The lieutenant, *having come to a suitable place*, pitched camp. 4. The soldiers, *having harmed*¹ the hostages, were killed by the centurion. 5. The leader, *having fortified* the camp with a ditch and a rampart and *having encouraged* his men, prepared to withstand the attack of the enemy. 6. Caesar, *having captured* the town, waited three days for the legions which had been recently enrolled in the province. 7. The Gauls, *having captured*²

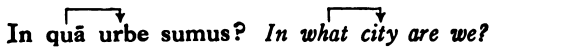
¹ *Warning.* Noceō is intransitive!

² *Warning.* This cannot be changed to an ablative absolute. *Hint:* Make Rome the object of *burned* and omit *it*.

Rome, burned it. 8. Caesar, *having entrusted* this affair to the lieutenant, set out at once for the province. 9. *Having returned* from Gaul, the soldiers were praised by their friends. 10. Caesar, *having noticed this*, led his troops onto the next hill. 11. The enemy *having drawn up* a battle line, Caesar sent the cavalry to withstand their attack. 12. *Having followed* with all their forces, the Helvetians prepared to make an attack at dawn.

2. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

We have used the INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, **quis, quid**, in both direct and indirect questions. The INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE, which is also used in questions, is **quī, quae, quod**. It is declined exactly like the relative pronoun. It asks the question *which?* or *what?*, but since it is an ADJECTIVE, it agrees with a noun in its own clause:





ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 141; 502-503; 660-662.

EXERCISE 154

Translate:

1. What river separated the Gauls from the Belgians? 2. In what year¹ was Christ killed? 3. Of what tribe was Ariovistus king? 4. Which soldier fought most bravely? 5. What camp do we see? 6. Which lieutenant did Caesar put in command of the legions? 7. Which hostage did he harm? 8. He asked which soldiers had resisted the enemy most boldly. 9. To which soldiers did you give the dispatches? 10. With which tribe did he wage

¹ year, annus, i. Use the ablative without a preposition for time when, Gr. 920.

war? 11. Which city do you praise most?¹ 12. At what river did he arrive?

EXERCISE 155

[Review Questions on *The Helvetian Drive to the West*]

*Respondē Latīnē:*²

1. In quot partēs divīsa erat Gallia omnis? 2. Quae gentēs hās partēs incolēbant? 3. Quibus rēbus hae gentēs inter sē differēbant? 4. Quod flūmen Aquītānōs ā Gallis dividēbat? 5. Quōs ā quibus Matrona dividēbat? 6. Quae gēns omnium Gallōrum fortissima erat? 7. Cūr hī omnium erant fortissimī? 8. Cum quā gente proeliīs saepissimē contendēbant? 9. Quae gentēs trāns Rhēnum incolēbant? 10. Intellegisne Helvētiōs Belgīs fortiōrēs fuisse? Nōne Caesar dēmōnstrat et Helvētiōs omnium Gallōrum fortissimōs esse et Belgās omnium Gallōrum fortissimōs esse? Potestne hoc esse vērū?³ 11. Quā rē Helvētiī aliōs superābant? 12. Cūr Helvētiī aliōs superābant? 13. In quōrum finibus Helvētiī bellum gerēbant? 14. Quod flūmen Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dividēbat? 15. Quis omnium Helvētiōrum nōbilissimus erat? 16. Eratne Orgetorīx Helvētius an⁴ Rōmānus? 17. Cūjus rei cupidissimus erat Orgetorīx? 18. Quid fēcit Orgetorīx? 19. Propter quam causam Helvētiī bellum finitimīs inferre nōn facile poterant? 20. Quibus flūminibus et montibus continēbantur Helvētiī? 21. Quam gentem mōns Jūra ab Helvētiīs divīsīt? 22. Quod flūmen Helvētiōs ā prōvinciā Rōmānā divīsīt? 23. Quid Helvētiī maximē cupiēbant? 24. Quibus rēbus inductī, Helvētiī dē finibus suis exīre parāvērunt? 25. Quae ad profectiōnem comparāvērunt? 26. Cūjus rei causā arbitrāris Orgetorigem lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs finitimās sibi suscēpisse?

¹ *most, maximē, adv.*

² Answer orally in complete, simple Latin sentences. In exercises of this sort a knowledge of the vocabulary of the text is assumed.

³ *vērū, a, um, true.*

⁴ *an, particle used in questions, or.*

NOTE ON TRANSLATION

Most of the English sentences which you have been translating have been prepared so that you could translate rather literally. The vocabularies have given you only a few English equivalents for the Latin words. Actually the words and expressions which you have learned can be and often must be changed to other synonyms and constructions when you translate into good English. Thus the meaning given for *libertās* in the vocabulary is *liberty*; it can, however, be translated by the synonym *freedom*.

Libertātis cupidus sum. I am eager for freedom.

In the exercise which follows certain words and phrases are italicized. You have not learned Latin words and constructions as exact equivalents of these, nor will you find them in the vocabulary; yet you do know correct ways of translating them. Think of the meaning of the English and translate into a Latin expression which has the same meaning and which you are certain is correct. Translate IDEAS not merely words.

EXERCISE 156

Translate, using Latin expressions which have the same meaning as the italicized phrases:

1. He was informed of this *matter through the agency* of the Haeduans.
2. After the centurions had been *slaughtered*, the legion was in great *peril*.
3. We shall *battle* for our *freedom*.
4. After the *demise* of the king, many others sought the *throne*.
5. *With these words*, he left.

EXERCISE 157

Give the genitive, etc., and meaning of:

1. crux	5. ratiō	9. fuga
2. cōsul	6. peccātum	10. libertās
3. classis	7. passus	11. nihil
4. praesidium	8. vīs	12. angustiae

13. timor	17. cohors	21. dolor
14. mīlia	18. pīlum	22. socius
15. hōra	19. diēs	23. pēs
16. mors	20. auctōritās	24. causa

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

5. DE EQUITATU

Militēs quī in legiōnibus erant Rŏmānī erant, sed in equitātū Rŏmānī nōn erant. Equitēs enim ad Caesarem ā multīs gentibus missī sunt. Saepe Caesar certum equitum numerum eīs gentibus imperāvit quī cum populō Rŏmānō pācem fēcerant. Praeter Gallōs in equitātū Caesaris erant Germānī. Nam, cum Caesar in Galliā septem¹ annōs² fuisset et omnium rērum inopiā premerētur, equitēs ex Germāniā ad sē vocāvit. Hī celerrimī atque fortissimī erant atque Gallōs facile superābant. Itaque, post id, Caesar equitēs Germānōs sēcum semper habuit.

Signum equitum "vexillum" appellābātur. Is quī equitātū praefuit "praefectus" appellābātur.

Equitēs loca explōrābant omniaque referēbant quae ducem cognōscere oportēbat—quō in locō hostium cōpiae collocātae essent, quantae et quae essent, quid agerent.

In proeliō cum hostium equitibus pugnābant atque hostēs ā legiōnibus in fugam datōs secūtī sunt.

Respondē Anglicē:

1. Was the cavalry in Caesar's army composed of Roman citizens? 2. Where did Caesar recruit his cavalry? 3. What were the standard and the commander of the cavalry called? 4. What were the duties of the cavalry?

¹ septem, seven.

² annus, ī, year.

LESSON 22: PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE; ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (Continued)

The Helvetian Drive to the West, lines 172-217

VOCABULARY

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	go out
potior, 4, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. abl. or gen.</i> ¹	{ get possession of become master of
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, 1, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. pres. infn.</i>	forbid
conjūrō, 1, <i>intr.</i>	{ conspire form a conspiracy
commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ alarm arouse

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The president of the United States has a *veto* power. When the winning run came in there was great *commotion* in the stands.

WORD STUDY

PROBLEMS: Recall *aggredior* and explain *ēgredior* from its composition.

Jūrō means *take an oath*; *con* adds the idea of *together*. When men form a conspiracy or plot together, they bind themselves to secrecy; hence, *conjūrō*, *conspire*, etc.

1. FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Latin has a present participle in the ACTIVE voice ONLY. To form the present participle add to the present stem the endings shown on the following page:

¹ See GRAMMAR 785-787; 721.

	I	II	III	III (-iō Verbs)	IV
<i>Nom.</i>	laud-āns	mon-ēns	mitt-ēns	cap-iēns	aud-iēns
<i>Gen.</i>	laud-antis	mon-entis	mitt-entis	cap-ientis	aud-ientis
	<i>praising</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>sending</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>
		ferō		eō	
<i>Nom.</i>		ferēns		<i>Nom.</i>	iēns
<i>Gen.</i>		ferentis		<i>Gen.</i>	euntis
		<i>bearing</i>			<i>going</i>

Deponent verbs form a present participle that is ACTIVE both in MEANING and in FORM:

<i>Nom.</i>	arbitrāns
<i>Gen.</i>	arbitrantis
	<i>thinking</i>

EXERCISE 158

Form the present participle and give its meaning

- for the verbs in Exercise 110, page 409;
- for these verbs:

1. vetō	14. putō	27. intellegō
2. conjūrō	15. exīstimō	28. sentiō
3. ēgredior	16. animadvertō	29. arbitror
4. negō	17. jungō	30. crēdō
5. dīcō	18. polliceor	31. cōnscrībō
6. reperiō	19. revertor	32. mandō
7. nuntiō	20. impediō	33. dēbeō
8. dispōnō	21. cōstituō	34. conjungō
9. trādūcō	22. jubeō	35. imperō
10. cōsequor	23. permoveō	36. cōfirmō
11. cōnor	24. dēmōnstrō	37. pertineō
12. potior	25. faciō	38. vereor
13. commoveō	26. respondeō	

EXERCISE 159

[Declension of Present Participle, GRAMMAR 307, 82]

Decline:

1. ferēns	4. audiēns	7. monēns
2. mittēns	5. iēns	8. cōnāns
3. capiēns	6. laudāns	9. ēgrediēns

2. USE OF PRESENT PARTICIPLES

It is sometimes difficult to translate a Latin present participle literally into good English. Often a phrase or clause must be used. See GRAMMAR 885; 907-911.

Militēs pīla in hostēs veniēntēs jēcērunt.

(Lit.: *The soldiers hurled javelins into the enemy coming.*)

The soldiers hurled javelins into the

enemy as they came on.
enemy as (while) they
were coming on.
oncoming enemy.
advancing enemy.

EXERCISE 160

Translate:

1. In hostēs ex silvīs ēgredientēs tēla jaciēbant. 2. Servī centuriōnem vetantem ac prohibentem interfēcērunt. 3. Lēgātus nuntium militēs commoventem occīdit. 4. Equitēs prīncipēs inter sē conjūrantēs cēpērunt. 5. Caesar, cum castris hostium potītus esset, equitēs mīsīt quī hostēs fugientēs cōnsequerentur. 6. Ibi Catulus, fortissimē pugnāns, interfectus est. 7. Petentibus Gallīs frūmentum dedit. 8. Hostēs centuriōnem fortissimē pugnantem occīdērunt. 9. Clāmor Gallōrum proficīscientium ā nostris audītus est. 10. Equitēs hostēs in silvās fugientēs secūtī sunt. 11. Militēs in hostēs ācerrimē resistentēs impetum fēcērunt. 12. Barbarōs flūmen trānsire cōnantēs vī prohibuit. 13. Hominem sē esse libērum dīcentem interfēcērunt.

EXERCISE 161

Translate:

(The italicized expressions are to be translated by a present participle. Translate the MEANING by words you now know.)

1. He hindered the enemy *as they were trying* to go out of the town. 2. *While fighting* most bravely, he was killed. 3. Mary saw Christ *carrying* the cross. 4. The cavalry killed a large number of the enemy *as they were fleeing*. 5. They captured him *on his way back* to Italy. 6. They saw the leader *encouraging* his men. 7. They pursued the slave *hastening* through the forest. 8. *As he was encouraging* his men, he was killed by a javelin. 9. The slave saw the cavalry *crossing* the river. 10. They hurled javelins from the high place into the *advancing* enemy.

3. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Remember that the PRESENT participle in Latin is always ACTIVE. Notice its use in the ablative absolute.

Nostrīs prōgredientibus, hostēs in castra fūgērunt.

(Lit.: *Our men advancing, the enemy fled into the camp.*)

<i>As our men were advancing,</i>	} <i>the enemy fled into the camp.</i>
<i>While our men were advancing,</i>	
<i>At the advance of our men,</i>	

EXERCISE 162

Translate:

1. Deō adjuvante, ad summam virtūtem pervenīre possumus. 2. Annō¹ ineunte, novī cōsulēs factī sunt. 3. Gallīs conjūranti-
bus, Caesar bellum gerere parāvit. 4. Ēgredientibus mīlitibus,
servōrum clāmor audītus est. 5. Nostrīs fortissimē pugnātibz,
hostēs pedem rettulērunt. 6. Arbitrātus est sē, adjuvante prīn-
cipe, imperiō potītūrum esse. 7. Militibus equitēs timentibus

¹ annus, ī, year.

atque pedem referentibus, Caesar, in primam aciem prōgressus, cum hostibus ipse pugnāvit. 8. Caesare vetante, flūmen trānsire cōnātī sunt.

EXERCISE 163

Translate:

Warning. Be careful to observe the rules for relative time. Explain why you use the present or the perfect participle.

1. Caesar, having become master of the camp, remained there three days. 2. (While) crossing the river he heard the shouts of the enemy. 3. Capturing¹ the city, he burned it. 4. He saw Caesar encouraging his men.

EXERCISE 164

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the relative time of the italicized words:*

1. Dux Rōmānus, cum rēgem suōs *cohortantem cōspexisset*, centuriōnem ad eum mīsīt quī dē mīlitum salūte cum eō ageret. 2. Hostēs, in fugam *datī*, sē ipsī impediunt. 3. Centuriō, pilō in hostēs *missō*, ūnum ex eīs *prōgredientem* occidit. 4. Equitēs hostem gladium *ēducere*² *cōnantem* interfēcērunt. 5. Magnā parte mīlitum vulneribus *cōnfectā*, rēs in maximum perīculum dēducta est. 6. Mīlitēs cum litterīs ad Caesarem *missī* sunt; quōrum plūrimī *captī* in cōspectū nostrōrum interfecitī sunt. 7. Caesar, *acceptīs* litterīs, nuntium ad Crassum, cūjus hiberna multa mīlia passuum aberant, statim mīsīt. 8. Hostis lēgātum in Galliam *contententem cēpit*. 9. Firmō ad pontem praesidiō *relictō*, reliquās cōpiās flūmen trādūxit. 10. Hīs *cognītīs* rēbus, castrīs idōneō locō *positīs*, legiōnem nūperrimē *cōnscrip̄tam* exspectāvīt. 11. Proeliō secundō³ *factō*, equitēs hostēs in proximōs montēs *fugientēs* secūtī sunt.

¹ This must be a perfect participle in Latin. Why?

² *ēducō, ēducere, ēdūxī, ēductus*, 3, tr., *lead out, draw out*.

³ *secundus, a, um, successful*.

EXERCISE 165

[Practice in Idiom]

MODEL: *At the advance of our men, the enemy hid in the forest.*

(Change to: *Our men advancing, the enemy hid in the forest.*)

Nostris prōgredientibus, hostēs sē in silvās abdidērunt.

*Translate, using an ablative absolute or some other participial construction for the italicized phrases:*¹

1. They fled *in terror* into the nearest forest. 2. *At the advance of our men*, the enemy withdrew. 3. *While fighting most bravely* in the first battle line, he was killed by a dart. 4. *In the reign of Augustus*, Christ was a boy. 5. *On hearing about the battle*, he immediately set out for Gaul. 6. *Being followed by the cavalry*, they drew up a battle line on a hill. 7. *With the help of God* we shall remain in the Christian faith. 8. *When they had advanced five miles* they saw the enemy's battle line. 9. Our men took the hill *with heavy casualties*. 10. *In the consulship of Caesar*, Cicero left Rome. 11. *At the beginning of the year*² Caesar departed for Italy. 12. *Because of their alarm* at the arrival of Caesar, the Gauls hid in the forest.

EXERCISE 166

Change the italicized clauses to a participial construction:

1. *Haec cum dixisset*, dē murō sē dējēcit. 2. Caesar, *cum urbem cēpisset*, eam incendit. 3. Servus, *cum ex silvīs ēgrederētur*, captus est. 4. Centuriō, *cum in aciē fortissimē pugnāret*, occisus est.

¹ Participles, and especially the ablative absolute, are widely used in Latin to express ideas for which English commonly uses various other idioms. Think of the MEANING of the English and express it in words you now know. Be careful to keep the proper time relationship in Latin.

² year, annus, ī.

EXERCISE 167

[Review]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the syntax of the translation of the italicized words:*

1. Was Caesar the *greatest* of all the Romans? 2. He pointed out where the enemy *was*. 3. *Let us defend* our liberty *with the greatest courage*. 4. Christ came *that* men *might* more easily *know* the truth. 5. Caesar said that *his men had fought* most fiercely. 6. Saying this, he hurled *himself down from* the wall. 7. The Romans killed the Gauls *resisting them*. 8. When the Germans *had conquered* all France,¹ the Britons did not surrender to *them*. 9. Nothing is better and nobler *than the truth* of Christ. 10. Of what thing are you more desirous than *of the grace of God*? 11. *In what* did the Germans and Gauls differ? 12. The cavalry, *having terrified* the enemy, drove them into the forest. 13. Caesar said that he *would drive* the Germans out of Gaul. 14. Cicero and Caesar were great men. *The one* wrote many things; *the other* did many things.

ŌRĀTIŌ

FROM THE MASS OF OUR LADY OF THE WAY

Domine Jēsū Chrīste,² quī es via, vērītās, et vīta, concēde³ propitius⁴ ut per intercessiōnem⁵ beātae⁶ Mariāe Virginis⁷ Mātris tuae, viam mandātōrum⁸ tuōrum currentēs,⁹ ad vītā perveniā-

¹ Use Gallia, ae.

² Domine Jēsū Chrīste; vocatives, Gr. 678.

³ concēde: *grant*; imperative.

⁴ propitius, a, um, *well-disposed, gracious*.

⁵ intercessiō, intercessiōnis, *intercession*.

⁶ beātus, a, um, *blessed*.

⁷ virgō, virginis, *virgin*.

⁸ mandātum, i, *command*.

⁹ currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, 3, intr., *run*. (Usually an intransitive verb, but it is transitive here.)

mus aeternam:¹ Qui vivis et rēgnās² cum Deō Patre in ūnitāte³ Spīritūs Sānctī Deus per omnia saecula saeculōrum. Āmēn.

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

6. DE AUXILIIS

Caesar had with him a large force of light-armed soldiers that he usually called auxiliaries (*auxilia*). Like the cavalrymen, these too were not Roman citizens. There were slingers (*funditōrēs*) from the Balearic Islands and archers (*sagittārii*) recruited from Crete and Numidia. These, however, were rather specialized types of fighters. Besides these there were contingents of variously equipped Gauls contributed by Caesar's Gallic allies.

The *auxilia* could not be used like the legions in serious tactical maneuvers or in steady fighting. Both their training and their equipment made them unsuitable for this. They were used in skirmishes and raids; they harassed an attacking or a retreating enemy. Of course, they could be employed in the construction of necessary fortifications and other special assignments.

Their higher officers, like those of the cavalry, were called *praefecti* and their banners *vexilla*.

A RIDDLE

Ultrō⁴ nōlō⁵ loquī, sed dō respōnsa⁶ loquentī.

¹ aeternus, a, um, *eternal*.

² rēgnō, 1, intr., *reign*.

³ ūnitās, ūnitātis, *unity*.

⁴ ultrō: *of my own accord*.

⁵ nōlō: *I am unwilling*.

⁶ respōnsum, ī, *answer*.

LESSON 23: *VOLŌ*; TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *UBI, UT PRIMUM, POSTQUAM, ETC.*

Revolt along the Seacoast, lines 1-53

VOCABULARY

<i>ut primum, conj.</i>	}	<i>as soon as</i>
<i>cum primum, conj.</i>		
<i>postquam, conj.</i>		<i>after</i>
<i>ubi, conj.</i>		<i>when</i>
<i>volō, velle, voluī, tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. infin.;</i>	{	<i>am willing</i>
<i>ut (nē)</i>		
<i>ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus, 3, tr.; w. dat. of person</i>	{	<i>take away</i>
<i>or thing from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w. abl.</i>		
<i>vīrēs, vīrium, f.</i>	{	<i>strength</i>
<i>mājōrēs, mājōrum, m.</i>	{	<i>ancestors</i>
<i>tempus, temporis, n.</i>		<i>time</i>
<i>sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, 3, tr.</i>	{	<i>take</i>
<i>tot, indecl. adj.</i>		<i>so many</i>
<i>ventus, ī</i>		<i>wind</i>

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

An act must be *voluntary* in order to be a sin. *Temporal* affairs.
A *temporary* appointment.

1. *VOLŌ*

Volō is irregular only in the present indicative, the present infinitive, and the present and imperfect subjunctive. The imperfect and future indicative and the present participle have the endings of the third conjugation on the stem *vol-*. The perfect tenses are formed regularly on the stem *volu-*.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 398; 402-404; 414-417.**EXERCISE 168***Translate:*

1. Īre volō. 2. Imperiō potīrī voluit. 3. Deum laudāre volumus. 4. Dēmōnstrat quid velit. 5. Christus nōs ē morte ēripere vult. 6. Tē mē omnibus vīribus adjuvāre voluī. 7. Mājorēs nostrī nōs liberōs esse voluērunt. 8. Dux mīlitēs frūmentum ex agrīs sūmere volēbat. 9. Aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit neque equitēs contrā hostēs mittere voluit. 10. Puer illud praemium volet. 11. Illā viā ire nōn volēbant. 12. Quid facere vīs? 13. Eī praemia dedit ut sē adjuvāre vellet. 14. Certum eī reī tempus cōstituere voluērunt. 15. Prīnceps, "Quid," inquit, "volunt Rōmānī nisi¹ imperiō omnium gentium potīrī"? 16. Rogāvit lēgātōs quid vellent. 17. Dīxit Rōmānōs sociōs suōs omnibus vīribus dēfendere velle. 18. Vīsne sāctus esse? 19. Caesar illās gentēs adire volēbat. 20. Dixit sē dē hīs rēbus cum rēge agere velle. 21. Saepe hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. 22. Quae volumus, ea libenter² crēdimus.

Obēdīre³ oportet Deō magis quam hominibus.

—Acts of the Apostles 5:29

EXERCISE 169*Translate:*

1. He wishes to go out of the camp. 2. They wished to be free. 3. He told them what he wished. 4. They were willing to help Caesar. 5. They wished to visit those places. 6. What do you wish? 7. We are willing to fight for liberty. 8. Do you wish

¹ nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

² libenter, adv., *willingly, readily.*

³ obēdiō, 4, intr.; w. dat., *obey.*

to see Rome? 9. He wished to flee. 10. After so many battles they will be willing to make peace.

2. TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *UT PRIMUM, CUM PRIMUM, ETC.*

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 556-557.

EXERCISE 170

Translate:

1. Benedictus Arnold, ut primum intellēxit Americānōs reperisse sē Britannōs adjuvāre velle, sē ē castrīs Americānīs ēripuit. 2. Caesar, cum primum per annī¹ tempus potuit, ad exercitum reversus est. 3. Caesar postquam intellēxit sē tempus frūstrā² sūmere neque hostēs fugā prohibēre posse, classem exspectāre cōstituit. 4. Tot proeliis factis, hostēs, ubi intellexērunt sē Caesarem vincere nōn posse, pācem cum eō facere voluērunt. 5. Deus nōs ē tot ac tantis³ periculis ēripuit. 6. Ubi intellēxi mājōrēs nostrōs libertātem omnibus vīribus dēfendisse atque ita nōbīs trādidisse, eōs magnōpere laudāvi. 7. Dux, postquam animadvertit ventum ācrem nāvibus⁴ nocēre, eās in portū continuit. 8. Postquam Caesar novissimum agmen ab hostibus premī animadvertit, omnēs cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit castraque ibi posuit. 9. Pilātus, postquam intellēxit Christum sē esse rēgem dixisse, eum ad mortem dūcī jussit. Nam imperātōrem Rōmānum vehementer timēbat. 10. Columbus, ut primum in novam terram pervēnit, grātiās Deō maximās ēgit. 11. Ut primum Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis ad illud oppidum pervēnit, Galli lēgātōs ad eum misērunt quī dē pāce atque suā salūte agerent. 12. Caesar, postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre

¹ annus, ī, year.

² frūstrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.

³ tantus, a, um, so great.

⁴ nāvis, nāvis, ship.

vidit, exercitum trāns flūmen dūcere, atque ibi in summō colle castra pōnere contendit. 13. Barbarī, postquam Rōmānōs collem occupāvisse animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 14. Ut primum aciēs hostium cōspecta est, Caesar suōs instrūxit hortātusque est. 15. Ubi Helvētiī sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia incendērunt. 16. Helvētiī, ubi dē adventū Caesaris certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 17. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negāvit Caesar sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et cōfirmat sē eōs vī prohibitūrum esse. 18. Dux, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cognōvit, contrā eum cum omnibus cōpiīs contendit. 19. Ubi signa legiōnum appropinquāre coepērunt, barbarī sē in proximōs montēs cōtulērunt. 20. Caesar, ubi intellēxit neque fugam hostium ex oppidīs reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, cōstituit exspectāre classem. 21. Caesar, ubi intellēxit quō in locō hostium cōpiaie essent, ad eōs contendit. 22. His rēbus celeriter administrātis, ut primum per annī¹ tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. 23. Hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt.

EXERCISE 171

Translate:

(Use a conjunction from GRAMMAR 556 in each sentence.)

1. As soon as the sailor sighted² land he informed Columbus, who at once gave thanks to God. 2. As soon as the Japanese made an attack on our great harbor, we determined to wage war. 3. After Caesar had conquered Gaul, there was peace but no liberty in Gaul. 4. As soon as he was saved from this danger, he thanked God. 5. When he had seen the enemy on the hill, he pitched camp and prepared to join battle. 6. As soon as he saw them coming (on), he hurled himself against the enemy.

¹ annus, i, year.

² sighted = observed.

NOTE ON IDIOM

The Romans did not, as a rule, use two main verbs connected by *and* to describe separate actions. The verb expressing the first action in time was generally a participle.

They captured and killed the king.

Two actions are here expressed. Since the *capturing* is prior to the *killing*, this sentence is translated :

Rēgem captum interfēcērunt.

EXERCISE 172

[Exercise in Idiom]

Translate, using the correct Latin construction :

1. The Gauls captured and burned the very city of Rome.¹
2. He said this and departed. 3. They captured ten Gauls and led them to Caesar. 4. Two thousand soldiers were captured and kept in the town. 5. They made an attack and put the enemy to flight.

EXERCISE 173

[Questions on the Text of Caesar]

Respondē Latīnē :

1. Cūr arbitrātus est Caesar Galliam esse pācātam? 2. Cūr Caesar in Illyricum profectus est? 3. Quae causa fuit novī bellī? 4. Cūr amplissima erat Venetōrum auctōritās? 5. Quī initium bellī fēcērunt? 6. Cūr Venetī lēgātōs Rōmānōs retinuērunt? 7. Cūr aliae quoque gentēs lēgātōs retinuērunt? 8. Cupivēruntne hae omnēs gentēs liberae esse? 9. Ā quō dē hōc novō bellō Caesar certior factus est? 10. Quae Caesar lēgātum facere jussit? 11. Quandō² reversus est Caesar ad exercitum? Intereā ubi fuerat Caesar? 12. Quās rēs maximē Venetī eōrumque sociī parāvērunt?

¹ *Rome* is in apposition with *city*; don't use the genitive of a proper noun with *urbs*, Gr. 682.

² *quandō*, interrog. adv., *when*.

13. Ex quibus locis auxilium arcessivērunt? 14. Quibus rēbus inductus Caesar bellum suscēpit?

EXERCISE 174

[Questions on the Text of Caesar]

Respondē Anglicē:

1. Cūr, tot aliis gentibus victis, tot principibus aliarum gentium occisis, tot agris vastatis, Veneti tamen arbitrati sunt sese vim Romanorum sustinere posse? 2. Cūr Caesar arbitratus est se debere omnibus viribus Venetos reprimere ac celerrime vincere? 3. Cūr Caesar, ante id bellum, exercitum latius distribuit?

DEUS VULT

(Battle cry of the First Crusade)

EXERCISE 175

[Review]

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the translation of the italicized words:*

1. *Let us not be alarmed* by danger. 2. *May God save* us from sin. 3. *Let* the lieutenant *manage* this affair. 4. Do you know who *is* commander in chief of the American army and fleet? 5. He said that *he* would defend *his* allies *against* the Romans. 6. We Americans have always been devoted to *liberty*. 7. When the Romans *were crossing* a *very* wide and deep river, they were attacked by the enemy's cavalry. 8. Are our mountains higher *than the Alps*? 9. The lieutenant who was in command of the third *legion* saw the leader of the Gauls *drawing up* a battle line on *top* of the next hill. 10. He fortified the camp *with a ditch five feet* wide. 11. Let us be free *from the fear* of death. 12. The Gauls *themselves* killed one of *their own* men *with darts*. 13. Shall

we always be able *to defend* our territory? 14. The Senate sent Caesar *to defend* the province. 15. *Having killed* many Gauls, Caesar took the camp by force.

DĒ EXERCITŪ RŌMĀNŌ

7. DE CLASSI

Caesar had no separate naval organization cooperating with him in Gaul. When sea fighting became necessary (as in the war with the Veneti), a fleet was constructed, professional pilots and rowers recruited, and regular legionary soldiers assigned to each ship. A *lēgātus* like Brutus might be put in command.

The warships were built for speed and were about eight times as long as they were broad. Hence they were called *nāvēs longae*. They were equipped with a sail, but in battle depended for mobility and speed on rowers. The prow was armed with a metal beak (the *rostrum*). The Romans maneuvered for position to drive hard at the enemy and ram him with the rostrum. Failing this, they attempted to grapple the ships together and let the legionary troops carry on the battle as on land.

The *nāvēs longae* also carried artillery, the *tormenta* for throwing stones and arrows, and towers from which javelins could be hurled.

Transports (*nāvēs onerariae*) were much shorter and wider than the *nāvēs longae*.

SENTENTIAE SĒLECTAE

1. Nīl ēripit Fortūna, nisi¹ quod et² dedit. (*Publilius Syrus.*)
2. Chrīstus, "Quī vult," inquit, "venīre post mē, abneget³

¹ nisi, conj., *except*.

² et, conj., *also*.

³ abnegō, 1, tr., *deny*.

sēmetipsum¹ et tollat² crucem suam et sequātur mē.” (*Matthew 16:24.*)

3. Beātī³ certē omnēs esse volumus. (*Cicero.*)

4. In magnīs et⁴ voluisse sat⁵ est. (*Propertius.*)

5. Utrumque etiam vitium⁶ est—et omnibus crēdere et nūllī.
(*Seneca.*)

Quī loquitur quod vult, quod nōn vult audiet ille.

Quīque facit quod vult, quod nōn vult sufferet⁷ ille.

¹ -met; an emphasizing suffix.

² tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, tr., *take up, lift up.*

³ beātus, a, um, *happy.*

⁴ et, conj., *also.*

⁵ sat; short form of satis.

⁶ vitium, ī, *fault, defect.*

⁷ sufferet: *will suffer.*

LESSON 24: *FĪŌ*; NOUN *UT*-CLAUSES

Revolt along the Seacoast, lines 54-92

VOCABULARY

<i>fīō, fierī, factus sum, irreg., intr.; ut (ut nōn)</i>	<i>am made</i> <i>am done</i> <i>become</i> <i>happen</i>
<i>imperō, 1, tr.; w. dat. of person</i> <i>with ut (nē)</i>	<i>levy</i> <i>order</i> <i>command</i>
<i>mandō, 1, tr.; w. dat. of person</i> <i>with ut (nē)</i>	<i>commit</i> <i>entrust</i> <i>command</i>
<i>efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, 3, tr.; ut (ut nōn or nē)</i>	<i>bring about</i> <i>cause</i>
<i>persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, 2, intr.; w. dat.; ut (nē)</i>	<i>persuade</i>
<i>ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infn.</i>	<i>show</i> <i>tell</i>

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

The *effects* of the atomic bomb are tremendous. It is better to achieve by *persuasion* than by force. Christ gave His Church a *mandate* to preach the Gospel to every creature. Why is the *imperative* mood so called?

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Imperātor est is quī summum imperium tenet.

1. FĪŌ

Faciō forms no regular passive in the present system.¹ Instead, **fīō**, *am made, am done, become, happen*, is used.

Impetum faciunt. *They are making an attack.*

Impetus fit. *An attack is being made.*

All the tenses of **fīō** have the endings of the fourth conjugation (on the stem **f-**) EXCEPT the IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (**fierem**, etc.).

EXERCISE 176

Before studying the assignment write out the present, imperfect, and future indicative and the present subjunctive of **fīō** (stem: **f-**; endings of the fourth conjugation).

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 362; 366-368; 381-382; 384.

NOTE

Compounds of **faciō** made with prepositions—**efficiō** (**ex** + **faciō**), **praefficiō** (**prae** + **faciō**), etc.—form their passives regularly (like the passive of **capiō**—**efficior**, **efficiēbar**, etc.).

Efficitur. *It is being brought about.*

EXERCISE 177

Translate:

1. It is being done. 2. It happened. 3. A bridge was being made. 4. A great slaughter will be (done). 5. A battle happened. 6. They will become Americans.² 7. He will be made consul.² He was not made king.² 8. What is happening? 9. He showed them what he wished to be done. 10. These wrongs having been done, the Gauls prepared to wage war.

¹ All the tenses of the perfect system passive are formed regularly by using **factus** with the required forms of **sum**.

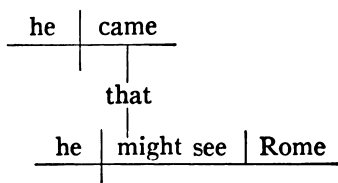
² Predicate noun.

2. NOUN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *UT*, *UT NŌN, NĒ, UT NĒ*

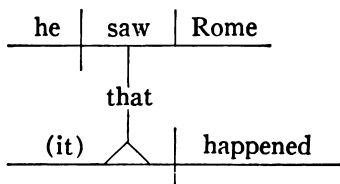
Compare the following sentences :

1. *He came that he might see Rome.*
Vēnit ut Rōmam vidēret.
2. *It happened that he saw Rome.*
Factum est ut Rōmam vidēret.
3. *They persuaded him that he should see Rome.*
Eī persuāsērunt ut Rōmam vidēret.

In sentence 1 the subordinate clause gives the **PURPOSE** of the main action and is therefore an **ADVERBIAL** clause.

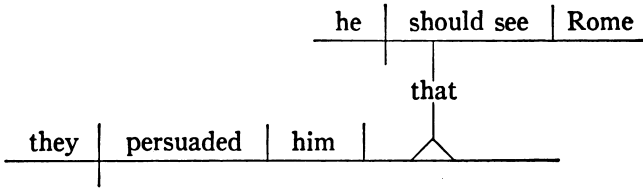


In sentence 2 the subordinate clause expresses **WHAT HAPPENED**; *that he saw Rome* is a **NOUN CLAUSE**, the subject of the verb *happened*. The main clause, *it happened*, implies that something came about and, as a result, he saw Rome. The subordinate clause is therefore a **RESULT** clause (page 476).



In sentence 3 the subordinate clause expresses the **THING** that they persuaded him to do. It is a **NOUN CLAUSE** used as the object of *persuade*. Since the main clause implies that there was

a purpose in the persuading, the subordinate clause may be considered a noun clause of purpose.



ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 637-640.

EXERCISE 178

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized words:*

1. Lēgātō mandāvit *ut* quam maximum equitum numerum cōgeret. 2. Eōs monuit *nē* fugerent. 3. Factum est *ut* hostēs perterriti fugerent. 4. Volō *ut* mihi amicus sis. 5. Saepe fit *ut* hominēs id quod volunt crēdant. 6. Effēcit *ut* pōns fieret. 7. Custōdibus imperāvīt *nē* obsidibus nocērent. 8. Factum est *ut* equitēs ante id tempus ad castra *nōn* pervenīrent. 9. Orgetorix Helvētiīs persuāsīt *ut* cum omnibus cōpiīs ex suis finibus exīrent. 10. Caesar Haeduīs persuāsīt *nē* hostēs *adjuvārent*. 11. Dux centuriōnibus ostendit quae fieri *vellet*. 12. Factum est *ut* ventus idōneus *nōn* esset. 13. Gallō magnīs praemiīs persuāsīt *ut* litterās ad Caesarem ferret. 14. Servō spē libertātis magnīsque praemiīs persuāsīt *ut* litterās ad Caesarem ferret. 15. Illis persuādēre cōnātus est *nē* suis auxilium ferrent. 16. Orgetorix Casticō persuāsīt *ut* rēgnum in suā cīvitatē occupāret quod pater antea habuerat. 17. Facile hāc orātiōne eis persuādet. 18. Helvētiī undique continēbantur. Hāc rē fiēbat *ut* minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. 19. Cum duae maximae gentēs per longum tempus dē tōtius Galliae imperiō contendissent, factum est *ut* altera Germānōs ad sē vocāret. 20. Factum est *ut* primum nostrōrum impetum hostēs *nōn* ferrent. 21. Princeps Gallōrum, “Nōn sine causā,” inquit, “fit *ut* Caesar hiberna in nostrā cīvitatē

collocet." 22. Nātūrā fit ut hominēs rēbus novīs atque incognitīs¹ vehementius terreantur.

EXERCISE 179

Translate:

(For *command* use *mandō* or *imperō*.)

1. He commanded the cavalry to follow the fleeing enemy. 2. He commanded the soldiers to fortify the camp with a ditch and a rampart. 3. He brought it about that there was peace in the province. 4. It happened that no guards had been stationed there. 5. He tried to persuade the Helvetians not to go through the province. 6. He warned the slave to carry the dispatches to Caesar most swiftly. 7. It often happens that men commit many sins. 8. Let us persuade all men to love one another.² 9. I wish that you would help me.³ 10. It happened that no one observed the soldiers coming out of the woods.

EXERCISE 180

[Questions on the Text of Caesar]

Respondē Anglicē:

1. Can you show that Caesar's distribution of forces was strategically well planned?⁴ 2. Quis classī praefectus est? 3. Compare the ships of the Veneti and the Romans. 4. Cūr Caesar classem expectāre cōstituit?

DĒ LŪCE

Dixitque Deus : Fīat lūx. Et facta est lūx.⁵

¹ incognitus, a, um, *unknown*.

² *one another*: inter sē; Gr. 840.

³ Do not use an infinitive construction.

⁴ Study the map, page 74.

⁵ Genesis 1:3.

EXERCISE 181

[Review]

1. *Translate;*
2. *Explain the syntax of the translation of the italicized words:*

1. When they *had advanced five miles*, they pitched camp in a suitable place and prepared *to withstand* the attack of the Germans. 2. He said, "Virtue, *than which* nothing is nobler, is praised for¹ *itself*." 3. We all remember that wretched man, Benedict Arnold. He tried to *injure his own men*, and, *when the affair became known to the Americans*, he fled to the enemy. 4. Caesar led *his men* against both the Gauls and the Germans without any fear. 5. We shall not be alarmed by the fear of death *itself*. 6. This *very* city the Gauls captured and burned. 7. Caesar was able to lead his men across *very* high mountains and *very* wide rivers. Nothing hindered him, for he was *very* brave and daring.

Quicquid² fit cum virtūte, fit cum glōriā.

—Publilius Syrus

DĒ AMĪCITIĀ

1. Amīcitiae vīs est in eō ut ūnus quasi³ animus⁴ fiat ex plūribus. (*Adapted from Cicero.*)

2. Haec lēx in amīcitiā sancīatur,⁵ ut neque rogēmus rēs turpēs⁶ nec faciāmus rogātī.

¹ Use per.

² quisquis, quicquid (quidquid), *whoever, whatever*.

³ quasi, adv., *as it were*.

⁴ animus, ī, *mind, soul*.

⁵ sancīatur: *let . . . be ordained*.

⁶ turpis, e, *shameful, base*.

LESSON 25: RESULT AND CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES; RULES FOR TIME

Revolt along the Seacoast, lines 93-116

VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. abl.</i> ¹	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{use} \\ \textit{employ} \\ \textit{exercise} \end{array} \right.$
nēmō, nēminis ²	<i>no one</i>
cāritās, cāritātis	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{charity} \\ \textit{love} \end{array} \right.$
tālis, e	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{such} \\ \textit{of such a kind} \end{array} \right.$
tantus, a, um	<i>so great</i>
sīc, <i>adv.</i> }	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so} \\ \textit{in such a manner}^3 \end{array} \right.$
ita, <i>adv.</i> }	
tam, <i>adv.</i> }	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so} \\ \textit{to such a degree}^3 \end{array} \right.$
adeō, <i>adv.</i> }	
annus, ī	<i>year</i>

RELATED ENGLISH WORD

Thanksgiving is an *annual* celebration.

1. RESULT AND CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 550-551; 554; 633-634; 636.

¹ GRAMMAR 785.

² Nūllius, nūllō, and nūllā are usually used instead of nēminis and nēmine. Nēmō is also used sometimes as an adjective. nēmō miles: *no soldier*.

³ Note that sīc and ita are used to express MANNER; tam and adeō to express DEGREE.

EXERCISE 182

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized words:*

1. Hōc ūsī cōnsiliō, tam celeriter ē castrīs ēgressī sunt *ut* nostrī cōsequī *nōn potuerint*. 2. Caesar nihil tam difficile esse exīstimābat *ut* virtūte cōsequī *nōn posset*. 3. In cōspectū¹ ipsīus Caesaris rēs gerēbātur *ut* nūllum fortius factum latēre² *posset*. 4. Nēmō est *quī* sine amīcō bene vīvere *possit*. 5. Summīs rērum omnium angustīis premēbantur adeō *ut* in suōs fīnēs cōpiās reducere *cōgerentur*. 6. Adeō fortissimē pugnāvērunt nostrī *ut* hostēs *jūgerint*. 7. Nēmō adeō fortis est ut numquam³ *perturbētur*. 8. Nōn is est quī metū mortis *terreātur*. 9. Tālis nōn est ut hāc rē *commoveātur*. 10. Ariovistus, Germānōrum rēx, is nōn erat quī Rōmānōs *timēret*. 11. Nēmō est quī miser esse *velit*. 12. Nēmō reperiētur quī miserum sē velle esse *dīcat*. 13. Quis reperiētur *quī* sē satis omnium rērum habēre *dīcat*? 14. Quis est *quī* libertatem nōn *velit*? 15. Tam celeriter in Galliam contendit *ut* hostēs, dē ejus adventū certiōrēs factī, vehementissimē *perturbātī sint*.

EXERCISE 183

Translate:

1. Our men were so brave that they withstood the force of the enemy three hours. 2. God so loved the world that He sent His only Son into it that men might have life. 3. Who is there that would say liberty is not a very good thing? 4. There is no one who denies this. 5. Mary is so holy that we all love and praise her. 6. Those mountains are so high that no one has crossed them. 7. So many men were killed that Caesar was not able to pursue the fleeing enemy for many days. 8. The enemy's fear was so great that they fled at the first attack. 9. Christian charity is such that by it we are joined to the Father, the Son, and the Holy

¹ cōspectus, ūs, *sight*.

² lateō, latēre, latuī, 2, intr., *lie hidden, am hidden*.

³ numquam, adv., *never*.

- Spirit. 10. He is the sort of man who always helps others.
11. Caesar was not such as to fear an enemy.

Leve¹ fit quod bene fertur onus.²

—Ovid

EXERCISE 184

Translate:

Warning. Many idiomatic phrases in this exercise must be changed before being translated.

The Alps were so high and the routes so difficult that the Romans thought Hannibal could not lead his men into Italy. They did not think therefore that they would join battle with Hannibal in their own territory. But Hannibal thought nothing was so difficult that it could not be done by courage. So carefully and courageously did he manage the affair, that he was able to cross the Alps with a large army and to force the Romans, alarmed and terrified by his arrival, to join battle in the very fields of Italy and to defend the roads which led to Rome itself. So alarmed were the Romans that they sent many armies, under the leadership of great men, to withstand Hannibal. But he was so daring and so careful that he often conquered in battle with great losses to the Romans.

So often were the Romans defeated that they understood they could not conquer Hannibal in battle. They therefore determined to employ a new plan of war. They determined not to fight with Hannibal in the battle line, but to fortify their towns and cities and to burn all the grain. Without a supply of grain Hannibal could not remain in Italy, nor were his forces large enough to storm fortified towns.

¹ *levis*, e, *light*.

² *onus*, *oneris*, n., *burden*.

The Romans managed the war so well and their courage was so great that Hannibal, his men worn out by toil and scarcity of grain, was forced to withdraw from Italy. The Romans, too, thought that nothing was so difficult that it could not be accomplished by brave and daring leaders.

2. RULES FOR TIME

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 919-922.

The accusative of time how long (Gr. 919) is the same as the accusative of extent of time (Gr. 761).

EXERCISE 185

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the case of the italicized words:*

1. *Illō diē* omnēs Helvētīi ad flūmen convenērunt. 2. *Diē tertiō* in finēs Helvētiōrum pervēnit. 3. *Quō diē* frūmentum militibus dabitur? 4. *Quattuor diēbus* ad castra perveniet. 5. *Diē cōstitūtā* lēgātī ad Caesarem reversī sunt. 6. Caesar *multōs annōs* bellum cum Gallīs gessit. 7. *Tertiā hōrā* ad flūmen pervēnit. 8. *Quattuor hōrās* fortissimē pugnantes impetum hostium sustinērunt. 9. *Quō annō* occīsus est Christus? 10. *Tribus annīs* revertētur. 11. Quot *hōrās* iter per silvās fēcistis? 12. *Duo jerē milia annōrum* vēritās Christī omnibus gentibus nuntiāta est. 13. *Decem diēbus* litterās accipiēmus. 14. *Brevi tempore* revertētur. 15. *Eō ipsō tempore* auxilia vērunt. 16. Erat *eō tempore* Caesar in prōvinciā. 17. Memoriā tenēbant sē proeliis *superiōribus annīs* factis Gallōs facile superāvisse. 18. Certum equitum numerum eis civitātibus imperāvit quās *superiōribus annīs* pācāverat. 19. Caesare duce, *multis annīs* plūrima proelia secunda fēcērunt. 20. *Eō annō* erat inopia frūmentī in Galliā. 21. *Eō diē* decem milia passuum prōgressus est. 22. *Tertiō diē* primā luce profectus est. 23. Lēgātus dīxit sē *quattuor diēbus* urbem captūrum esse.

EXERCISE 186

Translate:

1. On the third day he arrived at the lieutenant's camp. 2. Within three years we shall pacify those tribes. 3. For three years they resisted the Romans. 4. The third day they observed the enemy's forces. 5. They fought three hours most fiercely. 6. At the third hour they pitched camp on top of the hill. 7. They remained two hours. 8. We shall take that town within two hours. 9. Caesar waged war for many years with the Gauls. 10. They advanced two miles. 11. At that time there was a scarcity of grain in Gaul. 12. The ditch was ten feet wide. 13. At dawn they set out with all their forces. 14. The camp was four paces from the river. 15. On the second day they pitched camp a mile from the town. 16. They followed the fleeing barbarians for four days.

EXERCISE 187

Combine each pair of simple sentences into one complex sentence containing a result clause:

MODEL: *The soldiers fought very bravely. The enemy therefore fled.*

(Change to: *The soldiers fought so bravely that the enemy fled.*)

Militēs adeō fortiter pugnāvērunt ut hostēs fūgerint.

1. The Romans were very brave. They were therefore able to conquer many nations. 2. The wind was fierce. The fleet was therefore unable to leave the harbor. 3. In that place there was at that time a lack of grain. The enemy was forced therefore to withdraw into their own territory. 4. The soldiers feared the Germans. They did not withstand the first attack. 5. The garrison was very strong. The enemy could not capture the camp.

NOTE ON PREPOSITIONS

The translation of prepositions requires careful analysis of the thought expressed. There is, for example, no one way of translating

ing *of* into Latin. Different contexts may demand a case, a Latin preposition, or a Latin verb.

EXERCISE 188

[Exercise in Idiom]

Translate:

Warning. Only two of the following sentences require a Latin genitive for *of*. Analyze the thought and find the proper Latin idiom.

1. The boy was swift *of* foot. 2. They were desirous *of* power. 3. They were alarmed on account *of* the slaughter *of* their leading men. 4. He was informed *of* this affair by a slave. 5. They marched out *of* the province. 6. A lieutenant was often put in command *of* a legion. 7. He got possession *of* the camp by force.

DĒ CĀRITĀTE CHRĪSTĪ

Quis ergō¹ nōs sēparābit² ā cāritāte Chrīstī? Trībulātiō³ an⁴ angustia⁵ an famēs⁶ an nūditās⁷ an perīculum? an persecūtiō⁸ an gladius? . . . Sed in hīs omnibus superāmus propter eum quī dilēxit nōs. (*St. Paul, Romans 8:35-37.*)

DĒ GRĀTIĀ DEĪ

Sive⁹ ergō¹ parum, sive⁹ multum, sine illō fierī nōn potest, sine quō nihil fierī potest. (*The Roman Breviary.*)

¹ ergō, adv., *therefore, accordingly.*

² sēparō, 1, tr., *separate.*

³ trībulātiō, trībulātiōnis, *tribulation.*

⁴ an, particle used in questions, *or.*

⁵ angustia, ae, *distress.*

⁶ famēs, famis, *hunger.*

⁷ nūditās, nūditātis, *nakedness.*

⁸ persecūtiō, persecūtiōnis, *persecution.*

⁹ sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or.*

DĒ CĀRITĀTE

"Et omnis, quī diligit, ex Deō nātus est,¹ et cognōscit Deum. Quī nōn diligit, nōn nōvit² Deum: quoniam³ Deus cāritās est. In hōc apparuit⁴ cāritās Deī in nōbīs, quoniam³ Filium suum ūnigenitum⁵ mīsit Deus in mundum ut vīvāmus per eum. In hōc est cāritās: nōn quasi nōs dilēxerimus Deum,⁶ sed quoniam³ ipse prior dilēxit nōs, et mīsit Filium suum propitiātiōnem⁷ prō peccātis nostrīs. Cāriissimī,⁸ sī⁹ sic Deus dilēxit nōs: et nōs dēbēmus alterutrum¹⁰ diligere. Deum nēmō vīdit umquam.¹¹ Sī diligāmus invicem,¹² Deus in nōbīs manet, et cāritās ējus in nōbīs perfecta¹³ est. . . . Deus cāritās est: et quī manet in cāritāte, in Deō manet, et Deus in eō. . . . Nōs ergō¹⁴ diligāmus Deum, quoniam³ Deus prior dilēxit nōs. . . . Et hoc mandātum habēmus ā Deō, ut, quī diligit Deum, diligit et frātrem suum."¹⁵

DĒ VIRTŪTE

Beātus¹⁶ autem esse sine virtūte nēmō potest nec virtūs sine ratiōne cōnstāre.¹⁷ (*Cicero.*)

¹ nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, intr., *am born.*

² nōvī, nōvisse, *know* (perfect with present meaning).

³ quoniam, conj., *because.*

⁴ appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, 2, intr., *appear.*

⁵ ūnigenitus, a, um, *only-begotten.*

⁶ nōn quasi nōs dilēxerimus Deum: *not as if we had loved God.*

⁷ propitiātiō, propitiātiōnis, *propitiation.*

⁸ cāriissimī: *dear ones* (vocative).

⁹ sī, conj., *if.*

¹⁰ alterutrum: *each other.*

¹¹ umquam, adv., *ever.*

¹² invicem: *in turn*; i. e., *each other.*

¹³ perfectus, a, um, *perfect.*

¹⁴ ergō, adv., *therefore.*

¹⁵ St. John 4:7-21.

¹⁶ beātus, a, um, *happy.*

¹⁷ cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstītī, 1, intr., *abide, stand firm.*

SENTENTIA CHRĪSTĪ

Chrīstus, "Nēmō servus," inquit, "potest duōbus dominīs servīre."¹

RIDDLE

Mē nēmō movet nisi² quī prius³ ipse movētur. Quid sum?

DĒ BELLŌ

Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil aliud nisi² pāx quaesīta videātur. (*Cicero.*)

Fugit irreparābile⁴ tempus.

—Virgil

DĒ AMĪCITIĀ

Vōs autem hortor ut ita virtūtem locētis,⁵ sine quā amīcitiā esse nōn potest, ut, eā exceptā,⁶ nihil amīcitiā praestābilius⁷ putētis. (*Cicero.*)

¹ serviō, 4, intr.; w. dat., *serve*.

² nisi, conj., *unless, except*.

³ prius, adv., *previously, first*.

⁴ irreparābilis, e, *irreparable, irretrievable*.

⁵ locō, 1, tr., *place, set*.

⁶ excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptus, 3, tr., *except*.

⁷ praestābilis, e, *excellent*.

LESSON 26: THE GERUND

The First Invasion of Britain, lines 1-57

VOCABULARY

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lift up (passive, am elated)} \\ \text{take away} \end{array} \right.$
paucī, ae, a	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{few} \end{array} \right.$
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, irreg., intr.; w. dat.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am lacking} \\ \text{am absent} \\ \text{fail} \end{array} \right.$

RELATED ENGLISH WORD

There was a *paucity* of defenders in the town.

RELATED LATIN WORDS

Sum; dē.

WORD STUDY

We have seen that the basic meanings of compound words can often be deduced from the meanings of the component parts. We have also seen that compound words acquire a large number of derived meanings. (Recall, for example, how *cōnscrībō* comes to mean *enroll*.) A knowledge of the composition of words will often enable you to deduce even some of these derived meanings when you meet the words in the context of Caesar.

One preposition that frequently retains its original meaning in compounds is *circum*, *around*, *about*.

PROBLEMS: 1. Can you translate these sentences without consulting the vocabularies?

1. Lēgātōs *circummīsīt*. 2. Agmen *circumvērērunt*. 3. Tōtum collem *circumvallāvit*. 4. Collem *circummūnīvit*. 5. Aciem *circumivērunt*. 6. Longiōre itinere legiōnem *circumdūxit*.

2. Can you explain the italicized words?
1. Magellan was the first man to *circumnavigate* the globe.
2. A writer who uses *circumlocutions* becomes very tedious.

1. FORMATION OF THE GERUND

The GERUND, a VERBAL NOUN, has four cases—genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. It is formed by adding the endings shown below to the PRESENT stem.

	I	II	III	III (-iō)	IV
<i>Genitive</i>	laud-andī <i>of praising</i>	mon-endī <i>of warning</i>	mitt-endī <i>of sending</i>	cap-iendī <i>of taking</i>	aud-iendī <i>of hearing</i>
		ferō	volō	eō	
<i>Genitive</i>		fer-endī <i>of bearing</i>	vol-endī <i>of wishing</i>	eundī <i>of going</i>	

Deponent verbs form gerunds in the same way—ACTIVE in FORM and MEANING.

cōn-andī	<i>of trying</i>

The gerund is an ACTIVE VERBAL NOUN and has four cases in the singular only. It is declined as follows :

laudand-ī	<i>of praising</i>
laudand-ō	<i>to or for praising</i>
laudand-um	<i>praising</i>
laudand-ō	<i>by praising</i>
cōnand-ī	<i>of trying</i>
cōnand-ō	<i>to or for trying</i>
cōnand-um	<i>trying</i>
cōnand-ō	<i>by trying</i>

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 212; 228-230; 319; 342; 380; 391; 418; 864.

EXERCISE 189

Form, decline, and translate the gerund of

1. the verbs in Exercise 110;

2. these verbs:

1. tollō	4. ēripiō	7. efficiō
2. volō	5. imperō	8. persuādeō
3. sūmō	6. mandō	9. ūtor

2. THE USE OF THE GERUND

EXERCISE 190

1. Translate;

2. Parse the italicized words:

1. Ducēs *loquendī* causā in oppidum vērunt. 2. Clāmōre sublātō, hostēs *fugiendō* salūtem petivērunt. 3. Tempus ad *sequendum* dēfuit. 4. Unam hōram ad *vivendum* tibi nōn dabō. 5. Gladii ad *pugnandum* ūtilissimī erant. 6. Caesar in *agendō* ācer et fortis erat. 7. Hunc locum ad *ēgrediendum* nōn idōneum arbitrābātur. 8. Omnia quae ad *proficiscendum* pertinent comparāvērunt. 9. Tempus *resistendī* deerat. 10. *Pugnandō* vincēmus nōn *fugiendō*. 11. Semper *ōrandō* atque fortiter *agendō* Caelum cōsequēmur. 12. Hāc victōriā *sublātī*, ad altera castra sē statim contulērunt. 13. Tertiā hōrā pauci ad *proficiscendum* parātī erant. 14. His rēbus *sublātus*, arbitrātus est sē brevī tempore tōtum bellum *cōnfectūrum* esse. 15. Paucōs diēs ad *dēliberandum*¹ sūmpsit. 16. Voluit omnem metum ē civitāte suā *tollī*. 17. Nūllum aliud tempus ad pugnandum habēbimus. Nunc est tempus *pugnandī*; nunc in prōvinciam Rōmānōs omnibus vīribus *pellāmus*. 18. At *barbaris* cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. 19. Cotta nullā in rē cōmūnī *salūtī* deerat. 20. Hostēs equitēs et nāvēs² et frūmentum *Rōmānis* deesse intellēxērunt. 21. Veniunt hostēs! In portis sunt!

¹ *dēliberō*, 1, intr., *consider, deliberate*.

² *nāvis, nāvis, ship*.

Nunc est tempus *pugnandī*, nōn loquendī. Paucī sumus sed fortēs, et, quod *mājus* est, Rōmānī. Fortissimē *pugnandō* victōriam comparābimus.

EXERCISE 191

Translate:

(Use a gerund for the italicized words.)

1. These men are eager *for fighting*. 2. *By praying* we gain grace. 3. The wind was favorable *for departure*. 4. They prepared everything *for setting out*. 5. They were prepared *for fighting*. 6. They were desirous of *setting out*. 7. He was daring *in action* and careful *in speaking*. 8. He saved his life *by fleeing*. 9. *By begging* and *exhorting* he persuaded them not to leave him in the woods. 10. They gained the victory *by fighting* fiercely and bravely. 11. He was sent *to reconnoiter*.

EXERCISE 192

Translate:

(The italicized words are synonyms for words given in the vocabularies. Study the MEANING and select the proper Latin word.)

1. At the first *charge* the enemy fled. 2. They hurled javelins from a higher *position* into the (on)coming enemy. 3. Many of the *foremost men* of Gaul were killed by Caesar. 4. He *quickly* led the cavalry onto the next hill. 5. The fight was *bitter* and a great slaughter *took place*. 6. They *beheld* the enemy advancing across the river. 7. When the cavalry arrived, the barbarians *hastily* withdrew.

EXERCISE 193

Translate:

(Study the meaning of *with* in the following sentences and select the proper Latin idiom.)

1. He killed the Gaul *with* a sword. 2. They fought *with* great courage. 3. They fortified the camp *with* a ditch and a rampart.

4. The cohorts, having advanced *with* the lieutenant a few miles into the forest, pitched camp. 5. The Romans waged war many years *with* the Germans. 6. They joined battle *without* fear. 7. *With* many men killed, they withdrew into the town. 8. *With* the dawn, they set out for the camp. 9. *With* a small part of the summer¹ left, he decided to visit Britain.

Imperium habere vīs magnum? Imperā tibi.

—Publilius Syrus

EXERCISE 194

[Questions on the Text of Caesar]

*Respondē Latīnē:*²

1. Quārē³ Caesar in Britanniam ire volēbat? 2. Quī Rōmānī ante Caesaris adventum Britanniam adībant? 3. Quid Caesar ex mercātōribus reperire voluit? 4. Cūr Gājum Volusēnum prae-misit? 5. Quārē³ in Morinōs profectus est Caesar? 6. Quae polliciti sunt lēgātī quī ā civitātibus Britanniae ad Caesarem vēnerant? 7. Quid Commiō Caesar imperāvit?

EXERCISE 195

[Review]

Translate:

1. It happened that they were all killed. 2. He warned the boys not to go into the forest alone. 3. He ordered a bridge to be built. 4. He was so sharp in speaking and acting that everybody feared him. 5. It behooves us to follow Jesus Christ, our King. 6. As soon as they saw Caesar, they began to say that he should⁴ be

¹ *summer, aestās, aestātis.*

² Answer in simple but complete Latin sentences.

³ *quārē*, interrog. adv., by *what means, why.*

⁴ Use *oportet*, remembering it must be IMPERSONAL.

killed. 7. Those who persuaded Pilate to kill Christ had seen Him helping others.

DĒ SUMMŌ IMPERĀTŌRE

Cicero lists the following qualities as those all expect to see in a great general. Can you find instances of these qualities in what you have now read of Caesar?

“Labor in negōtiis;¹ fortitūdō² in periculīs; industria³ in agendō; celeritās⁴ in cōficiendō; cōsiliū in prōvidendō.”⁵

Cicero also tells us that a general must be a man of self-control:

“Neque enim potest exercitum is continēre imperātor, quī sē ipse nōn continet, neque sevērus⁶ esse in iūdicandō,⁷ quī aliōs in sē sevērōs⁶ esse iūdicēs⁸ nōn vult.”

Nēmō timendō ad summum pervēnit locum.

—Publilius Syrus

DĒ AMĪCITIĀ

Cāritāte enim benevolentiaque⁹ sublātā, omnis est ē vītā sublātā iūcunditās.¹⁰ (*Cicero.*)

¹ negōtium, ī, *task*.

² fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, *courage*.

³ industria, ae, *diligence*.

⁴ celeritās, celeritātis, *speed*.

⁵ prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvidī, prōvisus, 2, tr., *act with foresight, foresee, provide*.

⁶ sevērus, a, um, *severe, exacting*.

⁷ iūdicō, 1, tr., *judge*.

⁸ iūdex, iūdicis, *judge, critic*.

⁹ benevolentia, ae, *good will, benevolence*.

¹⁰ iūcunditās, iūcunditātis, *delight*.

DĒ SĀNCTŌ BLĀSIŌ¹

St. Blaise, bishop of Sebaste in Armenia, was tortured and beheaded for the faith in 316.

He once saved the life of a child who was choking on a bone lodged in his throat. In memory of this, the Church preserves the ancient custom of blessing throats on his feast day (February 3). The priest holds crossed candles to the throat of the one being blessed and recites this prayer:

"Per intercessiōnem² sānctī Blāsīi,¹ episcopī³ et martyris,⁴ liberet⁵ tē Deus ā malō gutturis⁶ et ā quolibet⁷ aliō malō. In nōmine Patris et Filiī et Spīritūs Sānctī. Āmēn.

DĒ VĪTAE PERĪCULĪS

Vīta nostra, plēna bellīs,

Inter hostēs, inter arma

Mōre⁸ bellī vīvitur.

Nūlla lūx it absque⁹ pugnā¹⁰

Nūlla nōx it absque⁹ lūctū¹¹

Et salūtis āleā.¹²

¹ Blāsīus, ī, *Blaise*.

² intercessiō, intercessiōnis, *intercession*.

³ episcopus, ī, *bishop*.

⁴ martyr, martyris, *martyr*.

⁵ liberō, ī, tr., *free*.

⁶ guttur, gutturis, n., *throat*.

⁷ quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, *any, every*.

⁸ mōre: *after the fashion of*.

⁹ absque, prep. w. abl., *without*.

¹⁰ pugna, ae, *fight*.

¹¹ lūctus, ūs, *sorrow*.

¹² ālea, ae, *risk, gamble*.

LESSON 27: THE GERUNDIVE

The First Invasion of Britain, lines 58-117

VOCABULARY

perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, 3, tr.; acc.
w. infin.

view
inspect
perceive

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, intr.

die

1. FORMATION OF THE GERUNDIVE

The GERUNDIVE is formed by substituting **us, a, um**, etc., for the case ending of the gerund :

GERUND

(An ACTIVE verbal NOUN)

laudandī, of praising, etc.

monendī, of warning, etc.

GERUNDIVE

(A PASSIVE verbal ADJECTIVE)

laudandus, a, um, to be praised
being praised, etc.

monendus, a, um, to be warned
being warned, etc.

Deponent verbs have a gerundive that is PASSIVE in both FORM and MEANING.

GERUND

hortandī, of encouraging

GERUNDIVE

hortandus, a, um, to be encouraged
being encouraged

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 288; 304-306; 329; 344; 385; 396.

EXERCISE 196

Form and translate the gerundive of these verbs:

1. tollō
2. perspiciō
3. sequor

4. moneō
5. ferō
6. faciō

7. vastō
8. audiō
9. dīcō

10. prohibeō	13. diligō	16. cōficiō
11. hortor	14. dividō	17. dūcō
12. aggredior	15. aperiō	18. impediō

Fit via vī.

—Virgil

2. THE GERUNDIVE WITH SUM

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 865; 868; 878-883.

EXERCISE 197

[GRAMMAR 878-880]

MODEL: Deus laudandus est.

God is to be praised.

God should be praised.

God ought to be praised.

God must be praised.

God has to be praised.

It is necessary to praise God.

Translate:

1. Laudandī estis. 2. Novum cōsiliū capiendū erit. 3. Illa urbs capiendā est. 4. Illa loca perspicierendā sunt. 5. Hostēs fugientēs statim sequendī sunt. 6. Ante proelium milītēs cohortandī erant. 7. Hoc bellum brevī tempore cōficiendū erat. 8. Aliī adjuvandī sunt. 9. Hostēs flūmen trāseuntēs vī prohibendī sunt. 10. Bellum suscipiendū erit. 11. Omnia ad proficiscendū parandā sunt. 12. Lēgātus, vir optimus atque dīligentissimus, laudandus erat. 13. Bellum illīs inferendū est. 14. Impedīmenta in ūnum locum cōferenda fuērunt. 15. Helvētīi indūcendī erant ut aliā viā ex suis finibus exīrent. 16. Mātrēs optimae laudandae sunt.

EXERCISE 198

Translate:

(Use the gerundive wherever possible.)

1. This man is to be praised. 2. They ought to be killed. 3. Virtue should be acquired.¹ 4. Those towns are to be inspected. 5. The camp must be fortified by a ditch and a rampart. 6. It is necessary to make a bridge. 7. The battle had to be begun at once. 8. Everything had to be prepared within a short time. 9. It was necessary to attack the enemy as they came out² of the forest. 10. The enemy's fields had to be ravaged lest they should have a supply of grain. 11. They must not be followed. 12. The forces will have to be divided. 13. Labienus had to be put in command of the legions.

EXERCISE 199

[GRAMMAR 881]

MODELS: Vincendum est.*It is necessary to conquer.**We must conquer.* (If the context allows a personal translation.)**Hōc cōnsiliō ūtendum est.***This plan should be used.***Hostibus resistendum est.***The enemy must be resisted.**Translate:*

1. Aut vincendum est aut moriendum. 2. Eīs resistendum est quī libertātem nostram tollere volunt. 3. Eundum est. 4. Prīmā lūce proficiscendum erit. 5. Saepe loquendum nōn est. 6. Hostibus omnī ratiōne nocendum est. 7. Equitātuī studendum est. 8. Fortissimē pugnandum erat. 9. Bene vīvendum est.

¹ *acquired* = *gained*.² Use a participle.

EXERCISE 200

Translate:

1. It is necessary to fight at once. 2. An answer¹ must be given. 3. We² must set out. 4. The barbarians must be resisted. 5. The fleet had to be injured. 6. We² must go out of the camp. 7. It is necessary to die bravely. 8. It is necessary to remain there four days. 9. This plan will have to be used.

Nēmō mīles sine proeliō hostem subjēcit.³

EXERCISE 201

[GRAMMAR 882]

MODELS: Deus nōbīs laudandus est.

God ought to be praised by us.

God should be praised by us.

We should praise God.

We ought to praise God.

We must praise God.

Hostibus ā nōbīs nocendum est.

The enemy should be harmed by us.

We should harm the enemy.

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the case of the italicized words:*

1. Haec *nōbīs* erant timenda. 2. *Nōbīs* vincendum est. 3. Maximae grātia *Deō ā nōbīs* agenda sunt. 4. Classis *eī* est expectanda. 5. Eō cōsiliō *Caesarī* ūtendum erat. 6. *Omnibus* quī vestrae civitātī nocēre volunt *ā vōbīs* fortissimē resistendum est. 7. *Rōmānīs* in angustiās coāctīs fortissimē pugnandum erat.

¹ Express *answer* by using a verb.

² Do not translate *we*. See the first model in Exercise 199.

³ subjiciō, subjicere, subjēcī, subjectus, 3, tr., conquer.

8. Metus ē cīvitāte nostrā nōbīs tollendus est. 9. Ea loca Caesarī perspicienda erant.

EXERCISE 202

Translate:

1. The hill must be viewed by the lieutenant. 2. The cavalry must be sent out of the camp by Caesar to help the legions. 3. We must burn their ships. 4. We must resist the enemy even to death. 5. The enemy must be bravely resisted by the legions. 6. They had to harm the hostages. 7. We must conquer or die. 8. The Helvetians had to be resisted by Caesar. Didn't he have to defend the province? 9. We must employ all our strength to defend our liberty.

EXERCISE 203

[GRAMMAR 883]

MODEL: Pontem faciendum suscēpit.

He undertook the building of a bridge.

He undertook to build a bridge.

(Literally, *He undertook a bridge to-be-built.*)

Translate:

1. Obsidēs militibus occīdendōs trādidit. 2. Impedīmenta lēgātō dēfendenda dedit. 3. Nāvēs cōgendās suscēpit. 4. Bellum gerendum suscipit.

EXERCISE 204

[The Gerundive in the Accusative with the Infinitive]

Translate:

1. Dixit obsidēs occīdendōs esse. 2. Cōstituit classem esse exspectandam. 3. Castra dēfendenda esse neque nōbīs exeundum putō. 4. Hostibus ā militibus omnī ratiōne nocendum esse arbitrōr. 5. Lēgātō ostendit haec cognōscenda esse. 6. Dixit sē arbitrārī Rōmānōs eō tempore in prōvinciam esse repellendōs.

EXERCISE 205

When Caesar was campaigning against the Nervii, his men were suddenly attacked while constructing a camp. The Nervii emerged unexpectedly from a forest, surged across a river and up the hill on which the Romans were encamping. Caesar describes the activity and pressure of the few moments following the appearance of the Nervii by using a rapid series of gerundives. (Note that the omission of the forms of *sum* adds to the rapidity of the narrative.)

Translate:

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum¹ prōpōnendum,² quod erat īnsigne³ cum ad arma concurrī⁴ oporteret; signum tubā⁵ dandum; ab opere⁶ revocandī⁷ militēs; aciēs instruenda; militēs cohortandī; signum dandum.

Absque⁸ sūdōre⁹ et labōre nūllum opus⁶ perfectum¹⁰ est.

EXERCISE 206

Translate:

(Study the uses of *to* carefully before translating.)

1. The Haedui begged Caesar *to* defend them. 2. They marched *to* the river. 3. They gave grain *to* the captured Gauls. 4. He

¹ vexillum, ī, the battle flag.

² prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, 3, tr., display.

³ īnsigne, īsignis, sign, signal.

⁴ concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursus, 3, intr., rush together.

⁵ tuba, ae, trumpet.

⁶ opus, operis, n., fortification, work, task.

⁷ revocō, 1, tr., call back.

⁸ absque, prep. w. abl., without.

⁹ sūdōr, sūdōris, sweat.

¹⁰ perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, 3, tr., finish, perfect.

ordered them *to* build a bridge. 5. I owe my safety *to* you. 6. They desire *to* make peace. 7. They were devoted *to* liberty. 8. This is not *to* be done. 9. He had *to* defend the province. 10. The soldiers were eager *to* fight. 11. The envoys came *to* seek peace. 12. He is not the man *to* fear Caesar.

Ultima semper exspectanda diēs hominī est.

—Ovid

DĒ VIRTŪTE

Omnia enim sunt profectō¹ laudanda quae conjuncta cum virtūte sunt. (*Cicero.*)

DĒ VĒRĀ AMĪCITIĀ

Vēra² amīcitia nūllō modō³ dīcenda est quae commodi⁴ temporālis⁵ causā suscipitur et servātur. (*Aelred of Riveaux.*)

Dē mortuīs nīl nisi bonum.

DĒ LOQUENDŌ

Est tempus quandō⁶ nihil—est tempus quandō⁶ aliquid⁷—nūlum tamen est tempus in quō dīcenda sunt omnia.

¹ profectō, adv., *certainly.*

² vērus, a, um, *true.*

³ nūllō modō, *in no way, not at all.*

⁴ commodum, ī, *benefit.*

⁵ temporālis, e, *temporal.*

⁶ quandō, conj., *when.*

⁷ aliquid: *something.*

DĒ EXTRĒMĀ UNCTIŌNE

Deus per Sānctum Jacōbum¹ sīc nōbīs locūtus est: "Infirmātur² quis³ in vōbīs? inducat presbyterōs⁴ ecclēsia⁵, et ōrent super⁶ eum, ungentēs⁷ eum oleō⁸ in nōmine Domini: et ōrātiō fidei salvābit⁹ infirmum,¹⁰ et alleviābit¹¹ eum Dominus: et sī¹² in peccātis sit, remittentur ei."

Id dē quō locūtus est Sānctus Jacōbus est sacrāmentum¹³ quod "extrēma unctiō"¹⁴ vocātur.

Dē duōbus malīs, minus est semper eligendum.¹⁵

—a Kempis

DĒ SERVITŪTE¹⁶

Servitūs¹⁶ est pessimum malōrum omnium, nōn modo¹⁷ bellō sed morte etiam¹⁷ repellendum. (*Adapted from Cicero.*)

¹ Jacōbus, ī, *James*.

² infirmō, 1, intr., *am sick*.

³ quis: *anyone*.

⁴ presbyter, presbyterī, *priest*.

⁵ ecclēsia, ae, *church*.

⁶ super, prep. w. acc., *over*.

⁷ ungō, ungere, unxī, unctus, 3, tr., *anoint*.

⁸ oleum, ī, *oil*.

⁹ salvō, 1, tr., *save*.

¹⁰ infirmus, a, um, *sick*.

¹¹ alleviō, 1, tr., *raise up, relieve*.

¹² sī, conj., *if*.

¹³ sacrāmentum, ī, *sacrament*.

¹⁴ unctiō, unctiōnis, *anointing*.

¹⁵ eligō, eligere, elēgī, elēctus, 3, tr., *choose*.

¹⁶ servitūs, servitūtis, *slavery, servitude*.

¹⁷ nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.

SENTENTIAE SĒLECTAE

1. Ōrandum est ut sit mēns¹ sāna² in corpore sãnō.² (*Juvenal.*)
2. Aliquis³ vir bonus nōbīs dīligendus est ac semper ante oculōs⁴ habendus, ut sīc tamquam⁵ illō spectante⁶ vivāmus et omnia tamquam⁵ illō vidente faciāmus. (*Seneca.*)

Decet⁷ imperatōrem stantem⁸ morī.

—Vespasian

VERBA⁹ CHRĪSTĪ

“Caelum et terra trānsībunt, verba⁹ autem mea nōn trānsībunt.”

¹ mēns, mentis, *mind*.

² sānus, a, um, *sound, healthy*.

³ aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, indefinite adj., *some*.

⁴ oculus, ī, *eye*.

⁵ tamquam, adv., *as, as if*.

⁶ spectō, 1, tr., *look, watch*.

⁷ Decet: *It befits*.

⁸ stō, stāre, stetī, statum, 1, intr., *stand*.

⁹ verbum, ī, *word*.

LESSON 28: THE GERUNDIVE (Continued)

The First Invasion of Britain, lines 118-209

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 865-872.

EXERCISE 207

[GRAMMAR 865-867]

MODEL: *Haec fuit ratiō bellī gerendī.*

This was the plan of (for) waging the war.

(Literally, *This was the plan of the war to-be-waged.*)

[Explanation: *Gerendī* is the genitive neuter singular of the gerundive of *gerō*; it modifies and agrees with *bellī*, which depends on *ratiō*.]

1. *Translate both literally and in good English;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized words:*

1. *Rōmae videndae* cupidus sum. 2. Omnia quae ad pontem *incendendum* ūtilia sunt comparat. 3. Ponte *faciendō* exercitum flūmen trādūxit. 4. Militēs proeliū *committendī* cupidissimī erant, tamen dux eōs in castrīs continuit. 5. Hoc tempus ad proelium *committendum* nōn idōneum arbitrātus est. 6. Caesar in bellīs *cōnficiendīs* celer erat. 7. Hunc collem castrīs *pōnendīs* idōneum esse arbitrātus est.

EXERCISE 208

MODEL: *They were desirous of capturing the city.*

Change to: *They were desirous of the city to-be-captured.*

Urbis [↑]capiendae cupidī erant.

Translate:

1. They were desirous of beginning battle. 2. The place was not suitable for drawing up a battle line. 3. They were ready to

wage war.¹ 4. By burning the grain they tried to force the Romans to withdraw from Gaul. 5. Now is the time to drive² the Romans back into the province.

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE TO EXPRESS PURPOSE

We have seen that purpose can be expressed by clauses introduced by *ut* (*nē*), *quō*, or a relative pronoun.

Vēnit ut Rōmam videret.
He came that he might see Rome.
He came to see Rome.

The GERUND and GERUNDIVE may be used with *ad* or *causā* to express PURPOSE.

They came to talk.
Ad loquendum vēnērunt.
Loquendī causā vēnērunt.
He came to see Rome.
Ad Rōmam videndam vēnit.
Rōmae videndae causā vēnit.

EXERCISE 209

MODEL: *Equitēs ad agrōs vastandōs mīsit.*

He sent the cavalry to ravage the fields.

(Literally, *He sent the cavalry for the fields to-be-ravaged.*)

Translate:

1. *Lēgātum ad eōs populōs pācandōs mīsit.* 2. *Germānī pugnandī causā Rhēnum trānsiērunt.* 3. *Tertiam legiōnem ad castra expugnanda mīsit.* 4. *Cum omnibus cōpiīs ad oppidum oppugnandum vēnērunt.* 5. *Nāvēs Venetōrum ad maximam ventōrum*

¹ Use *ad* with the gerundive.

² Genitive of the gerundive.

vim ferendam factae sunt. 6. Equitēs ad hostēs cōsequendōs mīsit. 7. Lēgātī pācis petendae causā vērunt. 8. Eques auxiliī petendi causā in castra contendit. 9. Equitēs ad explorandum saepe missi sunt.

EXERCISE 210

MODEL: *They came to capture the city.*

Change to: *They came for the city to-be-captured.*

Ad urbem capiendam vērunt.

or: *They came for the sake of the city to-be-captured.*

Urbis capiendae causā vērunt.

Translate, using a gerund or gerundive to express purpose:

1. They came to storm the town. 2. They were sent to capture the leading men of that tribe. 3. They came for the sake of getting grain. 4. They were sent to reconnoiter. 5. They were left behind to defend the baggage. 6. They hastened into the town to ask for help. 7. Christ came to help all men. 8. God sent His only Son into the world to announce the truth.

EXERCISE 211

Translate:

1. Caesar was desirous of conquering Gaul. 2. The Gauls were eager to kill Caesar. 3. By making a bridge, Caesar was able to follow the enemy. 4. A slave was sent to kill the slaves. 5. The place was not suitable for beginning battle. 6. There was no time for drawing up the battle line. 7. They gathered troops to defend their fields and towns. 8. By encouraging his men Caesar often conquered the enemy. 9. By promising rewards he persuaded the slave to carry the dispatch to Caesar. 10. They held the hill by fighting fiercely. 11. By conquering in battle, Caesar opened Gaul to the Romans. 12. Caesar was courageous in leading his men. 13. He was careful in acting. 14. They said that Caesar

should not lead his troops out of the province. 15. The Romans forbade Caesar to lead his men into Italy. 16. The lieutenants and centurions persuaded him to wait for the fleet. 17. By retaining the hostages, he strengthened peace in Gaul. 18. The Gauls determined to preserve their liberty by fighting.

Chrīstus, "Quī crēdit in mē," inquit, "habet vītā aeternā."¹

EXERCISE 212

Translate:

(Study the meaning of *in* carefully before translating.)

1. The barbarians were *in* the mountains. 2. *In* a short time we shall capture that hill. 3. They collected very large forces *in* that place. 4. He sent two cohorts *in* order to ward off the enemy. 5. *In* that year Caesar became consul. 6. He delivered² a speech *in* the presence of his men. 7. Caesar was *in* charge of the province. 8. He put Labienus *in* command of two legions. 9. He drew up his men *in* front of the camp.

DĒ MARTYRIBUS³

Nōn timuērunt sānctī Deī, morientēs prō Chrīstī nōmine. Trādidērunt corpora sua propter Deum ad supplicia.⁴ (*The Roman Breviary.*)

¹ aeternus, a, um, *eternal*.

² Use habeo.

³ martyr, martyris, *martyr*.

⁴ supplicium, ī, *punishment*.

CIRCUMSTANTIAL EVIDENCE

Cicero, the great Roman orator to whom we have often referred, was one of the leading Roman lawyers. In this quotation he gives an example of the force of circumstantial evidence.

"Sī ferrō¹ interfectus ille, et tū inimicus² ejus cum gladiō cruentō³ comprehensus⁴ es in illō ipsō locō, et nēmō praeter tē ibi vīsus est, et causa nēminī, et tū semper audāx, quid est quod dē facinore⁵ dubitare⁶ possimus?"⁷

Quae est melior igitur⁸ in hominum genere⁹ nātūra, quam eōrum quī sē nātōs¹⁰ ad hominēs juvandōs,¹¹ tūtandōs,¹² cōnservandōs arbitrantur?

—Cicero

¹ ferrum, ī, *steel, sword*.

² inimicus, ī, *enemy*.

³ cruentus, a, um, *bloody*.

⁴ comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēsus, 3, tr., *catch*.

⁵ facinus, facinoris, n., *crime*.

⁶ dubitō, 1, tr., *doubt*.

⁷ quid est quod . . . possimus: *what is there that we should be able; i.e., why should we be able*.

⁸ igitur, adv., *therefore*.

⁹ genus, generis, n., *kind, race*.

¹⁰ nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, intr., *am born*.

¹¹ juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus, 1, tr., *help*.

¹² tūtō, 1, tr., *defend*.

LESSON 29: VOCATIVE CASE; IMPERATIVE MOOD

VOCABULARY

<i>avē, interjection</i>	<i>hail!</i>
<i>miserēre; w. dat. or gen.</i>	<i>have mercy (on)</i>
<i>nōlī; w. pres. infin.</i>	<i>be unwilling</i>
<i>nōlite; w. pres. infin.</i>	

1. THE VOCATIVE

You, O Lord, I praise.

We shall not help you, Caesar!

In these sentences the words *O Lord* and *Caesar*:

1. Show the PERSON ADDRESSED or SPOKEN TO.
2. Are therefore in the VOCATIVE case—the case of the PERSON ADDRESSED.
3. Are set off by commas because they are independent of the grammar of the rest of the sentence.

Tē, Ō Domine, laudō.

Tē, Caesar, nōn adjuvābimus.

NOTE: The vocative of *Jēsūs* is *Jēsū*.

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 28; 463; 678.

EXERCISE 213

Form the vocative singular of:

1. Caesar	6. Gallus	11. māter
2. Mariā	7. rēx	12. miles
3. Deus	8. Jēsūs	13. lēgātus
4. amīcus	9. dominus	14. vir
5. imperātor	10. dux	

EXERCISE 214

Form the vocative singular and plural of:

1. Christiānus	5. homō miser	9. rēx magnus
2. amīcus bonus	6. cōsul	10. centuriō
3. miles fortis	7. dux nōbilis	11. homō pessimus
4. fīlius dilēctus	8. puer meus	

Beātī¹ omnēs quī timent Dominum.

EXERCISE 215

Translate:

1. Avē Mariā, grātiā plēna. 2. Ō bone Jēsū, miserēre nōbīs quī tot ac tanta peccāta contrā tē commīsīmus. 3. Avē Caesar! 4. Tē, fili mī, memoriā semper tenēbō. 5. Avē Rēx, prō tē usque ad mortem pugnāre parātī sumus. 6. Primā lūce, mīlitēs, proficiscēmur, atque in proxima hiberna omnibus vīribus contendēmus. 7. Bellum, mīlitēs, inter mē et senātum ortum est. 8. Quī primus, virī, in castra hostium pervēnerit, eī maxima praemia dabō. 9. Contrā tē et tuōs, lēgāte, bellum gerēmus. Duō mīlia Gallōrum in armīs sunt; Germānī Rhēnum trānseunt et tertiā hōrā perveniunt. Nullum datur tempus aut fugiendī aut auxiliī petendī. Oportet omnia nōbīs statim trādere. 10. Vōbīs, amīcī meī, persuādere volō ut mēcum contrā Caesarem libertātis cōnservandae causā conjūrētis.

EXERCISE 216

Translate:

1. Let us fight bravely, soldiers! 2. Let us go, my friends.
3. Hail, King and Emperor! 4. Hail, Jesus Christ, my Lord and

¹ beātus, a, um, *happy, blessed*.

my God! 5. Shall we yield ground, Romans, to barbarians? Soldiers, let us resist these wretched Gauls even to the death. 6. My son, may God keep you. 7. We have come, O wretched King, to kill you on account of the wrongs inflicted by you on our nation. 8. Lord God, have mercy on us! 9. Friends, Romans, let us kill Caesar and so preserve the liberty which our ancestors have handed (down) to us. 10. Soldiers, are you ready for battle?

2. THE IMPERATIVE

The imperative mood is that form of the verb which expresses a command. Its use is generally restricted to the present tense and to the second person. It may be either active or passive.

ACTIVE: *Fight bravely!*

PASSIVE: *Be warned!*

The imperative is formed on the present stem as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE

	I	II	III	III (-iō)	IV
SINGULAR	laud-ā	mon-ē	mitt-e	cap-e	aud-ī
PLURAL	laud-āte <i>praise</i>	mon-ēte <i>warn</i>	mitt-ite <i>send</i>	cap-ite <i>take</i>	aud-ite <i>hear</i>
		eō	ferō	nōlō	
SINGULAR		ī	fer	nōlī	
PLURAL		ite <i>go</i>	ferte <i>bear</i>	nōlite <i>be unwilling; w. infin., do not</i>	

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR	laud-āre	mon-ēre	mitt-ere	cap-ere	aud-īre
PLURAL	laud-āminī <i>be praised</i>	mon-ēminī <i>be warned</i>	mitt-iminī <i>be sent</i>	cap-iminī <i>be taken</i>	aud-īminī <i>be heard</i>

Deponent verbs have the PASSIVE endings with ACTIVE meanings:

cōn-āre cōn-āminī try

Dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō have shortened forms in the singular imperative active only:

dīc, *say*

dūc, *lead*

fac, *do*

fer, *bear*

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 208; 216-218; 283; 289-291; 317; 327; 377; 383; 388; 394; 421; 515-517; 1020.

EXERCISE 217

Form and translate the imperatives of:

1. pācō	8. aperiō	15. vetō
2. jaciō	9. nuntiō	16. cōsequor
3. faciō	10. ferō	17. dīcō
4. pellō	11. referō	18. jubeō
5. cōnor	12. exeō	19. trānseō
6. cōgō	13. ēgredior	20. loquor
7. dīligō	14. trādūcō	21. indūcō

Dīvide et imperā.

EXERCISE 218

[GRAMMAR 515]

Translate:

1. Sāncta Marīa, māter Deī, ōrā prō nōbīs. 2. Fortiter pugnāte, mīlītēs! 3. Audīte! Deus vester Deus ūnus est. 4. Cape arma! Fer auxilium! 5. Dūc nōs, Domine, per viās tuās in Caelum. 6. Dīc nōbīs, serve, ubi hostēs sint. 7. Tolle, Domine Jēsū Chrīste, peccāta nostra. 8. Fac, Domine, ut tē omnibus vīribus diligam. 9. Vocā, lēgāte, mīlītēs ad arma. 10. Chrīstus, "Sequere mē," inquit. 11. Aggrediminī hostēs! 12. Proficīscere! Exī ex urbe! Relinque nōs! 13. Īte, missa¹ est. 14. Hōc ūtiminī

¹ missa, ae, *Mass*.

cōnsiliō! 15. Venī mēcum. 16. Ī in pāce. 17. Verēminī Deum.
 18. Persuādē eīs nē bellum suscipiant. 19. Diligite Deum.
 20. Venī, Domine, ut mē adjuvēs. 21. Vive, rēx magne.

EXERCISE 219

Translate:

1. Guards, open the gates. 2. Defend me, Lord! 3. Help us.
 4. Soldiers, make the attack with the greatest courage. 5. Lord
 Jesus Christ, have mercy on us. 6. St. Paul, pray for us. 7. All
 the saints of God, pray for us. 8. Go out of the camp! Depart!
 9. Fight so bravely, soldiers, that no one can resist you. 10. Tell
 us, O King, what you wish done. 11. Lead, general, and we shall
 follow. 12. Bear this sorrow, my friend, with great courage. Place
 your hope in God and He will give you enough grace to bear it.¹
 13. "Follow me," said the leader, "and we shall capture Rome
 itself." 14. Do this yourself. 15. Holy Mary, pray for me in the
 hour of my death. 16. Speak bravely and without any fear.
 17. Help others and others will help you. 18. Love and you will
 be loved. 19. Ask and you shall receive. 20. Go, wretched man!

EXERCISE 220

[GRAMMAR 516]

MODELS: Nōlī barbarīs crēdere.(Literally, *Be unwilling to trust the barbarians.*)*Don't trust the barbarians.***Barbarīs nē crēdiderīs.** (Perfect subjunctive)*Don't trust the barbarians.**Translate literally and in good English:*

1. Nōlī spem tuam in prīncipibus et rēgibus pōnere. 2. Nōlīte,
 Christiānī, alium praeter Deum timēre. 3. Nōlī fugere. Manē in
 aciē. 4. Nōlīte fugere! Impetum sustinēte! Ante oculōs² ipsum

¹ Result clause.² oculus, ī, eye.

Caesarem pōnite! Superiōrēs victōriās quās, eō duce, comparāvistis memoriā tenēte. 5. Nē fūgeris! 6. Nōlī omnia loquī. 7. Nē dē hāc rē locūtus sis. 8. Nē aciem reliqueris. 9. Nōlite omnibus crēdere. 10. Nōlī eum occidere. Hostis enim nōn est.

EXERCISE 221

Translate:

(Wherever possible, translate in two ways.)

1. Do not ask me where the king is.
2. Do not commit sin.
3. Don't surrender!
4. Don't hurl the javelins.
5. Don't order us to withdraw!
6. Do not try to cross that river.
7. Don't fear those who can kill the body.
8. Do not resist the grace of God.
9. Hold! Don't give ground.
10. Do not leave me, O my God!

Vēra¹ laus² virtūtī sōlī dēbētur.

—Adapted from Cicero

EXERCISE 222

Translate:

(Study the meaning of *for* carefully before translating.)

1. They set out *for* Gaul.
2. They marched *for* three days.
3. They fought *for* a long time.
4. He asked *for* grain.
5. They were eager *for* battle.
6. He waited *for* the recently enrolled cohorts.
7. The Haedui helped Caesar, *for* they were friends of the Roman people.
8. Everything was ready *for* departure.³
9. He reported that the hill was suitable *for* pitching camp.
10. O King, I shall fight *for* you.
11. He sent envoys to the neighboring tribes

¹ vērūs, a, um, true.

² laus, laudis, praise.

³ Use a verb.

for the sake of grain. 12. *For* this reason, Caesar forbade them to come into the province.

DOUBTING THOMAS

Thōmas¹ autem, ūnus ex duodecim,² quī dīcitur Didymus,³ nōn erat cum eīs quandō⁴ vēnit Jēsūs. Dīxērunt ergō⁵ eī aliī discipulī:⁶ "Vīdimus Dominum." Ille autem dīxit eīs: "Nisi⁷ vīderō in manibus⁸ ējus fixūram⁹ clāvōrum,¹⁰ et mittam digitum¹¹ meum in locum clāvōrum,¹⁰ et mittam manum⁸ meam in latus¹² ējus, nōn crēdam." Et post diēs octō,¹³ iterum¹⁴ erant discipulī⁶ ējus intus:¹⁵ et Thōmas cum eīs. Vēnit Jēsūs, jānuīs¹⁶ clausīs,¹⁷ et stetit¹⁸ in mediō, et dīxit: "Pāx vōbīs." Deinde¹⁹ dīcit Thōmae: "Īnfer digitum¹¹ tuum hūc,²⁰ et vidē manūs⁸ meās, et adfer²¹ manum⁸ tuam, et mitte in latus¹² meum: et nōlī esse incrēdulus,²² sed fidēlis."²³ Respondit Thōmas, et dīxit eī: "Dominus meus et Deus meus." Dīxit

¹ Thōmas, Thōmae, *Thomas* (voc. Thōma).

² duodecim, indecl. numeral, *twelve*.

³ Didymus, ī, *Didymus* (twin).

⁴ quandō, conj., *when*.

⁵ ergō, adv., *therefore*.

⁶ discipulus, ī, *disciple*.

⁷ nisi, conj., *unless, except*.

⁸ manus, ūs, *hand*.

⁹ fixūra, ae, *mark*.

¹⁰ clāvus, ī, *nail*.

¹¹ digitus, ī, *finger*.

¹² latus, lateris, n., *side*.

¹³ octō, indecl. numeral, *eight*.

¹⁴ iterum, adv., *again*.

¹⁵ intus, adv., *within*.

¹⁶ jānuae, jānuārum, *doors*.

¹⁷ claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, 3, tr., *close*.

¹⁸ stō, stāre, steti, statum, 1, intr., *stand*.

¹⁹ deinde, adv., *then*.

²⁰ hūc, adv., *hither*.

²¹ adferō, adferre, adtulī, allātus, irreg., tr., *bring hither*.

²² incrēdulus, a, um, *unbelieving*.

²³ fidēlis, e, *faithful, believing*.

eī Jēsūs: “Quia¹ vidistī mē, Thōma, crēdidistī: beātī² quī nōn vīdērunt et crēdidērunt.”

Dā dextram³ miserō!

—Virgil

VERBA DEĪ

Deus Pater dē Chrīstō omnibus hominibus dixit: “Hic est Fīlius meus dīlēctus, ipsum audīte.”

O CRUX, AVĒ, SPĒS ŪNICA⁴

SENTENTIA CHRĪSTĪ

Christus, “Nōn omnis,” inquit, “quī dīcit mihi ‘Domine, Domine,’ intrābit⁵ in rēgnum caelōrum, sed, quī facit voluntātem⁶ Patris mei quī in caelīs est, ipse intrābit⁵ in rēgnum caelōrum.”

Cōnsuētūdō⁷ cōnsuētūdīne⁷ vincitur.

—a Kempis

¹ quia, conj., *because*.

² beātus, a, um, *blessed*.

³ dextram: *right hand, a hand*.

⁴ ūnicus, a, um, *only, one*.

⁵ intrō, 1, intr., *enter*.

⁶ voluntās, voluntātis, *will*.

⁷ cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdīnis, *habit*.

ŌRĀTIŌ CHRĪSTIĀNA

Exaudī,¹ Domine Jēsū Chrīste, precēs² servōrum tuōrum, et miserere nōbīs : Quī cum Patre et Spīritū Sānctō vivis et rēgnās³ in saecula saeculōrum. Āmēn.

Domine, ad adjuvandum mē festinā.⁴

SENTENTIA SĀNCTĪ PAULĪ

Sānctus Paulus, "Alter alterius onera,"⁵ inquit, "portāte, et sīc adimplēbitis⁶ lēgem Chrīstī."

Chrīstus, "Quī," inquit, "nōn est mēcum, contrā mē est."

VERBA CHRĪSTĪ

Chrīstus, "Et nōlīte timēre," inquit, "eōs quī occīdunt corpus, animam⁷ autem nōn possunt occīdere ; sed potius timēte eum, quī potest et animam⁷ et corpus perdere⁸ in gehennam."⁹

¹ exaudiō, 4, tr., *hear, listen to.*

² precēs, precum, f., *prayers.*

³ rēgnō, 1, intr., *reign.*

⁴ festinō, 1, intr., *hasten.*

⁵ onus, oneris, n., *burden.*

⁶ adimpleō, adimplēre, adimplēvī, adimplētus, 2, tr., *fulfill.*

⁷ anima, ae, *soul.*

⁸ perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, 3, tr., *destroy.*

⁹ gehenna, ae, *hell.*

LESSON 30: GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 695-699; 762-763.

EXERCISE 223

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized phrases or words:*

1. Caesar, vir *magnae virtutis*, Galliam pācāvit. 2. Erant *mājore spē* quod plūrēs nāvēs habēbant. 3. Vallum *trium pedum* fēcit. 4. Orgetorix fuit magnā apud multitudinem *grātiā*. 5. Rōmānī sē *magnī animī* esse arbitrātī sunt. 6. Cōsul vir *maximae auctōritātis* fuit. 7. Hōc in Rōmānōs *animō* sumus ut eōs adjuvāre velimus. 8. Caesar Labiēnum, virum *magnae fidēi*, laudāvit. 9. Iter *decem milium passuum* fēcit. 10. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, homō *magnō corpore* erat. 11. Rēs *summī periculī* erat. 12. *Parvī animī* est quī rēs magnās gerere nōn velit. 13. Centuriōnēs virī *maximae virtutis* saepe erant. 14. Ad flūmen *magnā altitudīne* pervēnērunt.

EXERCISE 224

Translate:

1. Caesar, a man of the greatest courage, was commander in chief. 2. They made a six-foot ditch. 3. Vercingetorix was a man of great influence among the Gauls. 4. They were more hopeful¹ than the Gauls. 5. Labienus was a man of the greatest loyalty. 6. The affair was (one) of the greatest danger. 7. He was a large-bodied¹ man. 8. The consuls were men of the highest authority among the Romans. 9. They made a four-day journey. 10. He was a very influential¹ man.

¹ Use a noun in the ablative of description, Gr. 699.

EXERCISE 225

Translate:

(Study the meanings of *on* carefully before translating.)

1. The horseman reported that there was a bridge *on* the river.
2. They made an attack *on* the camp.
3. He heard that the town was set *on* fire.¹
4. He spoke *on* serious matters.
5. He said he would arrive *on* the third day.
6. *On* hearing this, he set out at once.
7. These brave men fought *on* behalf of all Americans.
8. There were hills and mountains *on* all sides.
9. *On* account of these wrongs, they were carrying *on* war against the Romans.

DĒ PARALYTICŌ²

Cum autem vidisset Jēsūs fidem illōrum, ait³ paralyticō:² "Fīlī, dīmīttuntur tibi peccāta tua."

Erant autem illic⁴ quīdam⁵ dē scrībīs⁶ sedentēs,⁷ et cogitantēs⁸ in cordibus⁹ suīs: "Quid¹⁰ hic sīc loquitur? blasphemā.¹¹ Quis potest dīmīttēre peccāta, nisi sōlus Deus?"

Quō statim cognitō Jēsūs spīritū suō, quia¹² sīc cogitārent⁸ intrā¹³ sē, dīcit illis: "Quid¹⁰ ista¹⁴ cogitātis⁸ in cordibus⁹ vestrīs? Quid est facilius dicere paralyticō:² 'Dīmīttuntur tibi peccāta';

¹ Use a single verb for *was set on fire*.

² paralyticus, ī, *paralytic*.

³ ait: *he says*.

⁴ illic, adv., *there*.

⁵ quīdam: *certain ones*.

⁶ scriba, ae, m., *scribe*.

⁷ sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, 2, intr., *sit*.

⁸ cogitō, 1, tr., *think*.

⁹ cor, cordis, n., *heart*.

¹⁰ Quid is sometimes used, as here, for *why*.

¹¹ blasphemō, 1, tr., *blaspheme*.

¹² quia, *that*, introducing a noun clause. In classical Latin this would be an accusative with infinitive.

¹³ intrā, prep. w. acc., *within*.

¹⁴ iste, ista, istud, *that*

an¹ dicere: 'Surge,² tolle grabātum³ tuum, et ambulā?'⁴ Ut autem sciātis quia Filius hominis habet potestātem⁵ in terrā dīmittendī peccāta (ait paralyticō), tibi dīcō: 'Surge, tolle grabātum³ tuum, et vāde⁶ in domum⁷ tuam.' "

Et statim surrēxit² ille: et, sublātō grabātō,³ abiit⁸ cōram omnibus, ita ut mīrārentur¹⁰ omnēs, et honōrificārent¹¹ Deum.

Pilātō dīxērunt Jūdaeī: "Sī¹² hunc dīmittis, nōn es amīcus Caesaris; omnis enim quī sē rēgem facit contrādicīt¹³ Caesarī."

¹ an, conj., *or.*

² surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum, 3, intr., *arise.*

³ grabātus, ī, *bed, pallet.*

⁴ ambulō, 1, intr., *walk.*

⁵ potestās, potestātis, *power.*

⁶ vādō, vādere, 3, intr., *go, walk.*

⁷ domus, ūs (ī), *home.*

⁸ abeō, abire, abiī, abitum, irreg., intr., *go away.*

⁹ cōram, prep. w. abl., *before.*

¹⁰ mīror, 1, intr., *marvel.*

¹¹ honōrificō, 1, tr., *glorify.*

¹² sī, conj., *if.*

¹³ contrādicō, contrādicere, contrādixī, contrādictum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *speck against.*

LESSON 31: CAUSAL CLAUSES

VOCABULARY

quia	} <i>conj.</i>	<i>because</i>
quod		
quoniam		
cum, <i>conj.</i>		<i>since</i>

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 572-573; 578.

EXERCISE 226

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized words:*

1. Hae nāvēs, *quod* cursum tenēre nōn *poterant*, in portum revertērunt. 2. Quae *cum* ita *sint*, ēgredere ex urbe! 3. Nostrī perturbābuntur *quod* ōrdinēs servāre nōn *poterant*. 4. Caesar Labiēnum laudāvit *quod* dīligentissimē omnēs rēs *administrāvisset*. 5. Caesar suōs hortātus est ut, *quoniam* ad finem¹ labōrum *perventum* *esset*, eā hōrā victōriam comparārent. 6. *Cum* fugam hostium reprimere nōn *posset*, classem exspectandam esse cōstituit. 7. *Quoniam* nox *est*, vōs dīmittam. 8. *Quoniam* Caesarī persuādēre nōn *possumus* ut iter nōbīs per prōvinciam det, vī armisque viam faciēmus. 9. Possunt *quia* posse *videntur*.

EXERCISE 227

Translate:

1. They were not able to return at once because the wind was unfavorable. 2. The Gauls feared Caesar because he was very daring and very brave. 3. Since they could not take the town, they withdrew into their own territory. 4. They came to seek

¹ finis, finis, end.

peace because they knew they were unable to withstand the attacks of the legions. 5. Pilate ordered Christ to be led to death because he feared the Jews. 6. God sent His only Son into the world because He loves us. 7. They were unable to take the camp because it was well fortified. 8. Men praised Caesar because he was courageous in fighting and swift in acting. 9. They thought they had an opportunity of saving the liberty of Gaul because all the tribes were united. 10. They formed a conspiracy because Caesar was away. They thought they could capture the winter quarters before his arrival.

Sī¹ barbarōrum est in diem vīvere, nostra cōnsilia sempiternum² tempus spectāre debent.

—Cicero

DĒ MORTE MALŌRUM ET BONŌRUM

Bonōrum mors est beāta,³ mors vērō⁴ peccātōrum⁵ infēlix⁶ et misera. (*St. Bonaventure.*)

DĒ AMĪCITIĀ

Virtūtum adjūtrix⁷ amīcitia ā nātūrā data est. (*Adapted from Cicero.*)

¹ sī, conj., *if*.

² sempiternus, a, um, *everlasting*.

³ beātus, a, um, *blessed, happy*.

⁴ vērō, adv., *however, in truth*.

⁵ peccātor, peccātōris, *sinner*.

⁶ infēlix (*gen. infēlicis*), *unhappy*.

⁷ adjūtrix, adjūtrīcis, *helper*.

LESSON 32: DATIVE OF PURPOSE; DOUBLE DATIVE

ASSIGNMENT: GRAMMAR 729-731.

EXERCISE 228

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the syntax of the italicized words:*

1. Mors rēgis *Germānis* magnō *dolōri* fuit. 2. Equitēs *praesidiō* reliquit. 3. Decem cohortēs ad Labiēnum *auxiliō* mīsit. 4. Ūna rēs magnō *ūsui nostris* fuit. 5. *Suis* in angustiis pugnantibus Labiēnum cum tertiā legiōne *auxiliō* mīsit. 6. Chrīstus in mundum *nōbis auxiliō* vēnit. 7. Illa nostra victōria magnō *hostibus dolōri* erat. 8. Victōriae militum nostrōrum *nōbis* maximae *glōriae* sunt. 9. Adventus Caesaris *nōbis salūtī* fuit. 10. Illōs *impedimentis praesidiō* reliquit. 11. Centuriō, "Quoniam mē ūnā¹ vōbiscum," inquit, "servāre nōn possum, *vōbis* certē *salūtī* erō."

EXERCISE 229

Translate:

1. His death was a great sorrow to me. 2. They left two cohorts as a garrison. 3. This was a serious danger to our men. 4. He asked whether the slaughter of the leading men had been a very great sorrow for the Gauls. 5. The ships were a great help to Caesar when he was waging war with the Veneti. 6. He sent the cavalry as a help to the infantry. 7. He died fighting bravely and was thus a cause of safety² to his men. 8. This victory was a glorious thing³ for all the Romans. 9. They said that Caesar's victories were a great sorrow to the Gauls.

¹ ūnā, adv., along with, together.

² cause of safety: salūtī.

³ glorious thing: glōriae.

DĒ SĀNCTĪS

Gaudent¹ in caelīs animae² sānctorum, quī Christī vestīgia³ sunt secūtī: et quia prō ējus amōre⁴ sanguinem⁵ suum fūdērunt,⁶ ideō⁷ cum Christō exsultant⁸ sine fīne.⁹

Animī¹⁰ nōn armīs sed amōre⁴ vincuntur.

VERBA CHRĪSTĪ

Christus suīs, “Petite, et dabitur vōbīs,” inquit, “quaerite et inveniētis,¹¹ pulsāte¹² et aperiētur vōbīs. Omnis enim quī petit, accipit; et quī quaerit, invenit;¹¹ et pulsantī¹² aperiētur.”

DĒ MARTYRIBUS¹³

Ipsī vērō¹⁴ mortuī sunt prō Christō, et vīvent in aeternum.¹⁵

¹ gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, intr., *rejoice*.

² anima, ae, *soul*.

³ vestīgium, ī, *footstep*.

⁴ amor, amōris, *love*.

⁵ sanguis, sanguinis, *blood*.

⁶ fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, 3, tr., *pour out*.

⁷ ideō, adv., *therefore*.

⁸ exsultō, 1, intr., *exult, rejoice*.

⁹ finis, finis, *end*.

¹⁰ animus, ī, *mind, soul*.

¹¹ inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, 4, tr., *find*.

¹² pulsō, 1, tr., *knock*.

¹³ martyr, martyris, *martyr*.

¹⁴ vērō, adv., *indeed, in truth, however*.

¹⁵ in aeternum: *forever*.

CONTINUOUS PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION

A. ROBERT CLIVE IN INDIA

A. D. 1743-1760

1

For many years the French¹ and English² had struggled to gain possession of India.³ The kings and the chief men of India³ were very rich, and both English² and French¹ had gone to India³ for the sake of money.⁴ The war was finally brought to a close⁵ by two men of the highest daring and courage. The one, the Frenchman,⁶ was named⁷ Dupleix;⁸ the other, the leader of the English, was Robert⁹ Clive. Dupleix came to India³ first,¹⁰ and he found that the English² were very influential with the Indians.¹¹ Since he had shown that he was very daring he was put in command of Pondicheri by the French.¹ For thirteen¹² consecutive years he held the highest power in the French¹³ province.

2

Dupleix, however, did not have great knowledge¹⁴ of military

¹ Use Gallī, Gallōrum.

² Use Anglī, Anglōrum.

³ India, India, ae.

⁴ money, pecūnia, ae.

⁵ Think of the meaning and translate.

⁶ Use Gallus, ī.

⁷ one was named: alterī nōmen erat.

⁸ Use the English form for proper names unless otherwise indicated.

⁹ Robert, Robertus, ī.

¹⁰ Use prior as an adjective.

¹¹ Indians, Indī, Indōrum.

¹² For all numerals consult GRAMMAR 112-122.

¹³ French, Gallicus, a, um.

¹⁴ knowledge, scientia, ae.

science,¹⁵ but he saw that a few European¹⁶ soldiers could defeat a very large number of Indians. He knew also that the Indians were not able to capture fortified places. He therefore gathered a force at Pondicheri and fortified the town. When in 1744¹⁷ the English began to wage war with the French, Dupleix awaited the attack at Pondicheri.

3

A French¹⁸ fleet, however, sailed to help him. Helped by it, Dupleix captured Madras, which was the principal¹⁹ town of the English. Dupleix, however, had promised to give Madras to the chief man²⁰ of that region (the chief men of the Indians were called 'Nawabs') in order to gain his friendship, but now, elated by this victory, he did not hand it over to him. He therefore led his army against the Nawab and, after defeating him, joined Madras to the French¹⁸ province. But his own troops were soon to be defeated²¹ by a new English²² leader.

4

Robert Clive was sent to India in 1743.²³ He was a very good general and a most careful and courageous man. He found that Dupleix had strengthened the power of the French and had often defeated the English armies. He determined to lessen²⁴ the influence of the French. After he had marched swiftly out of Madras, he attacked a town which was called Arcot. This town was in the territory of a nawab who was a friend of the French. After he had

¹⁵ *military science*, *rēs (reī) militāris (is)*.

¹⁶ *European*, *Europaeus*, a, um.

¹⁷ *in 1744*: *annō millēsīmō septingentēsīmō quadrāgēsīmō quārtō*.

¹⁸ *French*, *Gallicus*, a, um.

¹⁹ *principal*, *maximus*, a, um.

²⁰ *chief man*, *rēgulus*, ī.

²¹ Change to the active voice and use the participle in *-ūrus* with the imperfect of *sum*.

²² *English*, *Anglicus*, a, um.

²³ *in 1743*: *annō millēsīmō septingentēsīmō quadrāgēsīmō tertiō*.

²⁴ *lessen*, *minuō*, *minuere*, *minuī*, *minūtus*, 3, tr.

captured it, he withstood, with a few men and for a long time, the attacks of an army in which there were French troops.

5

The Indians were so frightened by this victory that they sought the friendship of Clive, and English²⁵ influence became very great in this part of India.

Meanwhile Surja Dowlah, Nawab of Bengal, because Calcutta²⁶ had been fortified, attacked and captured it. One hundred and forty-six English were captured. These captives²⁷ he killed most cruelly. They were thrown into a dungeon²⁸ so narrow that within one night most of them died.²⁹ This dungeon²⁸ is called "the Black Hole of Calcutta."³⁰

6

All the English were aroused by this, and Clive hastened to Calcutta²⁶ and took the town. But soon 50,000 Indians³¹ had taken a position³² near him; he had 900 English³³ soldiers and 2,000 Indians.³¹ His lieutenants, when summoned to a council, begged him to flee. He thought about the matter for an hour; he ordered the troops to advance. The next day a fierce battle was fought³⁴ at Plassy, and by that day's victory the English conquered all Bengal. Thus did Clive defeat the French and pacify India.

²⁵ Use the genitive of Angli.

²⁶ *Calcutta*, *Calcutta*, ae.

²⁷ *captive*, *captivus*, ī.

²⁸ *dungeon*, *carcer*, *carceris*.

²⁹ *die* (*perish*), *pereō*, *perire*, *perii*, irreg., intr.

³⁰ Leave in English.

³¹ *Indians*, *Indī*, *Indōrum*.

³² *take a position*, *cōnsidō*, *cōnsidere*, *cōnsēdī*, *cōnsessum*, 3, intr.

³³ *English*, *Anglicus*, a, um.

³⁴ *a fierce battle was fought*: *ācritēr pugnātum est*.

B. THE BOER WAR

1

Caesar brought all Gaul under¹ the power of the Roman people; Rhodes² conquered South Africa³ for the English.⁴ Rhodes thought that the English⁴ were the greatest nation in the world and would gain possession of South Africa³ and many other lands. But the Boers,² who lived in the Transvaal,² long⁵ resisted him. Since there was an abundance of gold⁶ in the Transvaal, many English⁷ had gone there for the sake of money.⁸ Soon⁹ there were more English⁷ than Boers in that territory. The English asked that citizenship be given them. Kruger,² who was at the head of the government in the Transvaal, refused. "This is my country,"¹⁰ he said, "these are my laws. Let those who do not wish to obey¹¹ my laws leave my country."¹⁰

2

Rhodes persuaded Jameson, an Englishman,¹² to gather five hundred¹³ men and advance to the borders of the Transvaal. Thinking that the English who were in the territory of the Boers would help him, he advanced at once into the territory of the Transvaal. But the English did not help him, and, hard pressed by the enemy, he was forced to surrender. The Boers, aroused by this battle, said that the English had inflicted a great wrong upon them; even among the English Rhodes now had less influence.

¹ *bring under, redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus*, 3, tr.

² Use the English form.

³ *South Africa, Africa* (ae) *Meridiōnālis* (is).

⁴ Use *populus Anglicus*.

⁵ Use *jam diū* with the imperfect indicative.

⁶ *gold, aurum, ī*.

⁷ Use *Anglī, Anglōrum*.

⁸ *money, pecūnia, ae*.

⁹ *soon, brevī, adv*.

¹⁰ *country, patria, ae*.

¹¹ *do not wish to obey: oboedire nōlunt; w. dat.*

¹² *Englishman, Anglus, ī*.

¹³ See GRAMMAR 112.

3

But war broke out.¹⁴ The Boers were brave and vigorous. Their leaders adopted a very good method of warfare. They were determined to resist the English even to death. They carried on the war and withstood the attacks of the English for many years, for the English did not know the terrain,¹⁵ nor were they fighting in their own territory in defense of their liberty.

4

The English were often overcome in battle. De la Rey, after placing¹⁶ an ambush,¹⁷ conquered Kerwich, the English¹⁸ general, at Moedwell Farm. This general annihilated¹⁹ the forces of Methuen, a lieutenant, and captured Methuen himself. But Kitchener, the commander in chief of the English, a man of the greatest courage, by capturing their wives²⁰ and children²¹ and burning all their grain and their towns at last²² pacified the Boers. The Boer soldiers exhorted one another to fight longer. "We must conquer or die," they said.²³ But they were unable longer to withstand the attack of the English and at last sent envoys for peace. Thus the Boers became, by force, English¹⁸ citizens.²⁴

¹⁴ *break out*, *orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus sum*, 4, *intr.*

¹⁵ *terrain*, *nātūra* (*ae*) *locī*.

¹⁶ *place*, *collocō*, 1, *tr.*

¹⁷ *ambush*, *īnsīdiae*, *īnsīdiārum*.

¹⁸ *English*, *Anglicus*, *a*, *um*.

¹⁹ *annihilated*: *omnēs ad ūnum interfēcit*.

²⁰ *wife*, *uxor*, *uxōris*.

²¹ *children*, *liberī*, *liberōrum*.

²² *at last*, *tandem*, *adv.*

²³ *they said*: *inquiunt*.

²⁴ *citizen*, *cīvis*, *cīvis*.

CLASSIFIED REVIEW EXERCISES

NOTE

Each exercise is divided into three sections: Section A contains typical Latin sentences; Section B contains typical English sentences; Section C contains idiomatic expressions and synonyms not found in the vocabularies, but which can be translated by studying sections A and B of the same exercise.

1. DIRECT QUESTIONS

[GRAMMAR 502-503]

A.

Translate:

1. Quis venit? 2. Nōne Chrīstus est Deus? 3. Num Caesar ā Gallis occīsus est? 4. Adiistīne Italiam? 5. Cūr Caesar Helvētiōs ā prōvinciā reppulit? 6. Ubi est Rōma? 7. Cūjus rei cupidus erat Caesar? 8. Quō itinere Helvētīi dē suīs fīnibus exīre cōnātī sunt? 9. Quem classi praefēcit? 10. Quō iter faciēs?

B.

Translate:

1. With whom did you come? 2. Who was Julius Caesar? 3. Surely Caesar was not conquered by the Gauls? 4. Why did they kill Caesar? 5. Caesar pacified Gaul, didn't he? 6. You don't believe this, do you? 7. Wasn't Caesar in command of many men? 8. Have you visited the mountains?

C.

Translate:

1. Was Caesar at the head of a large army? 2. In whose company did you journey into Italy? 3. Weren't the Gauls vanquished by Caesar? 4. Why did the Helvetians make an attempt

to cross into the province? 5. Whom did the Senate appoint as commander of the legions? 6. Didn't Caesar slaughter a large number of Gallic leaders?

2. COMMANDS, WISHES, ETC.

[GRAMMAR 511; 514; 515-516; 518]

A.

Translate:

1. Deus mē adjuvet. 2. Nē vincantur nostrī! 3. Fortiter pug-nēmus. 4. Utinam mēcum sis. 5. Nē exeat. 6. Impetum faciant. 7. Exī! proficiscere! 8. Fer auxilium! 9. Nōlī timēre. 10. Nō-līte aliīs nocēre. 11. Nē fugiāmus. 12. Omnibus nē crēdideris!

B.

Translate:

1. May God help you. 2. Let them go out of our city. 3. Let him not go. 4. Don't surrender the town. 5. Send help. 6. Don't withdraw from the battle line. 7. Help your friends. 8. Don't put your hope in kings. 9. May you live many years. 10. Let us advance. 11. May we harm no one. 12. May you not be captured.

C.

Translate:

1. Let us aid those who are in misery. 2. Don't retreat from the front line. 3. Don't injure others. 4. May our soldiers not be defeated. 5. Don't be afraid.

3. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, RESULT, TIME, ETC.

[GRAMMAR 524-537; 546-557; 561; 572-573; 576; 578; 637-639]

A.

1. *Translate;*

2. *Explain the mood and tense of the italicized words:*

1. Effēcit ut magnae cōpiae in eum locum *convenirent*. 2. Fac-

tum est ut hostēs *fugerent*. 3. Eīs persuāsīt ut obsidēs sibi *darent*. 4. Equitibus imperāvit nē obsidibus *nocērent*. 5. Tantus ventus ortus est ut nāvēs in portū *continuerit*. 6. Lēgātī vērunt ut pācem *peterent* (*pācis petendae causā; ad pācem petendam*). 7. Fossā vallōque castra mūnīvit quō facilius et diūtius hostium impetūs *sustinēret*. 8. Legiōnem tertiam ibi reliquit nē hostēs flūmen *trānsīrent*. 9. Deum ōrēmus ut nōs *adjuvet*. 10. Quae cum ita *sint*, iter per prōvinciam vōbīs nōn dabō. 11. Caesar, cum aciem hostium *cōnspexisset*, legiōnēs in proximum collem dēdūxit ibique castra posuit. 12. Lēgātus, cum fortissimē *pugnāret*, ā Caesare vīsus est. 13. Tam fortiter eōs aggressi sumus ut impetum nōn *sustinuerint*. 14. Saepe fit ut hominēs aliis injuriās *inferant*. 15. Ut primum in prōvinciam *pervēnit*, novās legiōnēs cōscribī jussit. 16. Caesar, postquam eōs *vīcit*, exercitum in prōvinciam redūxit. 17. Quod diūtius vim legiōnum sustinēre nōn *potuerunt*, lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt. 18. Quoniam nox *erat*, in castris manēbant. 19. Lēgātum laudāvit quod fortissimē *pugnāvisset*. 20. Eōs monēbat nē flūmen *trānsīrent*. 21. Rogō ut prō mē ōrēs.

B.

Translate:

1. He persuaded the others to kill Caesar. 2. It happened that no one saw him. 3. I shall try to persuade all men to maintain peace. 4. He ordered the guards not to harm the captured king. 5. They fought so bitterly that the enemy withdrew in a short time. 6. Caesar conquered Gaul in order to become master of Italy also. 7. He made a bridge in order that he might cross the river more swiftly. 8. I begged him not to kill us. 9. Since you do not trust me, I shall tell you nothing. 10. When Caesar was in Gaul, he was feared by those who were not friends of the Roman people. 11. As soon as he saw the king, he tried to kill him with a sword. 12. After all Gaul had been pacified, Caesar led his forces into Italy and in a short time gained possession of Rome itself. 13. Because they feared Caesar, the Gauls were alarmed at his arrival. 14. The Senate gave thanks to Caesar because he

had removed the fear of the Gauls from the state. 15. Caesar warned them not to try to march through the province. 16. When Caesar had conquered all those who resisted him, he was killed by his own friends.

C.

Translate:

1. He caused a bridge to be built. 2. He gave orders that the hostages were not to be molested. 3. He talked them into going with him. 4. Since you distrust me, I shall not remain with you. 5. The fighting was so bitter that very many were killed. 6. The moment he laid eyes on me, he began to fight. 7. They thanked Caesar for keeping the Helvetians out of the province. 8. Such a terrible gale blew up, that he was unable to leave the harbor. 9. We pray God for His help.

4. RELATIVE CLAUSES

[GRAMMAR 479; 615-619; 622; 624-625; 633-634; 636]

A.

Translate:

1. Legiōnem quam nūper cōscripsit in mediō colle collocāvit. 2. Quī sine spē pugnat, vincitur. 3. Mīlitēs sumus, et, quod mājus est, Rōmānī. 4. Quae cum ita sint, proficiscere! 5. Lēgātum mīsit quī dē suōrum salūte cum eis ageret. 6. Nēmō est quī miser esse cupiat. 7. Quis est quī tē vercātur? 8. Principēs mīsit quī pācem peterent.

B.

Translate:

1. The man Caesar praised was a brave soldier. 2. No one is so wretched that he has no hope. 3. He sent the cavalry to kill the fleeing Helvetians. 4. No one trusts him who does not believe in God. 5. I am not the man to surrender a town without fighting. 6. Who is there that will not fight for liberty? 7. There is no one who believes you.

C.

Translate:

1. Those who held the Japanese off from Wake Island¹ were valiant men. 2. Who is there that stands in awe of you? 3. He dispatched an envoy to sue for peace. 4. He sent off cavalry to massacre the Helvetians as they fled.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

[GRAMMAR 660-662]

A.

*1. Translate;**2. Parse the italicized words:*

1. Rogō num Deum esse *crēdās*. 2. Rogāvit num Christus *rēx esset*. 3. Rogō num Columbus *prīmus ad Americam pervēnerit*. 4. Rogāvit num Christus *mortuus esset*. 5. Quaesīvit ab eō *vīdissetne* hostēs. 6. Scīvit quis Christus *esset*. 7. Rogāvit *cūjus* rei cupidi *essent*. 8. Rogāmus quem *occiderit*. 9. Scīvit ubi custōdēs *essent*. 10. Scīsne cūr Judaei Christum Pilātō *trādiderint*?

B.

Translate:

1. We asked whether he believed there is a God. 2. They asked why the Gauls resisted Caesar. 3. Do you know where Rome is? 4. Caesar asked whether they had handed over the arms and slaves. 5. We ask whom Caesar put in command of the fleet. 6. They asked what plan he had employed. 7. We know with which legions he defended the province. 8. Do you know to whom Caesar gave the captured arms? 9. The envoy asked whether the Germans were crossing the Rhine. 10. Caesar knew who had persuaded the Helvetians to try to cross the river.

¹ Wake Island, *Īnsula* (ae) *Wakensis* (is).

C.

Translate:

1. Do you know whether Caesar believed in the existence of God? 2. Do you know the location of Rome? 3. He asked whether the Germans were engaged in crossing the Rhine. 4. Do you know why the Romans put Christ to death? 5. We know who was the first to reach America.

6. THE GENITIVE

[GRAMMAR 680; 695-699; 722]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Exercitum in *hostium* finēs dūxit. 2. Plūs *frūmentī* petīvīt.
3. Caesar fuit vir maximae *virtūtis*. 4. Iter *ūnius diēi* fēcīt.
5. Fuitne Caesar *glōriāe* cupidissimus? 6. Helvētīi aliēnōrum *agrōrum* cupidī erant. 7. Oppidum erat omnium *rērum* plēnum.
8. Satis *frūmentī* habuit.

B.

Translate:

1. They were eager for power. 2. He is very like his father.¹
3. Have we enough grain? 4. Caesar, a man of great courage, pacified Gaul. 5. He gained possession of the enemy's camp.
6. There was a ten-foot wall between the city and the hill. 7. The night is full of dangers. 8. Labienus was a man of the greatest reliability.

C.

Translate:

1. He was a large-bodied man. 2. Have we a sufficiency of grain? 3. He was a very reliable man. 4. He is the image of his father. 5. They captured many ships belonging to the Veneti.

¹ Use the genitive.

7. THE DATIVE

[GRAMMAR 729-732; 736-737; 739-744]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Galli *Rōmānīs* magnam frūmentī cōpiam dedērunt. 2. Helvētīi proximī erant *Germānīs*. 3. Deus *omnibus* laudandus atque diligendus est. 4. Ille colīs *castrīs* pōnendis idōneus est. 5. Ventus *nāvibus* saepe nocēbat. 6. Omnēs *libertātī* student. 7. Magnum equitum numerum *Gallis* imperāvit. 8. *Eīs* persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. 9. *Eī* mandāvit ut omnia explōrāret. 10. Caesar lēgātum *legiōnibus* saepe praefēcīt. 11. Quis huic *legiōnī* praeest? 12. Decem cohortēs *suis* labōrantibus *auxiliō* misīt. 13. *Mihi* persuāsum est ut prō libertāte pugnārem. 14. *Eī* ā Caesare persuāsum est ut sēcūm manēret. 15. *Christō* similis esse volō. 16. Caesar libertātem *Gallis* ēripuit. 17. Deus mē ex hōc periculō ēripiat! 18. Mors Washingtonī *Americānīs* magnō fuit *dolōrī*.

B.

Translate:

1. They handed over the arms to the Romans. 2. The Helvetians were next to the province. 3. He led his men to a hill suitable for a camp. 4. He levied a large number of hostages on the neighboring tribes. 5. They persuaded Brutus to form a conspiracy against Caesar. 6. He ordered the lieutenant to gather forces to defend the province. 7. Caesar was put in command of the legions which were in the province. 8. He sent the third legion as a help to the lieutenant. 9. They resisted the Germans most fiercely. 10. I have been persuaded by your friends to help you. 11. Was she like Mary? 12. The death of Ariovistus was a great sorrow to the Germans. 13. Who was in command of the army? 14. We were resisted for a long time by the Japanese. 15. He told me how great the forces of the enemy were. 16. We must defend our liberty.

C.

Translate:

1. They hurried to the assistance of the third legion, which was being hard pressed by a numerous force of enemy cavalry. 2. The bridge was severely damaged by the wind and the violence of the river. 3. The enemy put up a fierce resistance.¹ 4. He ordered a levy¹ of cavalry among the Gauls. 5. They raised a large army for the defense¹ of the province. 6. The Gauls were conspiring against Caesar. 7. He left ten legions to garrison the town. 8. The Helvetians bordered on our province. 9. The cavalry came to the aid of the third legion.

8. THE ACCUSATIVE

[GRAMMAR 745-750; 761]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Amicī *Caesarem* interfēcērunt. 2. Militēs *Caesarem imperātorem* appellāvērunt. 3. Christus nōs *amicōs* vocāvit. 4. Christus ā nōbīs *rēx* appellātur. 5. Dux magnās cōpiās *flūmen* trādūxit. 6. Lēgātus omnēs *equitēs* trāns flūmen trādūxit. 7. Equitēs ā lēgātō *flūmen* trāductī sunt. 8. Duo *mīlia* passuum iter fēcit. 9. Trēs *hōrās* fortissimē resistēbant. 10. Fossa duōs *pedēs* lata erat. 11. Castra hostium *mīlle passūs* aberat.

B.

Translate:

1. The Gauls burned Rome itself. 2. All Christians should call Christ King. 3. After they had marched four miles, they pitched camp on a suitable hill. 4. This town was five miles away. 5. They pitched camp ten paces from the river. 6. The river was a hundred feet wide. 7. Caesar led the cavalry across a very

¹ English nouns should often be translated by Latin verbs.

deep river. 8. We call Washington the Father of His Country.¹ 9. Having advanced for three hours, they saw the enemy drawn up on the next hill. 10. They withstood the attacks for three days. 11. During five hours they fought fiercely and courageously. 12. The third legion was led across the river.

C.

Translate:

1. He was acclaimed emperor by his men. 2. The Gauls put Rome to the torch. 3. He quickly threw a large force across the river. 4. They constructed their camp a mile from the enemy. 5. They marched for a distance of two miles. 6. Advancing three miles, they caught sight of the enemy's column coming out of a vast forest.

9. THE ABLATIVE

[GRAMMAR 762-767; 769-770; 772-783; 920-922]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Tū illō ipsō diē āfuistī. 2. Paucīs diēbus obsidēs dabimus. 3. Ariovistus magnō corpore erat. 4. Omnis Gallia ā Caesare pācāta est. 5. Nostra cīvītās ab hostibus tūta est. 6. Rōma ā nostrīs finibus longē abest. 7. Equitēs longius ā castrīs prōgressī sunt. 8. Rōmānī castra fossā vallōque semper mūnīvērunt. 9. Viae longae ā Rōmānīs mūnītae sunt. 10. Nihil vērītate melius est. 11. Legiōnēs magnā cum virtūte pugnāvērunt. 12. Belgae reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superābant. 13. Castra hominibus plēna erant. 14. Adventū Caesaris commōtī, Gallī saepe lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mīsērunt. 15. Hōc ūsus cōnsiliō, Caesar sē ē magnō periculō recēpit. 16. Tertiā hōrā in castra pervēnērunt. 17. Gallī Rōmānīs magnā virtūte diū restitērunt. 18. Omnēs hominēs nātūrā libertātī student. 19. Gallī Rōmānōs itinere prohibēre cōnātī

¹ country, patria, ae.

sunt. 20. Amicitia, *quā* nihil melius nobis *ā* *nātūrā* datum est, nisi inter bonos esse nōn potest. 21. Hostibus *ā* *nōbīs* resistendum est. 22. Ibi lēgātus, fortissimē pugnāns, *tēlō* interfectus est. 23. Hāc *victōriā* ēlātī, Gallī spērāvērunt sē Rōmānōs ē Galliā in perpetuum pulsūrōs esse. 24. *Cum omnibus cōpiīs* ē finibus suis exhibant. 25. Caesar *omnibus cōpiīs* eōs subsecūtus est.

B.

Translate:

1. They killed Caesar with swords. 2. Within a short time, we shall see our friends. 3. Are we safe from all enemies? 4. The Gauls are far away from us. 5. Fear was taken away from our state by Washington, a man of the greatest courage. 6. A road through the province was built by the Romans. 7. They fortified the winter quarters with a ditch five feet wide. 8. Who was braver or more daring than Caesar? 9. On the third day he was informed that the enemy had pitched camp next to the woods. 10. They resisted us with the greatest courage. 11. By nature men desire fame. 12. Good men are free from fear. 13. They were alarmed by the victories gained by Caesar. 14. Do our men surpass others in courage and reliability? 15. Which plan will you employ? 16. He warded them off from the province by force. 17. We must harm the enemy in every way. 18. The Gauls came into Italy with all their forces to seize new fields. 19. They killed many of the oncoming Gauls with javelins. 20. The second day, the messenger arrived at Caesar's camp. 21. Are our mountains higher than the Alps?

C.

Translate:

1. Excellent roads were constructed by the Romans. 2. The hill was fortified with a wall. 3. In company with the envoys, came also the king of the Germans. 4. We are secure from all assaults. 5. He died at the hands of a very wicked man. 6. A vast host of Gauls came into Italy with the purpose of seizing the lands of those who dwelt there.

10. PRONOUNS

[GRAMMAR 479; 790-797 (omit *iste*); 800-806; 808-810;
812; 822-830; 840]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the italicized words:*

1. *Hōs* vīcimus. In *illōs* impetum faciēmus. 2. *Is* quī fortissimē pugnat, laudātur. 3. *Hanc* urbem oppugnēmus. 4. Rōma est urbs magna et nōbilis. Vidistīne *eam*? 5. Orgetorix *sē* occidit. 6. Caesar *suōs* laudāvit. 7. Lēgātus dīxit *sē* tertiā diē profectūrum esse. 8. Hostēs fūgērunt nē equitēs *sibi* nocērent. 9. Equitibus imperāvit ut *sēcum* īrent. 10. Lēgātum laudāvit quod *sibi* auxiliō equitēs mīsisset. 11. *Ipsī* *sē* laudāvērunt. 12. Equitēs in silvās mīsit; *ipse* trāns flūmen contendit. 13. Eō *ipsō* diē nuntius ad Caesarem pervēnit. 14. Virtūs *ipsa* per *sē* laudātur. 15. Quī peccāta committunt, *ipsī* *sibi* nocent. 16. *Alius* Caesarem laudāvit; *alius* Pompējum laudāvit. 17. *Alii* *alia* sentiunt. 18. *Alteri* contrā Gallōs pugnāvērunt; *alteri* contrā Rōmānōs. 19. Hōrum duōrum frātrum, *alter* nauta est, *alter* miles. 20. *Alterō* pede vulnerātus est. 21. *Aliōs* adjuvāre dēbēmus. 22. Frātrēs inter *sē* diligere dēbent. 23. Gallī obsidēs inter *sē* dabant. 24. Hae gentēs inter *sē* differunt. 25. Equitēs ē timōre *sē* recēpērunt. 26. Hostēs *sē* in montēs recēpērunt. 27. Hostēs *sē* *suaque* omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

B.

Translate:

1. Peter and Judas were disciples¹ of Christ, but the one denied that he knew Christ, the other betrayed² Him. 2. The third legion, having been forced into a defile, was hard pressed. Caesar therefore sent two cohorts to help it. 3. He said they had not handed over the arms. 4. They said they would wage war against

¹ *disciple, discipulus, ī.*

² *betray, prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, 3, tr.*

the Romans. 5. Mary did not praise herself. 6. Rome itself was burned by the Gauls. 7. We praise our own mothers. 8. He himself remained in the city. 9. In this very city Caesar was killed by Romans. 10. On that very day they arrived at the enemy's territory. 11. He ordered the cavalry to follow him at once. 12. They were praying both for themselves and for their friends. 13. Bad men injure themselves. 14. One praises one general, others another. 15. A good man praises, not himself, but others. 16. Caesar heard that the Gauls were exchanging hostages. 17. They surrendered to the Romans. 18. He withdrew into the camp. 19. He had a large number of horsemen to defend him.

C.

Translate:

1. He thanked them for protecting him. 2. He said that he would reach the stream in a short time. 3. Orgetorix committed suicide. 4. Evil men are injurious to¹ themselves. 5. They surrendered all their possessions.

11. ADJECTIVES

[GRAMMAR 845-854; 856-858]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Explain the italicized words:*

1. Deus *fortēs* adjuvat. 2. Caesar *suōs* laudāvit. 3. *Nostrī* hostibus fortiōrēs erant. 4. *Vērūm* dixit. 5. Militēs in castra *tūtī* pervēnērunt. 6. Impedimenta in *summō* colle collocāvit eisque praesidiō legiōnēs nūper cōscriptās reliquit. 7. Columbus *prīmus* ad Americam pervēnit. 8. Multae *et* magnae urbēs in Americā sunt. 9. Hic mōns *altior* est quam ille. 10. Flūmen *lātius* est. 11. Mariā est *ūna omnium sānctōrum sānctissima*. 12. Caesar erat *omnium Rōmānōrum fortissimus* atque audācissimus. 13. *Maximā* virtūte eīs resistēbant.

¹ Express *are injurious to* by a verb.

B.

Translate:

1. Nothing is difficult to the brave. 2. Who entered the camp first? 3. There were two legions on top of the hill. 4. He was very brave. 5. The time was rather short. 6. The river was somewhat wide. 7. He was the bravest of all the soldiers. 8. Labienus was more daring than other lieutenants. 9. The province was in Farther Gaul. 10. They returned to us unharmed. 11. Caesar was bolder than Pompey.

C.

Translate:

1. Wasn't Caesar extremely daring? 2. Who was the first to reach America? 3. They returned safe and sound. 4. The valiant do not always win.

12. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

[GRAMMAR 864-872; 876-884]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Fortiter *agendō* adversa superāmus. 2. *Loquendī* causā mēcum iit. 3. Ad *explōrandum* missī sunt. 4. *Ōrandō* sē dedit. 5. Proeliū *committendī* cupidissimī nostrī erant. 6. Castrīs *pōnendīs* hic locus idōneus est. 7. Ad amīcitiās *comparandās* virtūs ūtilissima est. 8. Ponte *faciendō* exercitum trādūxit. 9. Pācis *petendae* causā vēnērunt. 10. Ad pācem *petendam* vēnērunt. 11. Equitēs ad hostēs *sequendōs* mīsīt. 12. Suī *conservandī* causā ē oppidō alterā portā fugērunt. 13. Aliī *adjuvandī* sunt. 14. Chrīstus dixit omnēs hominēs nōbīs *diligendōs* esse. 15. Lēgātus rogāvit num classis *expectanda* esset. 16. Aut *vincendum* aut *moriendum* est. 17. Novō cōsiliō *utendum* fuit. 18. Dixit usque ad mortem *resistendum* esse. 19. Grātiā Deī nōbīs *utendum* est. 20. Hostibus ab eīs *resistendum* erat. 21. Ro-

gāvit num *nāvibus ā sē nocendum* esset. 22. Bellum *gerendum* suscēpit. 23. Urbs mīlitibus *incendenda* trāditā est.

B.

Translate:

1. The Germans were eager for fighting. 2. They were sent to reconnoiter. 3. He was sharp in talking. 4. They were eager for joining battle. 5. This hill is suitable for drawing up the battle line. 6. By making a wall, he was able to fortify the hill. 7. They came to seek peace. 8. Everything was ready for setting out. 9. A hill is suitable for pitching camp. 10. They fled for the sake of saving themselves. 11. We should all praise God. 12. We must resist all enemies. 13. We should preserve peace. 14. This plan is to be employed. 15. We ought to use this method. 16. He should not have killed the hostages. 17. Everything had to be done at one time. 18. They must arrive within three days. 19. Labienus had to be put in command of the fleet. 20. Caesar determined that the fleet should be waited for. 21. Caesar said that they should use that method. 22. The Romans thought that the Gauls should be pacified.

C.

Translate:

1. We must make use of a new and better plan. 2. In planning he was daring; in action, swift and fearless. 3. Hills are well adapted for encampment. 4. They came to arrange for peace. 5. The soldiers were prepared for departure.

13. INFINITIVES

[GRAMMAR 885-902]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. *Laudāre* Deum est *orāre*. 2. Bonum est aliōs *adjuvāre*. 3. *Pugnāre* parātī sumus. 4. Oportet nōs Deum *laudāre*. 5. Opor-

tuit *ire*. 6. Ōrandō fortiterque agendō adversa *superāre* possumus. 7. Gallī *sē dēfendere* nōn potuērunt. 8. Aliōs *adjuvāre* dēbēmus. 9. Militēs *fortissimī* esse dēbent. 10. *Pontem fierī* jussit. 11. *Eōs sē* in castra *recipere* jussit. 12. Christiānī inter *sē diligere* jussī sunt. 13. Militēs proelium *committere* voluērunt. 14. *Tē* mihi *amicum* esse volō. 15. Volō nē *fugiās*. 16. Certior factus est omnēs *Gallōs* in armīs *esse*. 17. Dīxit *sē* paucīs diēbus *perven-tūrum* *esse*. 18. Sciō Caesarem Galliam *pācāvisse*. 19. Putō *tē virum optimum* *esse*. 20. Sciō ipsam Rōmam ā Gallīs *incēnsam* *esse*. 21. Arbitror nostram *civitātem* ā multis *laudārī*. 22. Dīxērunt *eōs sē dēdere dēbēre*. 23. Orgetorīx *rēgnum petere* dicēbātur. 24. Rēx Germānōrum ā Rōmānīs *occīsus* *esse* putātur.

B.

Translate:

1. It is very good to pray always. 2. It behooves us to love God. 3. Are you always ready to fight for liberty? 4. Do you think that the Gauls fought bravely? 5. He ordered the cavalry to follow the enemy. 6. He ordered the camp to be fortified at once. 7. It is good to love our friends. 8. It behooved the Gauls to unite. 9. We wish all our friends to be brave and good. 10. We ought to seek truth. 11. He said he would come in a short time. 12. He ordered them to surrender at once. 13. Caesar was thought to be eager for power and glory. 14. The Senate was informed that Gaul had been pacified by Caesar.

C.

Translate:

1. We ought to fight in defense of freedom. 2. Praying is not difficult. 3. The Gauls should have united at once in defense of their common welfare and freedom. 4. The assistance of others is a duty for us all.¹ 5. I think you are a very fine person.

¹ Recast this entire sentence.

14. PARTICIPLES

[GRAMMAR 885-887; 907-914]

A.

1. *Translate;*2. *Parse the italicized words:*

1. Urbem *captam* incendērunt. 2. Fortissimē *pugnāns* interfectus est. 3. *Hīs dictīs*, profectus est. 4. Caesare *duce*, Rōmānī Gallōs pācāvērunt. 5. Equitēs hostēs *fugientēs* secūtī sunt. 6. Prīmā lūce *profectī*, hōrā quartā in oppidum pervēnērunt. 7. *Initā* hieme, legiōnēs in hiberna dēdūxit. 8. Hostēs flūmen trānsīre *cōnantēs* vī prohibuit. 9. Haec *locūtus*, mortuus est.

B.

Translate:

1. This war having been finished, Caesar thought Gaul was pacified. 2. Caesar being leader, the Romans conquered the Gauls. 3. A short time being left, he withdrew into the camp. 4. Bravely fighting, he was killed by a dart. 5. They burned the captured towns. 6. This was a great sorrow to the conquered Gauls. 7. They killed the king as he resisted. 8. While advancing they were seen by a slave. 9. Having captured the bridge, he led his troops across the river. 10. Having said this, he at once ordered them to make an attack. 11. The Gauls were not able easily to capture fortified places.

C.

Translate:

1. On learning of this affair, Caesar at once set out for Gaul. 2. At the conclusion of the war with the Helvetians, the leading men of all Gaul came to Caesar. 3. After exhorting his men, he at once ordered an assault on the town. 4. On leaving the camp, they were attacked by the Gauls. 5. As the Gauls fled, the cavalry pursued them. 6. The Romans, as they came out of the forest, caught sight of the enemy. 7. At the outbreak of the war, Caesar was in Italy.

15. PREPOSITIONS

A.

Translate:

1. In castrīs est. 2. In castra hōrā tertiā pervēnit. 3. In silvās fūgērunt. 4. In ponte erat. 5. In eōs fortissimum impetum fēcērunt. 6. In bellō plūrimī occīduntur. 7. In Caesare erat summa virtūs. 8. In ūnum locum impedīmenta contulit. 9. Ex hōc periculō nōs ēripiat Deus! 10. Ex castrīs profectus est. 11. Ā flūmine longē aberat. 12. Ab eō interfectus est. 13. Ē timōre sē recēpit. 14. Dē monte vēnit. 15. Dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exire parābant. 16. Dē illā victoriā certior factus est. 17. Quā dē causā aliōs virtūte superābant. 18. Ad flūmen pervēnērunt. 19. Ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. 20. Ad omnia parātī sumus. 21. Ille locus ad castra pōnenda idōneus est. 22. Ad noctem pugnāvērunt. 23. Ante castra aciem instrūxit. 24. Ante noctem in castra pervēnit. 25. Apud milītēs ōrātiōnem habuit. 26. Maximam auctōritātem apud Gallōs habuit. 27. Mēcum venit. 28. Cum virtūte pugnāvit. 29. Paucī dē nostrīs vulnera accēpērunt. 30. Inter collem et flūmen erant silvae magnae. 31. Iter per prōvinciam nūlli dabō. 32. Dē hāc rē per nuntiōs certior factus est. 33. Cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum profectus est. 34. Hostēs post sē reliquit. 35. Post id proelium hostēs sē in silvās recēpērunt. 36. Exercitum praeter hostium castra dūxit. 37. Praeter lēgem Deī hoc factum est. 38. Praeter Deum nēminem timet. 39. Prō portīs custōdēs collocāvit. 40. Prō mē ōrā. 41. Prō libertāte pugnābimus. 42. Propter hās injūriās bellum suscepērunt. 43. Sine spē pignant. 44. Sine ūllā timōre pugnāte. 45. Sub monte aciem instrūxit. 46. Sub noctem ad flūmen pervēnit. 47. Sub montem prōgressī sunt. 48. Germānī trāns flūmen incolēbant.

B and C.

Translate:

1. They went away from the river. 2. They came into the camp. 3. He came into favor with Caesar. 4. There was great

courage in Labienus. 5. They collected a numerous force in one place. 6. The sailors were in the river. 7. There was a bridge on the river. 8. They made an attack on them. 9. God save us from this death! 10. They sought safety in flight. 11. The king of the Germans was thought to have been killed by the Romans. 12. He was hurled down from the wall. 13. He learned of this through dispatches. 14. Are you ready for death? 15. For this reason Caesar was feared by the other Romans. 16. The battle line was drawn up in front of the gates. 17. They fought with the highest hope. 18. Between the city and the river there was a very high wall. 19. They marched through vast forests and went across a broad river. 20. Before night the battle was over.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

YEAR [B. C.]	CAESAR'S AGE	
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12.
87	15	Marius appoints Caesar priest of Jupiter.
83	19	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the dictator.
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	22	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene for bravery in battle.
78	24	Sulla dies and Caesar returns to Rome.
76	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study oratory.
74	28	Caesar is elected military tribune and pontifex.
68	34	Caesar is quaestor.
65	37	Caesar is curule aedile.
63	39	Caesar is elected praetor and pontifex maximus.
62	40	Caesar is praetor. Pompey returns from the East.
61	41	Caesar is governor in Farther Spain. A revolt of the Allobroges in Gaul is put down by Quintus Fabius Maximus.
60	42	Crassus, Pompey, and Caesar form the First Triumvirate. Caesar is elected consul.
59	43	Caesar is consul.
58	44	Caesar becomes governor for five years of the Province, Cisalpine Gaul, and Illyricum. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus.
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgians.

56	46	In April, Caesar meets Pompey and Crassus at Luca, renews their agreement and secures an added five-year term as governor. Caesar's campaign against the Veneti.
55	47	Caesar bridges the Rhine and invades Germany. Later he crosses into Britain. At Rome, Cato accuses Caesar of cruelty.
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. The Fourteenth Legion, under Sabinus and Cotta, is annihilated at Aduatuca.
53	49	The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain in the East.
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls under Vercingetorix. Pompey opposes Caesar's interests at Rome. Caesar writes his account of the Gallic war, probably in the winter of 52-51.
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
50	52	Political dissension; Pompey and the Senate oppose Caesar and his followers.
49	53	Caesar crosses the Rubicon and opens the Civil War. He masters Italy.
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is assassinated in Egypt. Caesar puts Cleopatra on the throne of Egypt.
47	55	Caesar, as dictator, reorganizes the government at Rome.
46	56	Caesar opens a campaign against the Pompeians in Africa. He completely defeats them at Thapsus. Vercingetorix is executed at Rome.
45	57	Caesar subdues the Pompeian party in Spain. He thus becomes master of the Roman Empire.
44	58	Caesar is made dictator for life. He is assassinated on March 15.

RECOGNITION REVIEW OF WORDS TO REMEMBER

THE HELVETIAN DRIVE TO THE WEST

Give the meanings only of:

1. Belgae	29. Allobrogēs
2. lingua	30. rīpa
3. mercātor	31. inquiunt
4. praetereā	32. flūxīt
5. Germānus	33. Allobrogibus
6. Rhēnus	34. concēdō
7. mercātōribus	35. spatium
8. quā dē causā	36. intereā
9. Helvētius	37. perdūcō
10. quoque	38. castellum
11. Orgetorīx	39. concesserant
12. cupiditās	40. mōs
13. conjūrātiō	41. sī
14. Jūra	42. mūnītiō
15. Sēquanus	43. concessum est
16. Rhodanus	44. perdūxērunt
17. profectiō	45. mōre
18. Orgetorīge	46. perductī erant
19. lēgātiō	47. mūnītiōnibus
20. cupiditātem	48. Titus Labiēnus
21. Haedusus	49. circum
22. conjūrātiōnis	50. hiemō
23. omnīnō	51. quā
24. profectiōnem	52. Alpēs
25. lēgatiōnēs	53. hiemāvit
26. domō	54. Alpibus
27. multō	55. inde
28. fluō	56. extrā

57. jam	92. tandem
58. hiemātī sunt	93. successērunt
59. paene	94. dēfessus
60. cōspectus	95. circiter
61. liberi	96. claudō
62. servitūs	97. latus
63. explōrātōr	98. circumveniō
64. quārtus	99. clausit
65. vērō	100. clausum est
66. servitūtem	101. lateribus
67. vigilia	102. anceps
68. nōndum	103. objiciō
69. explōrātōribus	104. conjiciō
70. amplius	105. supersum
71. āvertō	106. ancipitī
72. fugitīvus	107. conjēcit
73. commūtō	108. superest
74. āverterant	109. objēcērunt
75. convertō	110. trīdium
76. ā novissimō agmine	111. objecta sunt
77. āversus est	112. superfuit
78. īnsequor	113. conjectum est
79. commūtāvērunt	114. dēditīō
80. convertērunt	115. prōjiciō
81. commūtātae erant	116. eō
82. conversa est	117. dēditiōnem
83. īnsecūtus est	118. poscō
84. triplex	119. prōjēcit
85. veterānus	120. prōjectī erant
86. jugum	121. poposcērunt
87. Gallia Citerior	122. perterreō
88. triplici	123. perfuga
89. sarcina	124. perterruit
90. succēdō	125. perterritae sunt
91. Galliae Citeriōris	

REVOLT ALONG THE SEACOAST

Give the meanings only of:

1. expellō	34. primum
2. hiems	35. aedificāvit
3. nātiō	36. cōnfisus est
4. regiō	37. aedificātum est
5. expulērunt	38. adjungō
6. subitus	39. arcessō
7. Pūblius Crassus	40. difficultās
8. expulsus est	41. adjūnxit
9. hieme	42. arcessivērunt
10. nātiōnibus	43. adjūctī erant
11. regiōnēs	44. suprā
12. ōceanus	45. condiō
13. praefectus	46. arcessitus est
14. complūrēs	47. ōdī
15. Venetī	48. condiōnēs
16. amplus	49. officium
17. ōra maritima	50. Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus
18. complūribus	51. Decimus Brūtus
19. nāvis	52. celeritās
20. Britannia	53. tempestās
21. nāvigō	54. altitūdō
22. nāvium	55. rēs nova
23. cōnsuēvī	56. celeritāte
24. nāvigāvērunt	57. tempestātem
25. ūsus	58. altitūdinēs
26. initium	59. adjēcērunt
27. cōnsuētae sunt	60. saeviō
28. permaneō	61. vadum
29. sententia	62. adjecta sunt
30. aedificō	63. cōnsistō
31. mare	64. saevivērunt
32. cōnfidō	65. frūstrā
33. permānsit	66. cōstitērunt

67. genus	84. opportunus
68. ornatus	85. sol
69. adversus	86. occasus
70. genere	87. aetas
71. vel	88. sole
72. singuli	89. amitto
73. constat	90. amiserunt
74. pugna	91. aetatis
75. certamen	92. amissa est
76. constitit	93. idem
77. paulo	94. licet
78. lateo	95. accessit
79. certaminis	96. manus
80. unde	97. licuit
81. propinquus	98. distribuērunt
82. latuit	99. accedo
83. subito	100. distributi erant

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Give the meanings only of:

1. ob	16. praemissi sunt
2. aestas	17. nactus
3. etsi	18. litus
4. insula	19. minimē
5. aestate	20. ancora
6. incognitus	21. at
7. notus	22. litora
8. magnitudo	23. subsequor
9. multitudo	24. desilio
10. praemitto	25. studium
11. magnitudinis	26. decimus
12. domum	27. subsecuti sunt
13. multitudine	28. aquila
14. praemisit	29. desiluērunt
15. una	30. universi

31. subsidium	46. liberāvērunt
32. cursus	47. aedificium
33. dēferō	48. neglegō
34. trānsportō	49. liberātus est
35. colloquor	50. incolumēs
36. rŭrsus	51. adior
37. dētulit	52. simul atque
38. trānsportāvērunt	53. accidit
39. dēlātī sunt	54. prōdŭcō
40. collocūtī erant	55. adortī sunt
41. trānsportātus est	56. prōdŭxit
42. discēdō	57. refēcīt
43. līberō	58. clam
44. discessit	59. prōductus est
45. incolumis	

CLASSIFIED WORD LIST¹

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

(LIKE *TERRA, AE*)

<i>amīcitia, ae</i>	<i>friendship</i>
<i>*causa, ae</i>	<i>{ cause</i> <i>{ reason</i>
<i>cōpia, ae</i>	<i>{ supply</i> <i>{ abundance</i>
<i>fortūna, ae</i>	<i>fortune</i>
<i>fossa, ae</i>	<i>ditch</i>
<i>*fuga, ae</i>	<i>flight</i>
<i>Gallia, ae</i>	<i>Gaul</i>
<i>glōria, ae</i>	<i>{ fame</i> <i>{ glory</i>
<i>grātia, ae</i>	<i>{ favor</i> <i>{ influence</i> <i>{ grace (in Christian Latin)</i>
<i>*hōra, ae</i>	<i>hour</i>
<i>injūria, ae</i>	<i>{ injustice</i> <i>{ wrong</i>
<i>inopia, ae</i>	<i>{ scarcity</i> <i>{ want</i>
<i>Italia, ae</i>	<i>Italy</i>
<i>Mariā, ae</i>	<i>Mary</i>
<i>memoria, ae</i>	<i>memory</i>
<i>nātūra, ae</i>	<i>nature</i>
<i>nauta, ae</i>	<i>sailor</i>
<i>porta, ae</i>	<i>gate</i>

¹ Words marked with an asterisk are second-year words; all others belong to the required vocabulary of the first six units of FIRST YEAR LATIN.

<i>prōvincia</i> , ae	<i>province</i>
<i>Rōma</i> , ae	<i>Rome</i>
<i>silva</i> , ae	<i>forest</i>
<i>terra</i> , ae	{ <i>earth</i> <i>land</i>
<i>via</i> , ae	{ <i>road</i> <i>way</i>
<i>victōria</i> , ae	<i>victory</i>
<i>vīta</i> , ae	<i>life</i>

PLURAL NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

(LIKE *TERRAE*, *TERRĀRUM*)

* <i>angustiae</i> , <i>angustiārum</i>	{ <i>defile</i> <i>narrow place</i> <i>difficulties</i>
<i>cōpiae</i> , <i>cōpiārum</i> , <i>f.</i>	{ <i>troops</i> <i>forces</i> (a military term)
<i>grātiae</i> , <i>grātiārum</i>	<i>thanks</i>
<i>litterae</i> , <i>litterārum</i>	{ <i>letter</i> (i. e., <i>an epistle</i>) <i>dispatch</i>

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

(LIKE *SERVUS*, *ī*)

<i>ager</i> , <i>agrī</i>	<i>field</i>
<i>amicus</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>friend</i>
* <i>annus</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>year</i>
<i>Christiānus</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>Christian</i>
<i>Christus</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>Christ</i>
<i>Deus</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>God</i>

dominus, ī	{ master Lord
filius, ī	son
Gallus, ī	a Gaul
gladius, ī	sword
lēgātus, ī	{ envoy lieutenant
locus, ī (<i>pl., loca, locōrum</i>)	place
mundus, ī	world
mūrus, ī	wall
numerus, ī	number
nuntius, ī	{ messenger message
populus, ī	{ people nation
puer, puerī	boy
Rōmānus, ī	a Roman
servus, ī	{ slave servant
*socius, ī	{ companion ally
tribūnus, ī	tribune
*ventus, ī	wind
vir, virī	man

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

(LIKE *BELLUM, ī*)

auxilium, ī	{ help aid
bellum, ī	war
caelum, ī	{ sky heaven

concilium, ī	<i>council</i>
cōnsilium, ī	<i>{ plan</i>
	<i>{ counsel</i>
frūmentum, ī	<i>grain (pl., crops)</i>
imperium, ī	<i>{ command</i>
	<i>{ power</i>
	<i>{ empire</i>
oppidum, ī	<i>town</i>
*peccātum, ī	<i>{ mistake</i>
	<i>{ sin (in Christian Latin)</i>
perīculum, ī	<i>danger</i>
*pīlum, ī	<i>javelin</i>
praemium, ī	<i>reward</i>
*praesidium, ī	<i>{ garrison</i>
	<i>{ protection</i>
proclium, ī	<i>battle</i>
rēgnum, ī	<i>{ kingdom</i>
	<i>{ royal power</i>
signum, ī	<i>{ standard</i>
	<i>{ signal</i>
	<i>{ sign</i>
tēlum, ī	<i>dart</i>
vallum, ī	<i>{ wall</i>
	<i>{ rampart</i>

PLURAL NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

(LIKE *BELLA, BELLŌRUM*)

arma, armōrum	<i>arms</i>
auxilia, auxiliōrum	<i>reinforcements</i>
castra, castrōrum	<i>camp</i>
hīberna, hibernōrum	<i>winter quarters</i>

impedimenta, impedimentorum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{baggage} \\ \text{baggage train} \end{array} \right.$

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *LĒX*, *LĒGIS*)

*auctōritās, auctōritātis	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{authority} \\ \text{influence} \end{array} \right.$
Caesar, Caesaris	Caesar
*cāritās, cāritātis	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{charity} \\ \text{love} \end{array} \right.$
centuriō, centuriōnis	centurion
cīvitās, cīvitātis	state
clāmor, clāmōris	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{shouting} \\ \text{shout} \end{array} \right.$
*cōsul, cōsulis, <i>m.</i>	consul
*crux, crucis	cross
custōs, custōdis	guard
*dolor, dolōris	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{pain} \\ \text{sorrow} \end{array} \right.$
dux, ducis	leader
eques, equitis	horseman (pl., cavalry)
frāter, frātris (frātrum)	brother
homō, hominis	man
imperātor, imperātōris	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{commander in chief} \\ \text{general} \end{array} \right.$
labor, labōris	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{effort} \\ \text{toil} \end{array} \right.$
legiō, legiōnis, <i>f.</i>	legion
lĕx, lĕgis	law
*libertās, libertātis	liberty
lūx, lūcis	light

māter, mātris (mātrum)	<i>mother</i>
mīles, mīlitis	<i>soldier</i>
nox, noctis	<i>night</i>
obses, obsidis, c.	<i>hostage</i>
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis	<i>{ speech</i> <i>{ prayer</i>
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.	<i>rank (of soldiers)</i>
pater, patris (patrum)	<i>father</i>
pāx, pācis	<i>peace</i>
*pes, pedis, m.	<i>foot (of an animal, mountain, etc.; or a unit of measure)</i>
prīnceps, prīncipis	<i>{ chief</i> <i>{ leading man</i>
*ratiō, ratiōnis	<i>{ method</i> <i>{ reason</i> <i>{ plan</i> <i>{ way</i>
rēx, rēgis	<i>king</i>
salūs, salūtis	<i>{ safety</i> <i>{ welfare</i> <i>{ salvation</i>
*timor, timōris	<i>fear</i>
vēritās, vēritātis	<i>truth</i>
virtūs, virtūtis	<i>{ courage</i> <i>{ virtue</i>
vōx, vōcis	<i>{ voice</i> <i>{ cry</i>

PLURAL NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *LĒGĒS*, *LĒGUM*)

*mājōrēs, mājōrum, m.	<i>{ ancestors</i> <i>{ forefathers</i>

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *PARS, PARTIS*)

<i>caedēs, caedis</i>	<i>slaughter</i>
* <i>classis, classis</i>	<i>fleet</i>
* <i>cohors, cohortis</i>	<i>cohort</i> (a division of a legion containing 600 men)
<i>collis, collis, m.</i>	<i>hill</i>
<i>gēns, gentis</i>	<i>tribe</i>
<i>hostis, hostis</i>	<i>enemy</i> (in war)
<i>mōns, montis, m.</i>	<i>mountain</i>
<i>mors, mortis</i>	<i>death</i>
<i>pars, partis</i>	<i>part</i>
<i>pōns, pontis, m.</i>	<i>bridge</i>
<i>urbs, urbis</i>	<i>city</i>

PLURAL NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *FĪNĒS, FĪNIUM*)

<i>fīnēs, fīnium, m.</i>	<i>territory</i>
* <i>vīrēs, vīrium, f.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{strength} \\ \textit{force} \end{array} \right.$

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *FLŪMEN, FLŪMINIS*)

<i>agmen, agminis</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{column} \text{ (of soldiers)} \\ \textit{army} \text{ (on the march)} \end{array} \right.$
<i>corpus, corporis, n.</i>	<i>body</i>
<i>flūmen, flūminis</i>	<i>river</i>

iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{journey} \\ \text{march} \\ \text{route} \end{array} \right.$
nōmen, nōminis	<i>name</i>
*tempus, temporis, <i>n.</i>	<i>time</i>
vulnus, vulneris, <i>n.</i>	<i>wound</i>

NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

(LIKE *PORTUS, ŪS*)

adventus, ūs	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{arrival} \\ \text{coming} \end{array} \right.$
equitātus, ūs	<i>cavalry</i>
exercitus, ūs	<i>army</i>
impetus, ūs	<i>attack</i>
metus, ūs	<i>fear</i>
*passus, ūs	<i>a pace</i> (a measure = 5 Roman feet)
portus, ūs	<i>harbor</i>
senātus, ūs	<i>senate</i>
spīritus, ūs	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{breath} \\ \text{spirit} \end{array} \right.$

NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

(LIKE *RĒS, REĪ*)

aciēs, aciēī	<i>battle line</i>
*diēs, diēī, <i>m. (f.)</i>	<i>day</i>
fidēs, fideī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{faith} \\ \text{reliability} \\ \text{faithfulness} \end{array} \right.$

rēs, rei	{ thing
	{ affair
spēs, speī	hope

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(LIKE *MAGNUS, A, UM*)

aliēnus, a, um	{ unfavorable
	{ another's
	{ foreign
altus, a, um	{ high
	{ deep
angustus, a, um	narrow
*barbarus, a, um	{ barbarian
	{ foreign
bonus, a, um	good
*certus, a, um	{ certain
	{ fixed
Chrīstiānus, a, um	Christian
cupidus, a, um ; <i>w. gen.</i>	{ eager
	{ desirous
*dubius, a, um	{ doubtful
	{ uncertain
*extrēmus, a, um	{ outermost
	{ farthest
	{ last
finitimus, a, um ; <i>w. dat.</i>	{ neighboring
	{ next
*firmus, a, um	{ strong
	{ vigorous
*idōneus, a, um ; <i>w. dat. or ad w. acc.</i>	{ suitable
	{ proper
	{ convenient

lātus, a, um	<i>wide</i>
longus, a, um	<i>long</i>
magnus, a, um	<i>{ great</i> <i>{ large</i>
malus, a, um	<i>bad</i>
*maximus, a, um	<i>greatest</i>
*medius, a, um	<i>middle</i>
*meus, a, um	<i>{ my</i> <i>{ mine</i>
*minimus, a, um	<i>smallest</i>
multus, a, um	<i>much (pl., many)</i>
novus, a, um	<i>new</i>
*optimus, a, um	<i>best</i>
*parātus, a, um ; w. pres. infin. or ad w. acc.	<i>prepared (for)</i>
*parvus, a, um	<i>small</i>
*paucī, ae, a	<i>few</i>
*pessimus, a, um	<i>worst</i>
plēnus, a, um ; w. gen. or abl.	<i>full</i>
*plūrimus, a, um	<i>{ very many</i> <i>{ the greatest number</i> <i>{ (pl., the most)</i>
*prīmus, a, um	<i>first</i>
*proximus, a, um ; w. dat.	<i>{ nearest</i> <i>{ next</i>
*quantus, a, um	<i>{ how much</i> <i>{ how large</i>
reliquus, a, um	<i>{ remaining</i> <i>{ the rest of</i>
Rōmānus, a, um	<i>Roman</i>
sānctus, a, um	<i>{ holy</i> <i>{ saint</i>
*secundus, a, um	<i>second</i>
*summus, a, um	<i>highest</i>

*suus, a, um	{ his (own) her (own) its (own) their (own)
*tantus, a, um	so great
*tertius, a, um	third
tūtus, a, um	safe
*tuus, a, um	{ your (of one person) yours your own
*ultimus, a, um	{ farthest last

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(LIKE *MISER, MISERA, MISERUM*)

liber, libera, liberum	free
miser, misera, miserum	wretched

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(LIKE *INTEGER, INTEGRA, INTEGRUM*)

integer, integra, integrum	{ fresh uninjured whole
*noster, nostra, nostrum	{ our ours our own
*vester, vestra, vestrum	{ your (of more than one yours person) your own

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(LIKE *ŪNUS, A, UM* IN THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE SINGULAR)

* <i>alius, alia, aliud</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} other \\ another \end{array} \right.$
* <i>alter, altera, alterum</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} second \\ the\ other \\ the\ one \end{array} \right\}$ (of two)
* <i>nūllus, a, um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} no \\ none \end{array} \right.$
* <i>sōlus, a, um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} alone \\ only\ (as\ an\ adjective) \end{array} \right.$
* <i>tōtus, a, um</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} whole \\ all\ of \\ the\ whole\ of \end{array} \right.$
* <i>ūllus, a, um</i>	<i>any</i>
* <i>ūnus, a, um</i>	<i>one</i>
* <i>uterque, utraque, utrumque</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} each \\ both \end{array} \right\}$ (of two)

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *GRAVIS, E*)

<i>brevis, e</i>	<i>short</i>
<i>commūnis, e</i>	<i>common</i>
<i>difficilis, e</i>	<i>difficult</i>
<i>facilis, e</i>	<i>easy</i>
<i>fortis, e</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} brave \\ strong \end{array} \right.$
<i>gravis, e</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} heavy \\ severe \\ serious \end{array} \right.$

nōbilis, e	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{noble} \\ \text{renowned} \end{array} \right.$
omnis, e	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{all} \\ \text{every} \end{array} \right.$
similis, c; <i>w. gen. or dat.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like} \\ \text{similar} \end{array} \right.$
*tālis, e	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{such} \\ \text{of such a kind} \end{array} \right.$
ūtilis, e; <i>ad w. acc.</i>	<i>useful (for)</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *ĀCER, ĀCRIS, ĀCRE*)

*ācer, ācris, ācre	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sharp} \\ \text{fierce} \\ \text{eager} \end{array} \right.$
*celer, celeris, celere	<i>swift</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *AUDĀX; gen. AUDĀCIS*)

*audāx (<i>gen. audācis</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{daring} \\ \text{bold} \\ \text{courageous} \end{array} \right.$

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(LIKE *DĪLIGĒNS; gen. DĪLIGENTIS*)

*diligēns (<i>gen. diligentis</i>)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{careful} \\ \text{exact} \end{array} \right.$

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

(LIKE *GRAVIOR, GRAVIUS*)

*māior, māius	greater
*melior, melius	better
*minor, minus	smaller
*pējor, pėjus	worse
*superior, superius	{ higher former
*ulterior, ulterius	farther

IRREGULAR AND MIXED NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

dī, deōrum (<i>abl. and dat. dīs</i>)	gods
Jēsūs, ū (<i>declined: Jēsūs, Jēsū, Jēsū,</i> Jēsum, Jēsū)	Jesus
*mille passūs (<i>pl., mīlia passuum</i>)	a mile
*nēmō, nēminis (<i>nūllius, nūllō, and</i> <i>nūllā usually used in place of nē-</i> <i>minis and nēmine</i>)	no one
*nihil (<i>short form: nīl</i>), <i>n., indecl. noun</i>	nothing
*parum, <i>indecl. noun; w. gen.</i>	{ too little not enough
*plūrēs, plūra	more
*plūs, plūris, <i>n.; w. gen.</i>	more
*quot, <i>indecl. adj.</i>	how many
*satis, <i>indecl. noun; w. gen.</i>	enough
*tot, <i>indecl. adj.</i>	so many
*vīs (<i>gen. vis [rare]; acc. vim; abl. vī</i>)	{ force power violence

ADVERBS

ācriter	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{bitterly} \\ \textit{eagerly} \end{array} \right.$
*adeō	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so} \\ \textit{to such a degree} \end{array} \right.$
*bene	<i>well</i>
celeriter	<i>swiftly</i>
*cūr	<i>why</i>
*diū	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{a long time} \\ \textit{long (of time)} \end{array} \right.$
diūtius	<i>longer</i>
etiam	<i>also</i>
*facile	<i>easily</i>
*facilius	<i>more easily</i>
ferē	<i>almost</i>
fortiter	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{bravely} \\ \textit{strongly} \end{array} \right.$
ibi	<i>there</i>
interim	<i>meanwhile</i>
*ita	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so} \\ \textit{in such a manner} \\ \textit{thus} \end{array} \right.$
longē	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{far} \\ \textit{by far} \end{array} \right.$
*magis	<i>more</i>
*magnōpere	<i>greatly</i>
*male	<i>badly</i>
*melius	<i>better</i>
*minus	<i>less</i>
*multum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{much} \\ \textit{greatly} \end{array} \right.$
*nihil	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{not} \\ \textit{not at all} \end{array} \right.$
nōn	<i>not</i>

nunc	<i>now</i>
*nūper	<i>lately</i>
*parum	<i>{ little</i> <i>{ too little</i>
*pējus	<i>worse</i>
*plūs	<i>more</i>
postea	<i>afterwards</i>
*prope	<i>near</i>
*propius	<i>nearer</i>
*quam	<i>than</i>
*quō	<i>{ whither</i> <i>{ where (of motion)</i>
saepe	<i>often</i>
*satis	<i>sufficiently</i>
semper	<i>always</i>
*sīc	<i>{ so</i> <i>{ in such a manner</i>
statim	<i>{ at once</i> <i>{ immediately</i>
*tam	<i>{ so</i> <i>{ to such a degree</i>
tamen	<i>nevertheless</i>
tum	<i>{ then</i> <i>{ at that time</i>
*tūtō	<i>safely</i>
*ubi	<i>where</i>
undique	<i>{ from all sides</i> <i>{ on all sides</i>
usque	<i>{ all the way (to)</i> <i>{ even (to)</i> <i>{ up (to)</i>
vehementer	<i>{ greatly</i> <i>{ violently</i>

PRONOUNS

*ego, meī	<i>I</i>
*hic, hacc, hoc	<i>this</i>
*ille, illa, illud	<i>{ that</i> <i>{ he, she, it, they, etc.</i>
*ipse, ipsa, ipsum	<i>self</i>
*is, ea, id	<i>{ that</i> <i>{ he, she, it, they, etc.</i>
nōs, nostrī	<i>we</i>
*quī, quac, quod	<i>{ who</i> <i>{ what</i> <i>{ which</i> <i>{ that</i>
*quis, quid	<i>{ who</i> <i>{ what</i>
*suī	<i>{ himself (him)</i> <i>{ herself (her)</i> <i>{ itself (it)</i> <i>{ themselves (them)</i>
*tū, tuī	<i>you (sing.)</i>
vōs, vestrī	<i>you (pl.)</i>

NUMERALS

*centum	<i>one hundred</i>
*decem	<i>ten</i>
*duo, duac, duo	<i>two</i>
*mille (<i>indecl. adj. in sing.; mīlia,</i> <i>mīlium, neuter noun in pl.</i>)	<i>thousand</i>
*quattuor	<i>four</i>
*trēs, tria	<i>three</i>

PREPOSITIONS

*ab (<i>ā</i>), <i>w. abl.</i>	{ <i>by</i> (agent) <i>away from</i> <i>from</i>
ad , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>to</i> <i>until</i> <i>at</i> <i>for</i> (with adjectives)
*ante , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>before</i> (of time or place) <i>in front of</i>
*apud , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>among</i> <i>in the presence of</i>
*contrā , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>against</i> <i>opposite</i>
cum , <i>w. abl.</i>	{ <i>with</i>
*dē , <i>w. abl.</i>	{ <i>down from</i> <i>out of</i> <i>from</i> <i>concerning</i> <i>about</i>
*ex (<i>ē</i>), <i>w. abl.</i>	{ <i>out of</i> <i>from</i>
in , <i>w. abl.</i>	{ <i>in</i> <i>on</i>
in , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>in</i> <i>into</i> <i>against</i> <i>upon</i> <i>onto</i> <i>on</i>
inter , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>between</i> <i>among</i>
per , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>through</i>
post , <i>w. acc.</i>	{ <i>after</i> <i>behind</i>

* <i>praeter, w. acc.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{except} \\ \text{past} \\ \text{contrary to} \end{array} \right.$
<i>prō, w. abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in front of (before)} \\ \text{on behalf of (for)} \end{array} \right.$
<i>propter, w. acc.</i>	<i>on account of</i>
<i>sine, w. abl.</i>	<i>without</i>
* <i>sub, w. abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{under} \\ \text{at the foot of} \end{array} \right.$
* <i>sub, w. acc.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{under} \\ \text{beneath} \\ \text{up to} \\ \text{about} \\ \text{toward} \end{array} \right. \text{ of time}$
<i>trāns, w. acc.</i>	<i>across</i>

OTHER WORDS, IDIOMS, AND PARTICLES

* <i>avē, interjection</i>	<i>hail!</i>
* <i>causā, preceded by gen.</i>	<i>for the sake of</i>
<i>in perpetuum</i>	<i>forever</i>
<i>in primīs</i>	<i>especially (lit., among the first things)</i>
<i>in prīncipiō</i>	<i>in the beginning</i>
<i>in saecula saeculōrum</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{world without end} \\ \text{forever} \end{array} \right.$
* <i>nē</i> ¹	<i>not (with commands, wishes, and hortatory subjunctives)</i>
*- <i>ne (added to emphatic word—generally to the verb—and put first in the sentence)</i>	<i>particle used in asking questions</i>

¹ *Nē* is also a conjunction; see page 584.

*nōne (<i>generally first in its clause</i>)	word used in asking questions when the answer 'yes' is expected
*num (<i>generally first in its clause</i>)	word used in asking questions when the answer 'no' is expected
prīmā lūce	at dawn
*utinam	particle used in wishes
*vī (<i>abl. of vīs</i>)	{ violently by force

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(LIKE LAUDŌ)

adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, <i>1, tr.</i>	{ help aid
administrō, 1, tr.	{ manage attend to
appellō, 1, tr. <i>with two accs.</i>	{ address call (upon) call
appropinquō, 1, intr.; w. dat. or ad <i>w. acc.</i>	{ draw near to approach
collocō, 1, tr.	{ place station
comparō, 1, tr.	{ get ready prepare
*cōnfirmō, 1, tr. <i>with acc. w. infin.</i>	{ encourage strengthen affirm
*conjūrō, 1, intr.	{ conspire form a conspiracy

cōservō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ preserve</i> <i>{ spare</i>
*dēmōnstrō, <i>1, tr.; acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>{ show</i> <i>{ point out</i>
dō, dare, dedī, datus, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>give</i>
*existimō, <i>1, tr.; acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>think</i>
explōrō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ reconnoiter</i> <i>{ find out</i>
expugnō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ storm</i> <i>{ take by storm</i>
exspectō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ wait for</i> <i>{ wait</i>
*imperō, <i>1, tr.; w. dat. of person</i> <i>with ut (nē)</i>	<i>levy (on)</i> <i>{ order</i> <i>{ command</i>
incitō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ incite</i> <i>{ arouse</i>
laudō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>praise</i>
*mandō, <i>1, tr.; w. dat. of person</i> <i>with ut (nē)</i>	<i>{ commit</i> <i>{ entrust</i> <i>command</i>
*negō, <i>1, tr.; acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>{ deny</i> <i>{ say . . . not</i>
*nuntiō, <i>1, tr.; acc. w. infin.</i>	<i>{ announce</i> <i>{ report</i>
occupō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>seize</i>
oppugnō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>{ attack</i> <i>{ assault</i> <i>{ storm</i>
ōrō, <i>1, tr.; ut (nē)</i>	<i>{ beg</i> <i>{ pray</i>
*pācō, <i>1, tr.</i>	<i>pacify</i>
*parō, <i>1, tr.; w. pres. infin.</i>	<i>{ prepare</i> <i>{ get ready</i>

perturbō, 1, tr.	{ confuse disturb
portō, 1, tr.	carry
pugnō, 1, intr.	fight
*putō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.	think
*rogō, 1, tr.; ut (nē)	{ ask request
servō, 1, tr.	{ guard keep
superō, 1, tr.	{ overcome conquer surpass
vastō, 1, tr.	{ lay waste ravage
*vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, 1, tr.; acc. w. pres. infin.	forbid
vocō, 1, tr.	call

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

(LIKE MONEŌ)

*commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, 2, tr.	{ alarm arouse
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, 2, tr.; w. abl.	fill (with)
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, 2, tr.	{ restrain hold in
*dēbeō, 2, tr.; w. pres. infin.	{ ought owe
habeō, 2, tr.	have
*jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, 2, tr.; acc. w. pres. infin.; ut (nē)	{ order command
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 2, intr.	remain

moneō, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; ut (nē)	{ warn advise
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	move
*noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. dat.</i>	{ harm injure
obteneō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ hold occupy
*oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 2, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. pres. infin.</i>	{ it behooves it is necessary
*permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ arouse influence
*persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, 2, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. dat.</i> ; ut (nē)	persuade
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, 2, <i>intr.</i> ; ad <i>w. acc.</i>	{ pertain to stretch to
*prohibeō, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>w. abl. of separation</i>	{ ward off (from) prevent
*respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	answer
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ hold back keep
*studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, <i>intr.</i> ; <i>w. dat. or pres. infin.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i> ; ut (nē)	{ am eager (for) strive (after) am devoted (to)
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	{ sustain withstand
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2, <i>tr.</i>	hold
terreō, 2, <i>tr.</i>	terrify
timeō, timēre, timuī, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>w. pres. infin.</i>	fear (to)
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, 2, <i>tr.</i> ; <i>acc. w. infin.</i>	see

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

(LIKE *MITTŌ*)

*abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, 3, tr. (<i>always with an object in Latin</i>)	{ hide conceal
*addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)	{ lead to induce influence
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, tr.	{ drive do act treat give (<i>w. grātiās</i>)
*animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ attend to notice
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, intr.	{ give way yield
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ learn find out
*cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ bring together collect force
*committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, 3, tr.	{ commit allow
*conjungō, conjungere, conjūnxī, conjunctus, 3, tr.	{ join together unite
*cōnscribō, cōnscribere, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ enroll write
*cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, 3, tr.; w. pres. infin.	{ place set up decide determine
contendō, contendere, contendī, 3, intr.; w. pres. infin.	{ strive contend hasten

*crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, 3, tr. and intr.; w. dat. of person to whom or in whom; acc. w. infin.	{ believe trust entrust
*dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, 3, tr. (always with an object in Latin)	{ give up devote surrender
dēdūcō, dēducere, dēdūxī, dēductus, 3, tr.	{ lead lead away
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, 3, tr.	defend
*dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ say tell
*dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēcetus, 3, tr.	love
dīmīttō, dīmītere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus, 3, tr.	{ send away dismiss
*dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, 3, tr.	{ distribute station
*dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, 3, tr.	{ divide separate
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3, tr.	{ lead guide
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, tr.	{ carry carry on wage (w. bellum)
incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus, 3, tr.	{ set fire to burn
*incolō, incolere, incoluī, 3, tr.	{ inhabit dwell in
*indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)	{ lead in lead on influence
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, 3, tr.	{ draw up equip
*intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēcetus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ understand perceive

*jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{join} \\ \text{unite} \end{array} \right.$
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{send} \\ \text{kill} \end{array} \right.$
occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{show} \\ \text{tell} \end{array} \right.$
*ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, 3, tr.; acc. w. <i>infn.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{drive} \\ \text{repulse} \\ \text{rout} \end{array} \right.$
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{seek} \\ \text{beg} \\ \text{request} \end{array} \right.$
petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{put} \\ \text{place} \\ \text{set} \\ \text{pitch (w. castra)} \end{array} \right.$
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{press} \\ \text{press hard} \end{array} \right.$
premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{seek} \\ \text{ask} \end{array} \right.$
*quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lead back} \\ \text{draw back} \end{array} \right.$
*redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{leave} \\ \text{leave behind} \end{array} \right.$
*relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{send back} \\ \text{return} \\ \text{release} \end{array} \right.$
*remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{beat back} \\ \text{drive back} \end{array} \right.$
*repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{press back} \\ \text{check} \\ \text{restrain} \end{array} \right.$
*reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{remain behind} \\ \text{resist} \\ \text{withstand} \end{array} \right.$
*resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, intr.; w. dat.	

*sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, 3, tr.	{ take assume
*tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, tr.	{ lift up (passive, am elated) take away
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, 3, tr.	hand over
*trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, tr.;	{ lead across
two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.	lead over
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, 3, tr.	conquer
*vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus, 3, intr.	live

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

(LIKE AUDIŌ)

*aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, 4, tr.	{ open uncover expose
audiō, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.	hear
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, 4, intr.	{ come together assemble
*impediō, 4, tr.	{ hinder impede
mūniō, 4, tr.	{ fortify construct (w. viam or viās)
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, 4, intr.; in or ad w. acc.	arrive
*reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.	find (out)
*sciō, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.	know
*sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ feel perceive think
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, intr.	come

-IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION(LIKE *CAPĪŌ*)

*accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{receive} \\ \text{take} \end{array} \right.$
*capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{take} \\ \text{capture} \end{array} \right.$
*cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{accomplish} \\ \text{finish} \\ \text{exhaust} \end{array} \right.$
*cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{observe} \\ \text{perceive} \end{array} \right.$
*cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, 3, tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē)	desire
*dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hurl down} \\ \text{cast down} \end{array} \right.$
*efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, 3, tr.; ut (ut nōn or nē)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bring about} \\ \text{cause} \end{array} \right.$
*ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, 3, tr.; w. dat. of person or thing from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w. abl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{take away} \\ \text{save from} \end{array} \right.$
*faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do} \\ \text{make} \end{array} \right.$
*fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3, intr.	flee
*interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, 3, tr.	kill
*jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, 3, tr.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{throw} \\ \text{hurl} \end{array} \right.$
*perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{view} \\ \text{inspect} \\ \text{perceive} \end{array} \right.$
*praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, 3, tr.; w. dat. of thing of which	put in command of
*recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, 3, tr. with a reflexive pronoun	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{take back} \\ \text{withdraw} \\ \text{recover} \end{array} \right.$

*rejiō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, 3, tr.	{ hurl back drive back repel
*suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, 3, tr.	{ undertake take (upon oneself)

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(LIKE LAUDOR)

*arbitror, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ think consider
*cohortor, 1, tr.; ut (nē)	encourage
*cōnor, 1, tr.; w. pres. infin.	{ try attempt
*hortor, 1, tr.; ut (nē)	{ urge encourage

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

(LIKE MONEOR)

*polliceor, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin. (usually future)	promise
*vereor, 2, tr.; w. pres. infin. or nē (ut)	fear (to)

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

(LIKE MITTOR)

*cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, 3, tr.	{ follow up overtake gain
*loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, tr. and intr.	{ talk speak

*proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{set out} \\ \text{depart} \end{array} \right.$
*revertor, revertī, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{revertī,} \\ \text{reversus sum,} \end{array} \right\}$ 3, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{return} \end{array} \right.$
*sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{follow} \\ \text{pursue} \end{array} \right.$
*ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, <i>intr.; w. abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{use} \\ \text{employ} \\ \text{exercise} \end{array} \right.$

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

(LIKE *AUDIOR*)

*orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rise} \\ \text{arise} \end{array} \right.$
*potior, 4, <i>intr.; w. abl. or gen.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{get possession of} \\ \text{become master of} \end{array} \right.$

DEPONENT -IŌ VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

(LIKE *CAPIOR*)

*aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, 3, <i>tr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{advance to} \\ \text{attack} \end{array} \right.$
*ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{go out} \end{array} \right.$
*moriō, morī, mortuus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{die} \end{array} \right.$
*patior, patī, passus sum, 3, <i>tr.; acc. w. infin.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suffer} \\ \text{allow} \end{array} \right.$
*prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{go forward} \\ \text{advance} \\ \text{proceed} \end{array} \right.$

IRREGULAR VERBS

(EŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS)

*adeō, adīre, adiī(-īvī), aditus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ go to approach visit
*eō, īre, īvī (īī), itum, <i>irreg., intr.</i>	go
*exeō, exire, exiī(-īvī), exitum, <i>irreg., intr.</i>	go out
*ineō, inīre, iniī(-īvī), initus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ go into enter upon
*trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī(-īvī), trānsitus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ go across cross pass

IRREGULAR VERBS

(FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS)

*cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, <i>irreg., tr.</i> with a reflexive pronoun	{ bring together compare betake oneself
*differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ scatter put off differ
*ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ bear bring carry
*īnferō, īnferre, īntulī, illātus, <i>irreg., tr.; w. dat. of person</i>	{ bring (upon) inflict (upon) inspire (in)
*referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, <i>irreg., tr.</i>	{ bring back report refer

IRREGULAR VERBS

(SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS)

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, <i>irreg., intr.; ab</i> (ā) <i>w. abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am away} \\ \text{am distant} \end{array} \right.$
*dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, <i>irreg., intr.;</i> <i>w. dat.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am lacking} \\ \text{am absent} \\ \text{fail} \end{array} \right.$
*possum, posse, potuī, <i>irreg., intr.; w. pres.</i> <i>infin.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am able} \\ \text{can} \end{array} \right.$
*praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, <i>irreg.,</i> <i>intr.; w. dat.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am over} \\ \text{am in command of} \end{array} \right.$
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, <i>irreg., intr.</i>	<i>am</i>

OTHER IRREGULAR VERBS

*coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.</i> ¹	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{began} \\ \text{have begun} \end{array} \right.$
*fiō, fierī, factus sum, <i>intr.; ut (ut nōn)</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am made} \\ \text{am done} \\ \text{become} \\ \text{happen} \end{array} \right.$
*volō, velle, voluī, <i>tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w.</i> <i>infin.; ut (nē)</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{am willing} \\ \text{wish} \end{array} \right.$

VERBAL IDIOMS

*certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, <i>tr.; acc. w. infin.; dē w. abl.</i>	<i>inform (lit., make</i> <i>more certain)</i>
*cōsiliū capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, <i>tr.</i>	<i>make a plan</i>

¹ When *coepī* governs a passive infinitive it is changed to the passive form, *coeptus sum*. It is, however, translated as ACTIVE.

*in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus, 1, tr.	put to flight
*inquit (<i>with direct quotations only; usually placed after the first word or phrase of the quotation</i>)	{ he says he said
inter sē dō, dare, dedī, datus, 1, tr.	exchange
*iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, tr.	{ march make a journey
memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin.	{ keep in memory remember
*miserēre; w. dat. or gen.	have mercy (on)
nactus, a, um (<i>perfect participle of nancīscor</i>)	{ having obtained possession of having met with having found
nōlī, w. pres. infin. } nōlite, w. pres. infin. }	be unwilling
*pedem referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, irreg., tr.	{ retreat fall back
*proelium committō, committere, commīsī, com- missus, 3, tr.	{ join battle begin battle

CONJUNCTIONS

atque (ac)	and
aut	or
aut . . . aut	either . . . or
autem, postp.	however
*cum	{ when since
*cum primum	as soon as
enim, postp.	for
et	and
et . . . et	both . . . and

itaque	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{therefore} \\ \textit{and so} \end{array} \right.$
nam	<i>for</i>
*nē	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{that} \dots \textit{not} \text{ (in negative purpose} \\ \text{clauses and noun clauses after} \\ \text{verbs of 'willing')} \\ \textit{in order that not} \text{ (in negative} \\ \text{purpose clauses)} \end{array} \right.$
neque	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{nor} \\ \textit{and} \dots \textit{not} \end{array} \right.$
neque . . . neque	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
*postquam	<i>after</i>
-que	<i>and</i>
*quia	<i>because</i>
*quō	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{that} \\ \textit{in order that} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in purpose clauses} \\ \text{containing a com-} \\ \text{parative adverb or} \\ \text{adjective} \end{array} \right.$
*quod	<i>because</i>
*quoniam	<i>because</i>
sed	<i>but</i>
sicut	<i>as</i>
*ubi	<i>when</i>
*ut	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{that} \text{ (in noun, purpose, and result} \\ \text{clauses)} \\ \textit{in order that} \text{ (in purpose clauses)} \end{array} \right.$
*ut primum	<i>as soon as</i>

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- ā.** See **ab**; **ā novissimō agmine**, from the rear, in the rear.
- ab** (**ā**), *prep. w. abl.*, by, away from, from; **ab infimō**, from the bottom, at the bottom.
- abdō**, **abdere**, **abdidī**, **abditus**, 3, *tr.*, hide, conceal. (*Always takes an object.*)
- abducō**, **abducere**, **abdūxī**, **abductus**, 3, *tr.*, lead away, draw off, carry off, withdraw.
- abhinc**, *adv.*, ago (Gr. 923).
- abjiciō**, **abjicere**, **abjēcī**, **abjectus**, 3, *tr.*, throw away, throw down, hurl.
- abs**, *form of preposition ab*, used before *tē*.
- absēns** (*gen. absentis*), absent.
- absolvō**, **absolvere**, **absolvī**, **absolūtus**, 3, *tr.*, absolve, free from.
- abstrahō**, **abstrahere**, **abstrāxī**, **abstractus**, 3, *tr.*, draw away, drag away, carry away by force.
- absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *irreg.*, *intr.*; **ab** (**ā**) *w. abl.*, am absent, am away, am distant.
- abundantius**, *comparative adv.*, more abundantly.
- abundō**, 1, *intr.*, abound in.
- ac**, *conj.*, and.
- accēdō**, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum**, 3, *intr.*, come to, approach. is added; **accēdit** (*used impersonally*), there is added.
- accelerō**, 1, *intr.*, hasten.
- accidit**, **accidere**, **accidit**, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat. of person*; **ut** (**ut nōn**), it happens.
- accipiō**, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus**, 3, *tr.*, receive, take, accept.
- Accō**, **Accōnis**, **Acco**, a *Gallic chief*.
- accommodātus**, **a**, **um**; *ad w. acc.*, adapted.
- accurrō**, **accurrere**, **accurrī**, **accur-** sum, 3, *intr.*, run to, run towards, hasten to.
- acer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, sharp, fierce, eager, keen.
- acervus**, **ī**, heap.
- aciēs**, **aciēi**, battle line.
- acquirō**, **acquirere**, **acquisivī**, **acqui-** sītus, 3, *tr.*, seek in addition, gain in addition, win, acquire.
- ācritēr**, *adv.*, bitterly, eagerly.
- ad**, *prep. w. acc.*, to, until, at, for; **ad infimū**, to the bottom, at the bottom; **ad multam noctem**, far into the night; **ad ūnum**, to a man, without exception (*generally with omnēs*).
- addō**, **addere**, **addidī**, **additus**, 3, *tr.*, place on, add.
- adducō**, **adducere**, **addūxī**, **adductus**, 3, *tr.*; **ut** (**nē**), lead to, induce, influence, lead on.
- adeō**, *adv.*, so, to such a degree.
- adeō**, **adire**, **adii(-ivī)**, **aditus**, *irreg.*, *tr.*, go to, approach, visit, attack.
- adhaereō**, **adhaerēre**, **adhaesi**, **adhae-** sum, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat. or ad w. acc.*, cling to, stick to.
- adhibeō**, 2, *tr.*, bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use.
- adhortor**, 1, *tr.*; **ut** (**nē**), urge, encourage.
- adhūc**, *adv.*, as yet.
- adipiscor**, **adipisci**, **adeptus** sum, 3, *tr.*, attain to, gain.
- aditus**, **ūs**, approach, access.
- adjiciō**, **adjicere**, **adjēcī**, **adjectus**, 3, *tr.*, throw to, throw up, hurl.
- adjungō**, **adjungere**, **adjūnxī**, **adjūnc-** tus, 3, *tr.*, join to, add, unite.
- adjutor**, **adjūtōris**, helper, assistant.
- adjuvō**, **adjuvāre**, **adjūvī**, **adjūtus**, 1, *tr.*, help, aid.
- administrō**, 1, *tr.*, manage, attend to.

- admiror, 1, *tr.*, wonder at, am surprised at, admire.
- amittō, *admittere*, admisi, admissus, 3, *tr.*, admit, commit, incur.
- admodum, *adv.*, very, very much; *w. numerals*, as many as.
- admonēō, 2, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, remind, warn.
- adorior, adoriri, adortus sum, 4, *tr.*, rise against, assail, attack.
- adorō, 1, *tr.*, adore.
- adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus, *irreg.*, *intr.*, am present, am near.
- Aduatuci, Aduatucorum, the Aduatuci, a *Gallic* tribe.
- adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, young man, youth.
- adventus, ūs, arrival, coming.
- adversus, *prep. w. acc.*, against.
- adversus, a, um; *w. dat.*, opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful; adversō flumine, upstream; rēs (rērum) adversae (adversarum), adversity.
- advolo, 1, *intr.*, fly to, rush at.
- aedificium, i, building.
- aedificō, 1, *tr.*, build, construct.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, ill, sick.
- aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely.
- aequus, a, um, even, level, just, right; aequo animo, with composure.
- aestās, aestātis, summer.
- aestimō, 1, *tr.*, value, estimate, regard.
- aestus, ūs, swelling, tide.
- aetās, aetātis, age.
- aeternus, a, um, eternal, everlasting.
- afferō, afferre, attuli, allātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*, bring to, present, report.
- afficiō, afficere, affēci, affectus, 3, *tr.*, do to, treat, affect.
- Africa, ae, Africa.
- Agedincum, i, Agedincum, a town of the *Senones*.
- ager, agrī, field.
- agger, aggeris, earth, embankment, mound, rampart.
- aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum, 3, *tr.*, advance to, attack.
- agmen, agminis, column (*of soldiers*), army (*on the march*); ā novissimō agmine, from the rear, in the rear.
- Agnēs, Agnētis, Agnes.
- agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, 3, *tr.*, drive, do, act, treat; grātiās agere, to give thanks, to thank.
- ait, he says, he said.
- alacer, alacris, alacre, lively, eager, ready.
- Alesia, ae, Alesia, a town of the *Mandubii* (now *Alise-Ste-Reine*).
- aliēnō, 1, *tr.*, estrange, alienate.
- aliēnus, a, um, unfavorable, another's, foreign.
- aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time, at length, finally.
- aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, *indefinite adj.*, some, any.
- aliquis, aliquid, *indefinite pronoun*, someone, something, anyone, anything (Gr. 815).
- aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.
- alius, alia, aliud, other, another (Gr. 85-86).
- Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, the *Allobroges*, a *Gallic* tribe.
- Alpēs, Alpium, *f.*, the Alps.
- alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*), the one (*of two*), second (Gr. 87).
- altitūdō, altitūdinis, depth, height.
- altus, a, um, high, deep.
- Ambiorix, Ambiorigis, Ambiorix, a chief of the *Eburones*.
- ambulō, 1, *intr.*, walk.
- āmēn, amen, a *Hebrew* word meaning so be it.
- America, ae, America.
- Americānus, a, um, American.
- Americānus, i, an American.
- amicitia, ae, friendship.
- amicus, i, friend.
- amittō, amittere, amisi, amissus, 3, *tr.*, lose.
- amentum, i, strap, thong.
- amō, 1, *tr.*, like, love.

- amor, amōris**, love.
amplexus, ūs, embrace.
amplius, adv., more.
amplus, a, um, large, splendid, magnificent.
an, conj., or, or rather (Gr. 505-508).
anceps (gen. ancipitis), with two sides, double.
ancora, ae, anchor; in **ancorīs**, at anchor.
Andēs, Andium, the Andes, *a Gallic tribe north of the Loire*.
Andrēas, ae, Andrew.
angelus, ī, angel.
Anglicē, adv., in English.
angustiae, angustiārum, defile, narrow place, difficulties.
angustus, a, um, narrow.
anima, ae, soul, life.
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin., attend to, notice; w. in w. acc., punish.
animus, ī, soul, spirit, mind, character, courage; **aequō animō**, with composure; **hōc animō**, with this intention.
annōn, in double questions, or not.
annus, ī, year.
ante, adv., before (Gr. 924).
ante, prep. w. acc., before, in front of.
anteā, adv., before, formerly, previously; **paulō anteā**, shortly before.
antecēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessus, 3, tr. and intr., go before, precede, excel, surpass.
antecursor, antecursōris, forerunner, advance guard.
antenna, ae, sail yard.
ānulus, ī, ring.
aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertus, 4, tr., open, uncover, expose.
apertē, adv., openly.
apertus, a, um, exposed, open.
apostolus, ī, apostle.
appareō, apparēre, apparuī, 2, intr., appear.
appellō, 1, tr., address, call (upon); w. two accs., call.
appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus, 3, tr., bring to land, bring together.
Appius (ī) Claudius (ī), Appius Claudius, a Roman senator.
approperō, 1, intr., hasten.
appropinquō, 1, intr.; w. dat. or ad w. acc., draw near to, approach.
apud, prep. w. acc., among, in the presence of.
aqua, ae, water.
aquila, ae, eagle, standard.
Aquileja, ae, Aquileia, a Roman town in Cisalpine Gaul.
aquilifer, aquiliferī, standard-bearer.
Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum, the Aquitanians, *a Gallic tribe*.
Aquitānia, ae, Aquitania.
Aquitānus (ī), Pisō (Pisōnis), Piso Aquitanus.
āra, ae, altar.
Arar, Araris (abl. Ararī), m., the Saone, a river.
arbitror, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., think, consider.
arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitus, 3, tr., summon, send for, invite.
ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsum, 2, intr., burn, blaze, am inflamed.
arduus, a, um, high, steep, difficult.
Arecomici (Arecomicōrum), Volcae (Volcārum), the Volcae Arecomici, a tribe within the Roman Province.
Ariovistus, ī, Ariovistus, a German king.
Aristius (ī), Mārcus (ī), Marcus Aristius, a military tribune.
arma, armōrum, arms.
armātūra, ae, armor, equipment.
armō, 1, tr., arm, equip.
Arpinējus, ī, Gaius Arpineius, a Roman commander.
Arvernī, Arvernōrum, the Arverni, *a tribe of central Gaul*.
Arvernus, ī, an Arvernian.

arx, arcis, citadel, fortress.

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus, 3, *tr.* and *intr.*, go up.

ascēnsus, ūs, climbing up, ascent.

aspectus, ūs, look, appearance, aspect.
asper, aspera, asperum, rough, violent.

assiduus, a, um, incessant, constant.

at, *conj.*, but.

atque (ac), *conj.*, and; simul atque, *conj.*, as soon as.

Atrebātēs, Atrebātium, the Atrebates, a *Belgic tribe*.

attribuō, attribuerē, attribui, attribūtus, 3, *tr.*, assign, allot.

auctor, auctōris, adviser, promoter, instigator.

auctōritās, auctōritātis, authority, influence.

audācia, ae, daring, boldness, effrontery.

audāx (*gen.* audācis), daring, bold, courageous.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, *intr.*; *w. infin.*, dare (Gr. 345).

audiō, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, hear.

auditiō, auditiōnis, hearsay, report.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, 2, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance.

Augustus, ī, Augustus.

aula, ae, court.

Aulerci, Aulercōrum, the Aulerci, a *Gallie clan*.

Aulercus, ī, one of the Aulerci.

aurum, ī, gold.

aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, *conjs.*, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, *postp.*, however.

autumnus, ī, autumn.

auxilia, auxiliōrum, reinforcements.

auxilior, 1, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, give aid, help, assist, render assistance.

auxilium, ī, help, aid.

Avāricum, ī, Avaricum, the stronghold of the Bituriges (now Bourges).

avāritia, ae, greed, covetousness.

avē, *interjection*, hail!

āvehō, āvehere, āvēxī, āvectus, 3, *tr.*, carry away, take away.

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, 3, *tr.*, turn away, turn aside.

baptizō, 1, *tr.*, baptize.

barbarus, a, um, barbarian, foreign.

barbarus, ī, a barbarian.

beātitudō, beātitudinis, happiness.

beātus, a, um, blessed.

Belgae, Belgārum, *m.*, the Belgians.

bellō, 1, *intr.*, make war, carry on war, wage war.

Bellovacī, Bellovacōrum, the Bellovacī, a *Belgic tribe*.

bellum, ī, war; bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, *tr.*, wage war.

bene, *adv.*, well.

benedictiō, benedictiōnis, blessing.

benedictus, a, um, blessed.

Benedictus, ī, Benedict.

benefaciō, benefacere, benefēcī, benefactum, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, benefit, do good to.

beneficium, ī, benefit, favor, kindness.

benevolentia, ae, good will, benevolence.

Bethlehem, *indecl. n.*, Bethlehem.

Bibracte, Bibractis (*abl. -e or -ī*), *n.*, Bibracte, a city of the Haeduans.

Bibulus, ī, Bibulus, a Roman consul.

bīdium, ī, (a period of) two days.

bipertitō, *adv.*, in two parts, in two divisions, in two ways.

bis, *numerical adv.*, twice.

Biturigēs, Biturīgum, the Bituriges, a *Gallie tribe*.

Blāsius, ī, Blaise.

Boji, Bojōrum, the Boii, allies of the Helvetians.

bonus, a, um, good.

bracchium, ī, arm, forearm.

brevis, e, short.

Britannia, ae, Britain, England.

Britannus, ī, a Briton.

Brūtus (ī), Decimus (ī), Decimus Brutus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

- Cabūrus**, ī, Gaius Valerius Caburus, *a chief of the Helvii*.
cadāver, **cadāveris**, *n.*, a dead body, corpse.
cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, 3, *intr.*, fall, fall in battle; *hence* die.
Cadūrcus, ī, a Cadurcan.
caedēs, **caedis**, slaughter.
caelestis, *e*, heavenly.
caelum, ī, sky, heaven.
Caesar, **Caesaris**, Caesar.
calamitās, **calamitātis**, disaster, misfortune.
calceāmentum, ī, shoe.
calumniō, 1, *tr.*, calumniate.
Camillus, ī, Camillus, *a dictator*.
campester, **campestris**, **campestre**, level, flat.
Camulogenus, ī, Camulogenus, *a chief of the Aulerici*.
canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantum**, 3, *intr.*, sing, sound.
cantō, 1, *intr.*, sing.
capio, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captus**, 3, *tr.*, take, capture; **cōnsilium capere**, to make a plan.
captivus, ī, prisoner.
caput, **capitis**, head.
careō, 2, *intr.*; *w. abl.*, am without, am free from, miss, want.
cāritās, **cāritātis**, charity, love.
Carnutēs, **Carnutum**, *m.*, the Carnutes, *a Gallic tribe*.
carō, **carnis**, flesh.
carrus, ī, wagon, cart.
Carthāginiēnsēs, **Carthāginiēnsium**, the Carthaginians.
cārus, *a*, *um*, dear.
castellum, ī, fort.
Casticus, ī, Casticus, *a Sequanian*.
castra, **castrōrum**, camp; **castra pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**, 3, *tr.*, pitch camp.
cāsus, *ūs*, chance, misfortune, happening, crisis, fate; **cāsū**, by chance.
Catholicus, *a*, *um*, Catholic.
Catholicus, ī, a Catholic.
causa, *ae*, cause, reason; **causā**; *w. gen.*, for the sake of; **causā indictū**, without a trial; **quā dē causā**, wherefore, therefore.
cautē, *adv.*, cautiously.
Cavillōnum, ī, Cavillonum, *a town*.
Cebenna, *ae*, the Cebenna, or Cevennes, Mountains.
cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, 3, *intr.*, give way, yield.
celer, **celeris**, **celere**, swift.
celeritās, **celeritātis**, speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly.
cēlō, 1, *tr.*, keep covered, conceal.
Cēnabēnsis, *e*, of Cenabum.
Cēnabum, ī, Cenabum, *main town of the Carnutes*.
cēnsēō, **cēnsēre**, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsus**, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infn.*, think, decide.
censūra, *ae*, censure.
cēnsus, *ūs*, tribute.
centum, *indecl. numeral*, one hundred.
centum trīgintā, one hundred and thirty.
centuriō, **centuriōnis**, *m.*, a centurion.
cernō, **cernere**, 3, *tr.*, see, perceive.
cernuus, *a*, *um*, bowing low.
certāmen, **certāminis**, struggle, contest.
certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely.
certus, *a*, *um*, certain, fixed, sure; **certiōrem** (-ēs) **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infn.*; **dē w. abl.**, inform.
cēterī, *ae*, *a*, the rest (of), the remainder (GR. 829).
ceu, *adv.*, as.
Ceutrōnēs, **Ceutrōnum**, the Ceutrones, *a wild mountain tribe*.
chorus, ī, dance, choir.
Christiānus, *a*, *um*, Christian.
Christiānus, ī, a Christian.
Christus, ī, Christ.
cibus, ī, food.
Cicerō, **Cicerōnis**, Cicero.
Cimbrī, **Cimbrōrum**, the Cimbri, *a German tribe*.

circiter, *adv.*, about.
 circuitus, ūs, a going around, circumference, circuit.
 circum, *prep. w. acc.*, around.
 circumcidō, circumcidere, circumcidī, circumcīsus, 3, *tr.*, cut around, cut off, isolate.
 circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, 1, *tr.*, put around, encompass, surround.
 circumēō, circumīre, circumī(-īvī), circumitus, *irreg., tr.*, go around, march around, traverse.
 circumfundō, circumfundere, circumfūdī, circumfūsus, 3, *tr.*, flow around, spread around, surround.
 circummittō, circummittere, circummisī, circummissus, 3, *tr.*, send around.
 circumstō, circumstare, circumstetī, 3, *tr.*, hem in, surround.
 circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī, circumspectus, 3, *tr.*, look (around) for, look at, consider.
 circumvallō, 1, *tr.*, surround with a rampart, invest.
 circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus, 4, *tr.*, come around, surround, cut off, betray.
 cis, *prep. w. acc.*, this side of.
 citerior, citerius, nearer; Gallia (ae)
 Citerior (Citeriōris), Hither Gaul.
 citō, *adv.*, quickly.
 cīvis, cīvis, citizen.
 cīvītās, cīvītātis, state, citizenship.
 clam, *adv.*, secretly.
 clāmitō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, cry out repeatedly, exclaim.
 clāmor, clāmōris, shouting, shout.
 clārus, a, um, clear, loud.
 classici, classicōrum, marines.
 classis, classis (*abl. e or ī*), fleet.
 claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, 3, *tr.*, shut, close.
 cliēns, clientis, *m.*, client, dependent.
 Clūsīni, Clūsīnōrum, the Clusini, inhabitants of Clusium.

coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.
 coemō, coemere, coēmī, coēemptus, 3 *tr.*, buy, buy up.
 coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*, began, have begun. (*When coepī governs a passive infinitive it is changed to the passive form, coeptus sum. It is, however, translated as ACTIVE.*)
 cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *dē w. abl.*, ponder, think, plan.
 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, learn, find out.
 cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, bring together, collect, force.
 cohors, cohortis, cohort, a division of a legion containing 600 men.
 cohortor, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, encourage.
 collaudō, 1, *tr.*, praise highly.
 colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus, 3, *tr.*, bring together, obtain; *w. reflexive pronoun*, recover, rally.
 collis, collis, *m.*, hill.
 collocō, 1, *tr.*, place, station.
 colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, 3, *intr.*, converse, confer.
 collum, ī, neck.
 color, colōris, color.
 Columbus, ī, Columbus.
 commeātus, ūs, supplies, provisions.
 commemorō, 1, *tr.*, remind of, state, mention.
 comminus, *adv.*, hand to hand, in close contest.
 committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, 3, *tr.*, do, commit, allow; *proelium committere*, to join battle, to begin battle.
 Commius, ī, Commius, a chief of the Atrebatēs.
 commodē, *adv.*, readily, easily.
 commodum, ī, interest, advantage, benefit.
 commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, 2, *tr.*, alarm, arouse.

- commūnicō**, 1, *tr.*, communicate, impart.
- commūniō**, 4, *tr.*, fortify.
- commūnis**, *e*, common.
- commūtātiō**, **commūtātiōnis**, a changing, change.
- commūtō**, 1, *tr.*, change, alter.
- compār** (*gen. comparis*), equal.
- comparō**, 1, *tr.*, get, get ready, prepare.
- compellō**, **compellere**, **compulsi**, **compulsus**, 3, *tr.*, drive together, collect, force.
- comperiō**, **comperire**, **comperi**, **compertus**, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, find out with certainty, discover, ascertain.
- complector**, **complecti**, **complexus sum**, 3, *tr.*, embrace, enclose.
- compleō**, **complēre**, **complēvi**, **complētus**, 2, *tr.*; *w. abl.*, fill (with).
- complūrēs**, **complūra**, several, many.
- comportō**, 1, *tr.*, carry together, collect.
- comprehendō**, **comprehendere**, **comprehendi**, **comprehensus**, 3, *tr.*, grasp, seize, arrest, take, catch.
- concedō**, **concedere**, **concessi**, **concessus**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, withdraw, yield, allow, grant.
- concidō**, **concidere**, **concidī**, 3, *intr.*, fall down, collapse.
- concidō**, **concidere**, **concidī**, **concisus**, 3, *tr.*, cut down, slay.
- conciliō**, 1, *tr.*, win over, secure, conciliate.
- concilium**, *i*, council.
- concitō**, 1, *tr.*, stir up, instigate.
- conclāmō**, 1, *intr.*, shout, cry out.
- concurrō**, **concurrere**, **concurri**, **concursum**, 3, *intr.*, run together, rush, gather.
- conkursō**, 1, *tr.*, run about.
- conkursus**, *ūs*, a running together, attack, onset, collision.
- condiciō**, **condiciōnis**, condition, state, agreement (*pl.*, terms).
- cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **collātus**, *irreg.*, *tr.*, bring together, collect, compare; *w. reflexive pronoun*, be-take oneself.
- cōnfertus**, *a*, *um*, dense, compact.
- cōnfestim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
- cōnficiō**, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēci**, **cōnfectus**, 3, *tr.*, accomplish, finish, exhaust, wear out.
- cōnfidō**, **cōnfidere**, **cōnfisus sum**, 3, *intr.*; *w. abl.*, trust, hope, rely on (Gr. 345).
- cōnfirmō**, 1, *tr.*, encourage, strengthen; *w. acc. w. infin.*, affirm.
- cōnflagrō**, 1, *tr.*, burn, am on fire.
- cōnflictō**, 1, *tr.*, strike together; *passive*, am distressed.
- confortō**, 1, *tr.*, strengthen.
- cōnfundō**, **cōnfundere**, **cōnfūdī**, **cōnfūsus**, 3, *tr.*, pour together, bring together.
- congregior**, **congregi**, **congressus sum**, 3, *intr.*, meet, encounter, meet in battle.
- congregō**, 1, *tr.*, gather together.
- conjectūra**, *ae*, inference, conjecture, guess.
- conjiciō**, **conjicere**, **conjēci**, **conjectus**, 3, *tr.*, hurl, throw, cast; in *fugam conjicere*, to throw into flight.
- conjungō**, **conjungere**, **conjūnxī**, **conjūctus**, 3, *tr.*, join together, unite.
- conjūnx**, **conjūgis**, wife.
- conjūrātiō**, **conjūrātiōnis**, conspiracy, plot.
- conjūrō**, 1, *intr.*, conspire, form a conspiracy.
- cōnor**, 1, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*, try, attempt.
- conquīrō**, **conquīrere**, **conquīsivī**, **conquīsitus**, 3, *tr.*, seek for carefully, search for, hunt up.
- cōnsanguineus**, *a*, *um*, of the same blood.
- cōnsanguineus**, *i*, a relative, kinsman.
- cōnscendō**, **cōnscendere**, **cōnscendī**, **cōnscēnsus**, 3, *tr.*, climb, mount, embark.

- cōscribō, cōscribere, cōscripsī, cōscriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. *infin.*, enroll, write.**
- cōsēnsiō, cōsēnsiōnis, agreement.**
- cōsēnsus, ūs, consent, agreement.**
- cōsentiō, cōsentire, cōsēnsī, cōsēnsus, 4, intr., think together, agree.**
- cōsequor, cōsequi, cōsecūtus sum, 3, tr., follow up, overtake, gain. pursue, reach, accomplish.**
- cōservō, 1, tr., preserve, spare. save.**
- cōsidō, cōsidere, cōsēdi, cōsēssum, 3, intr., settle, take a position. halt, encamp.**
- cōsilium, ī, plan, counsel; cōsilium capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, 3, tr., make a plan, adopt a plan.**
- cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti, 3, intr., take a position, halt, remain, form (of soldiers), ride at anchor (of ships).**
- cōsōlō, 1, tr., comfort.**
- cōsōlor, 1, tr., cheer, comfort.**
- cōspectus, ūs, sight.**
- cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, tr.; acc. w. *infin.*, observe, perceive, see, catch sight of.**
- cōspicor, 1, tr., observe, perceive.**
- cōstantia, ae, firmness, steadfastness.**
- cōstat, cōstāre, cōstitit, 1, intr.; acc. w. *infin.*, it is agreed, it is certain, it is evident, it is known.**
- cōstipō, 1, tr., press closely, crowd.**
- cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus, 3, tr.; w. *pres. infin.*, place, set up, decide, determine.**
- cōstō, cōstāre, cōstiti, cōstātum, 1, intr., stand firm, depend on, am complete, cost; cōstat (used impersonally); acc. w. *infin.*, it is agreed, it is certain, it is evident. it is known.**
- cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis, habit, custom.**
- cōsuēvī, cōsuētus, 3, tr. and intr.; w. *pres. infin.*, have accustomed, have become accustomed, am accustomed.**
- cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul.**
- consulāris, e, of consular rank, consular.**
- cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsuluī, cōsulutus, 3, tr. and intr., consult, take counsel; w. *dat.*, take counsel for, consult the interests of.**
- cōsultō, *adv.*, deliberately, on purpose.**
- consummātiō, consummātiōnis, consummation, end.**
- cōsummō, 1, tr., use up, finish.**
- cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsī, cōsūmptus, 3, tr., take all at once, consume, use up.**
- cōsurgō, cōsurgere, cōsurrēxī, cōsurrēctum, 3, intr., rise together, arise.**
- contegō, contegere, contēxī, contēctus, 3, tr., cover up.**
- contemptiō, contemptiōnis, contempt, disdain.**
- contendō, contendere, contendī, 3, intr.; w. *pres. infin.*, strive, contend, hasten.**
- contentiō, contentiōnis, struggle, contest.**
- contentus, a, um, satisfied, contented.**
- continenter, *adv.*, without interruption, continuously, continually.**
- contineō, continēre, continui, contentus, 2, tr., restrain, hold in.**
- contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctum, 3, tr. and intr.; w. *dat.*, fall to.**
- continuō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.**
- cōtiō, cōtiōnis, assembly, mass meeting, address (to a meeting).**
- contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand.**
- contrā, *prep.* w. *acc.*, against, opposite.**
- contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus, 3, tr., draw together, collect, contract.**
- contrōversia, ae, dispute, quarrel, controversy.**

contumēlia, *ae*, indignity, affront, injury.

convallis, *convallis*, enclosed valley, defile.

convehō, *convehere*, *convexī*, *conventus*, 3, *tr.*, bring together, collect.

conveniō, *convenire*, *convēnī*, *conventum*, 4, *intr.*, come together, assemble.

convenit, *convenire*, *convēnit*, 4, *intr.*; *w. infin.*; *acc. w. infin.*, it is convenient, it is necessary, it is suitable.

conventus, *ūs*, meeting, assembly.

convertō, *convertere*, *convertī*, *convertum*, 4, *intr.*, turn around, wheel about, change.

Convictolitāvis, *Convictolitāvis*, *Convictolitavis*, *an Haeduan chief*.

convocō, 1, *tr.*, call together, summon.

coorior, *cooriri*, *coortus sum*, 4, *intr.*, arise, spring up, break out.

cōpia, *ae*, supply, abundance.

cōpia, *cōpiarum*, troops, forces.

cōpiōsus, *a, um*, abundant, very great.

cōpula, *ae*, grappling-hook.

cor, *cordis*, *n.*, heart.

cōram, *prep. w. abl.*, before.

cornū, *ūs*, horn, flank, wing (*of an army*).

corōna, *ae*, crown.

corōnō, 1, *tr.*, crown.

corpus, *corporis*, *n.*, body.

Corregidor, *indecl. n.*, Corregidor.

corrumpō, *corrumpere*, *corrūpī*, *corruptus*, 3, *tr.*, destroy, ruin.

Cosacus, *i*, a Cossack.

Cotta (*ae*), *Lūcius* (*i*) *Aurunculējus* (*i*), *Lūcius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

Cotus, *i*, *Cotus*, a chief of the *Haeduan*s.

Crassus (*i*), *Mārcus* (*i*), *Marcus Crassus*, a quaestor on the staff of Caesar.

Crassus (*i*), *Pūblius* (*i*), *Publius Crassus*, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

crātēs, *crātium*, wickerwork, fascine.

creātūra, *ae*, creature.

crēber, *crēbra*, *crēbrum*, thick, numerous, frequent.

crēbrō, *adv.*, frequently.

crēdō, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus*, 3, *tr. and intr.*; *w. dat. of person to whom or in whom*; *acc. w. infin.*, believe, trust, entrust.

crēscō, *crēscere*, *crēvī*, *crētum*, 3, *intr.*, grow, increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*).

crīmen, *crīminis*, crime.

Critognātus, *i*, *Critognatus*, a chief of the *Arverni*.

cruciātus, *ūs*, torture.

crūdēlitās, *crūdēlitātis*, cruelty, harshness.

cruentus, *a, um*, bloody.

crux, *crucis*, cross.

cubō, *cubāre*, *cubuī*, *cubitum*, 1, *intr.*, lie.

culpa, *ae*, blame, guilt, fault.

cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when, since.

cum primum, *conj.*, as soon as.

cūnae, *cūnārum*, crib.

cūnctus, *a, um*, whole, all.

cuneātim, *adv.*, in wedge-shaped masses.

cupiditās, *cupiditātis*, desire, eagerness.

cupidus, *a, um*; *w. gen.*, eager, desirous.

cupiō, *cupere*, *cupivī*, *cupītus*, 3, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *ut (nē)*, desire.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, *ae*, care.

Curiosolitēs, *Curiosolitum*, the *Curiosolites*, a *Gallie* tribe.

cūrō, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, care for, take care of, provide for.

cursus, *ūs*, running, course, career, passage.

custōdia, *ae*, custody, guard.

custōs, *custōdis*, *m.*, guard.

- dē**, *prep. w. abl.*, down from, out of, from, concerning (about), about (*of time*), for; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly; **dē tertiā vigiliā**, during the third watch.
- dēbeō**, 2, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*, ought, owe.
- dēcēdō**, **dēcēdere**, **dēcēssī**, **dēcēssum**, 3, *intr.*, go away from, depart, leave.
- decem**, *indecl. numeral*, ten.
- dēcernō**, **dēcernere**, **dēcervī**, **dēcērtus**, 3, *tr.*; *w. infin.*; *ut (nē)*, decide, vote, decree.
- dēcērtō**, 1, *intr.*, fight to the end, struggle fiercely, vie, contend.
- decimus**, a, um, tenth.
- Decimus** (ī) **Brūtus** (ī), Decimus Brutus, one of Caesar's trusted lieutenants.
- dēclivitās**, **dēclivitātis**, descent.
- deditiō**, **deditiōnis**, surrender, capitulation.
- dēdō**, **dēdere**, **dēdidī**, **dēditus**, 3, *tr.*, give up, devote, surrender. (*Always takes an object.*)
- dēdūcō**, **dēducere**, **dēdūxī**, **dēductus**, 3, *tr.*, lead, lead away.
- dēfatigō**, 1, *tr.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust.
- dēfectiō**, **dēfectionis**, desertion, revolt, rebellion.
- dēfectus**, ūs, weakness.
- dēfendō**, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus**, 3, *tr.*, defend.
- dēfēnsor**, **dēfēnsōris**, defender.
- dēferō**, **dēferre**, **dētulī**, **dēlātus**, *irreg.*, *tr.*, bring from, bring down, carry, report, refer.
- dēfessus**, a, um, exhausted, wearied, worn out.
- dēficiō**, **dēficere**, **dēfēcī**, **dēfectus**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, fail, desert, fall away, revolt.
- deinceps**, *adv.*, in turn, successively.
- dējiciō**, **dējicere**, **dējēcī**, **dējectus**, 3, *tr.*, hurl down, cast down.
- dēliberō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, consider, deliberate.
- dēligō**, 1, *tr.*, bind down, tie down, fasten.
- dēligō**, **dēligere**, **dēlēgī**, **dēlēctus**, 3, *tr.*, choose, pick out, select.
- dēmittō**, **dēmittere**, **dēmisi**, **dēmīssus**, 3, *tr.*, send down, let down; *w. reflexive pronoun*, descend.
- dēmō**, **dēmere**, **dēmpsī**, **dēemptus**, 3, *tr.*, take down, remove.
- dēmōnstrō**, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, show, point out.
- dēmum**, *adv.*, at last, not till then.
- dēnārius**, ī, denarius, a small coin.
- dēnique**, *adv.*, thereupon, finally.
- dēnsus**, a, um, thick, dense.
- dēpereō**, **dēperīre**, **dēperīi**, **dēperitum**, *irreg.*, *intr.*, go to ruin, perish, am lost, am undone.
- dēpōnō**, **dēpōnere**, **dēposuī**, **dēpositus**, 3, *tr.*, lay down, give up, station, deposit.
- dēprecōr**, 1, *tr.*, beg (off).
- dēprehendō**, **dēprehendere**, **dēprehendī**, **dēprehēnsus**, 3, *tr.*, seize, capture, catch.
- dēscendō**, **dēscendere**, **dēscendī**, **dēscēsum**, 3, *intr.*, climb down, descend, resort to.
- dēserō**, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus**, 3, *tr.*, abandon, desert.
- dēsīderō**, 1, *tr.*, miss, lose, desire.
- dēsiliō**, **dēsīlire**, **dēsīluī**, **dēsultum**, 4, *intr.*, leap down.
- dēsistō**, **dēsistere**, **dēstitī**, **dēstitūrus**, 3, *intr.*; *w. abl. of thing from which* cease, give up.
- dēspectus**, ūs, a looking down, view.
- dēspērō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, despair, despair of.
- dēstringō**, **dēstringere**, **dēstrīnxī**, **dēstrictus**, 3, *tr.*, unbind, unsheathe, draw.
- dēsum**, **deesse**, **dēfui**, **dēfutūrus**, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, am lacking, am absent, fail.

- dētrīmentum**, *i*, harm. injury, loss, disaster.
- dēturbō**, *1, tr.*, drive off, dislodge.
- Deus**, *i* (*pl., nom. dī, abl. and dat. dis*), God.
- dēvehō**, *dēvehere*, *dēvēxī*, *dēvectus*, *3, tr.*, carry away, bring.
- dēvorō**, *1, tr.*, devour.
- dexter**, *dextra*, *dextrum*, right.
- dicō**, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*, *3, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, say, tell.
- diēs**, *diēi*, *m. (f.)*, day; *perendinō diē*, on the day after tomorrow.
- differō**, *differre*, *distulī*, *dīlātus*, *tr. reg., tr.*, scatter, put off, differ.
- difficilis**, *e*, difficult.
- difficultās**, *difficultātis*, difficulty, trouble.
- diffidō**, *diffidere*, *diffisus sum*, *3, intr.*; *w. dat.*, distrust, lack confidence.
- dignitās**, *dignitātis*, dignity, merit, rank.
- dignus**, *a, um*; *w. abl.*, worthy (of), meet.
- dīlectiō**, *dīlectionis*, love.
- dīlēctus**, *a, um*, beloved.
- dīlēctus**, *ūs*, levy, choice.
- diligēns** (*gen. diligētis*), careful, exact.
- diligenter**, *adv.*, carefully.
- diligentia**, *ae*, care, carefulness, diligence.
- diligō**, *diligere*, *dilēxī*, *dīlēctus*, *3, tr.*, love.
- dīmīcatiō**, *dīmīcatiōnis*, fight, contest.
- dīmīcō**, *1, intr.*, fight, struggle.
- dīmīdiō**, *1, tr.*, divide in half.
- dīmīttō**, *dīmītere*, *dīmīsī*, *dīmīssus*, *3, tr.*, send away, dismiss.
- diripiō**, *diripere*, *diripui*, *dirēptus*, *3, tr.*, tear asunder, plunder, pillage.
- discēdō**, *discēdere*, *discessī*, *discessum*, *3, intr.*, go away, retire, depart.
- disceptātor**, *disceptātōris*, judge, umpire.
- discernō**, *discernere*, *discrēvī*, *discrētus*, *3, tr.*, separate, keep apart.
- discessus**, *ūs*, departure, withdrawal, absence.
- discipulus**, *i*, disciple, pupil.
- discō**, *discere*, *didicī*, *3, tr. and intr.*, learn.
- discutiō**, *discutere*, *discussī*, *discussus*, *3, tr.*, clear away.
- disgregō**, *1, tr.*, separate.
- dispār** (*gen. disparis*); *w. dat.*, unequal, illmatched.
- dispersus**, *a, um*, scattered.
- dispōnō**, *dispōnere*, *disposuī*, *dispositus*, *3, tr.*, distribute, station.
- disputātiō**, *disputātiōnis*, argument, discussion.
- dissēnsiō**, *dissēnsiōnis*, disagreement, dissension.
- dissentiō**, *dissentire*, *dissēnsī*, *dissēnsus*, *4, intr.*, differ, disagree.
- dissipō**, *1, tr.*, squander.
- distineō**, *distinēre*, *distinuī*, *distentus*, *2, tr.*, hold apart, divide, isolate, keep apart.
- distribuō**, *distribuere*, *distribuī*, *distribūtus*, *3, tr.*, assign, distribute.
- dītissimus**, *a, um*, richest, wealthiest, very rich.
- diū**, *adv.*, a long time, long (*of time*).
- diurnus**, *a, um*, during the day, by day.
- diūtinus**, *a, um*, long, of long duration.
- diūtissimē**, *adv.*, longest.
- diūtius**, *comparative adv.*, longer.
- dīversus**, *a, um*, diverse, different, separate, in opposite directions.
- dīvidō**, *dividere*, *divīsī*, *divīsus*, *3, tr.*, divide, separate.
- dō**, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*, *1, tr.*, give; *in fugam dare*, to put to flight; *inter sē dare*, to exchange; *operam dare*, to take pains, to give attention.
- doceō**, *docēre*, *docuī*, *doctus*, *2, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *two accs.*, show, teach, inform (Gr. 751).

doctor, doctōris, teacher.
 documentum, ī, teaching.
 dolor, dolōris, grief, pain, sorrow.
 dominus, ī, master, Lord (*in Christian Latin used of God or Christ*).
 Domnotaurus (ī), Gājus (ī) Valerius (ī), Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus, first magistrate of the Helvii.
 domus, ūs, f., house, home; domī, at home; domō, from home; domum, (to) home (Gr. 915-917).
 dōnō, 1, tr., bestow.
 dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, doubt, hesitation.
 dubitō, 1, tr. and intr., doubt, hesitate.
 dubius, a, um, doubtful, uncertain.
 ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.
 ducentī (ae, a) vīgintī, two hundred and twenty.
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3, tr., lead, guide.
 ductus, ūs, leading, command.
 dulcis, e, sweet.
 dum, conj., while, until (Gr. 567).
 Dumnorix, Dumnorīgis, Dumnorix, an Haeduan noble.
 duo, duae, duo, two (Gr. 115).
 duodecim, indecl. numeral, twelve.
 duodecimus, a, um, twelfth.
 duodēni, ae, a, twelve each.
 duodēvīgintī, indecl. numeral, eighteen.
 duplex (gen. duplicis), twofold, double.
 dūrus, a, um, hard, rough, severe.
 dux, ducis, leader.
 ē. See ex; ē regiōne; w. gen., opposite.
 Eburōnēs, Eburōnum, m., the Eburones, a Gallic tribe.
 ecce, interjection, behold.
 ecclēsia, ae, church.
 ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, 3, tr., lead out.
 efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, irreg., tr., bring out, take away, raise, make known; passive, am elated.
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, 3, tr.;

ut (ut nōn or nē), bring about, cause.
 effugiō, effugere, effūgī, 3, tr. and intr., flee from, escape.
 egēns (gen. egentis), needy, destitute.
 egēnus, a, um, poor, in want.
 egeō, egēre, eguī, 2, intr., am in want.
 ego, mei, I.
 ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, intr., go out, march out, make a sortie, land (from a ship).
 ēgregiē, adv., excellently, admirably, remarkably.
 ēgregius, a, um, excellent, superior, remarkable.
 Eisenhower, indecl. n., Eisenhower.
 ēja, interjection, come.
 ējus, his, her, hers, its, of him, etc.
 ējusmodī, of such a kind (gen. of description).
 ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3, intr., slip away, escape.
 Elaver, Elaveris, n., the Elaver, a river (now the Allier).
 elephantus, ī, elephant.
 ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, 3, tr., choose, select.
 ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmisī, ēmissus, 3, tr., send forth.
 ēn, interjection, behold.
 enim, conj., postp., for.
 eō, adv., thither, to that place, there;
 eō magis, the more, so much the more.
 eō, ire, īvī (īī), itum, irreg., intr., go.
 eōrum, eārum, their, of them.
 episcopus, ī, bishop.
 epistula, ae, letter, dispatch.
 Eporēdorix, Eporēdorīgis, Eporēdorix, the name of two Haeduan leaders.
 epulor, 1, intr., dine.
 eques, equitis, horseman (pl., cavalry).
 equester, equestris, equestre, of cavalry, cavalry (adj.).
 equitātus, ūs, cavalry.
 equus, ī, horse.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ēripīō, **ēripere**, **ēripui**, **ēreptus**, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person or thing from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w. abl.*, take away, save from.

errō, 1, *tr.*, wander, err, am mistaken.

ēruptiō, **ēruptiōnis**, a breaking out, sortie, sally.

estōte, *imperative*, be (Gr. 357).

ēsuriō, 4, *tr.*, hunger for.

Esuviī, **Esuviōrum**, the Esvuii, a tribe on the northern coast of Gaul.

et, *conj.*, and (sometimes, also); *et . . . et, conj.*, both . . . and.

etiam, *adv.*, also.

etiāmsi, *conj.*, even if.

etsi, *conj.*, although.

Eurōpa, *ae*, Europe.

ēventus, *ūs*, outcome, issue, result.

ēvocō, 1, *tr.*, call forth, call out, summon.

ex (ē), *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from.

exaudiō, 4, *tr.*, hear.

excēdō, **excēdere**, **excēdī**, **excisus**, 3, *intr.*, go out, withdraw.

excellō, **excellere**, **exceluī**, **excelsus**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, excel, am eminent.

excidō, **excidere**, **excidī**, **excisus**, 3, *tr.*, hew away, hew down.

excipiō, **excipere**, **excēpī**, **exceptus**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, take up, catch, receive.

excitō, 1, *tr.*, arouse, erect.

excubō, **excubāre**, **excubuī**, **excubitum**, 1, *intr.*, lie outside, keep guard.

exemplum, *ī*, example, precedent.

exoō, **exire**, **exiī(-ivī)**, **exitum**, *irreg.*, *intr.*, go out.

exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise.

exercitus, *ūs*, army.

exigō, **exigere**, **exēgī**, **exāctus**, 3, *tr.*, exact.

exiguae, *adv.*, scarcely.

exiguus, *a, um*, small, scanty.

existimō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, think.

exitus, *ūs*, exit, outcome, result.

exorō, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, beseech.

expediō, 4, *tr.*, set free, arrange, prepare.

expeditus, *a, um*, unimpeded, free, unobstructed, without baggage, light-armed, ready for action.

expellō, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsus**, 3, *tr.*, drive out.

experior, **experiri**, **expertus sum**, 4, *tr.*, prove, try, test.

expiō, 1, *tr.*, atone for, expiate, avenge.

expleō, **explēre**, **explēvī**, **explētus**, 2, *tr.*, fill out, fill up, finish.

explōrātōr, **explōrātōris**, scout.

explōrō, 1, *tr.*, reconnoiter, find out, ascertain.

expōnō, **expōnere**, **exposuī**, **expositus**, 3, *tr.*, set out, disembark, draw up, explain.

expugnō, 1, *tr.*, storm, take by storm.

exserō, **exserere**, **exseruī**, **exsertus**, 3, *tr.*, uncover.

existō, **existere**, **existitī**, 3, *intr.*, arise, ensue.

expectō, 1, *tr.*, wait for, wait.

exstinguō, **exstinguere**, **exstīnxī**, **exstinctus**, 3, *tr.*, put out, quench, destroy.

exsultātiō, **exsultātiōnis**, exultation.

exsultō, 1, *intr.*, exult.

exterior, **exteriorius**, exterior, outer.

extrā, *prep. w. acc.*, outside, beyond.

extrēmus, *a, um*, outermost, farthest, last.

exuō, **exuere**, **exuī**, **exūtus**, 3, *tr.*; *w. abl. of thing stripped off*, strip off, divest, despoil.

Fabius (ī), **Gājus (ī)**, Gaius Fabius, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

Fabius (ī), **Lūcius (ī)**, Lucius Fabius, a centurion of the eighth legion.

Fabius (ī), **Quīntus (ī)**, Quintus Fabius, a Roman envoy to the Gauls.

Fabricius, ī, Fabricius, a Roman general.

facile, *adv.*, easily.

facilis, *e*, easy.

- facinus, facinoris, n.**, deed, misdeed, outrage, crime.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (*passive, fiō*), 3, *tr.*, do, make; **certiorem** (-ēs) **facere**; *acc. w. infin.*; *dē w. abl.*, to inform; **iter facere**, to march, to make a journey; **vim facere**, to use force.
facultās, facultātis; *w. gen.*, power, opportunity (*for*), resources.
faenus, ī, straw.
fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, 3, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint.
falx, falcis, hook (*for pulling down walls*).
fāma, ae, rumor, fame.
famēs, famis, hunger, starvation, famine.
familia, ae, household (*including slaves*), retinue, family; **mātrēs** (**mātrum**) **familiae** (**familiārum**), matrons.
familiāris, e, intimate, friendly; **rēs** (**rei**) **familiāris** (**is**), property.
fastīgium, ī, elevation, height, descent.
fēlicitās, fēlicitātis, good fortune, luck.
ferē, adv., almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, irreg., tr., bear, bring, carry.
ferrum, ī, iron, steel, *anything made of iron*—sword, spear point, etc.
fidēlis, e, faithful, trustworthy, reliable.
fidēs, fideī, faith, reliability, faithfulness.
fidūcia, ae, confidence, trust, reliance.
filius, ī, son.
finēs, finium, m., territory.
finitimus, a, um; *w. dat.*, neighboring, next.
fiō, fierī, factus sum (*passive of faciō*), *irreg., intr.*, am made, am done, become; *w. ut (ut nōn)*, happen.
firmitūdō, firmitūdinis, strength, solidity.
firmus, a, um, strong, vigorous.
flamma, ae, flame.
fleō, flere, flēvī, flētum, 2, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament.
flōs, flōris, flower.
flūmen, flūminis, river; **adversō flūmine**, upstream; **secundō flūmine**, downstream.
fluō, fluere, flūxī, 3, *intr.*, flow.
fore, *form of future infinitive of sum* (Gr. 360).
foris, adv., out of doors, without.
fors, fortis, chance.
fortis, e, brave, strong.
fortiter, adv., bravely, strongly.
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, courage, bravery.
fortūna, ae, fortune.
Forum, ī, the Forum.
fossa, ae, ditch.
foveō, fovere, fōvī, fōtus, 2, *tr.*, fondle.
frāter, frātris (**frātrum**), brother.
fraus, fraudis, cheating, deception.
fremitus, ūs, noise, uproar, din.
frequēns (*gen. frequentis*), in great numbers, in crowds, frequent, in large numbers, crowded.
fructus, ūs, fruit, profit, reward.
frūmentārius, a, um, of provisions; **rēs** (**rei**) **frūmentāria** (**ae**), supplies.
frūmentum, ī, grain (*pl.*, crops).
frūstrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.
fuga, ae, flight; **in fugam conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus**, 3, *tr.*, throw into flight; **in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus**, 1, *tr.*, put to flight.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3, *intr.*, flee.
fugitīvus, ī, runaway slave.
fūmus, ī, smoke.
fūnus, fūneris, death.
furor, furōris, rage, frenzy, madness.
Gabalī, Gabalōrum, the Gabali, *a Gallic tribe*.
Gabriēl, Gabriēlis, Gabriel.

- Gājus** (ī) **Antistius** (ī) **Rēginus** (ī), **Gaius Antistius Reginus**, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Gājus** (ī) **Caninius** (ī) **Rebilus** (ī), **Gaius Caninius Rebilus**, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Gājus** (ī) **Fabius** (ī), **Gaius Fabius**, *a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.*
- Gājus** (ī) **Trebōnius** (ī), **Gaius Trebonius**, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Gājus** (ī) **Valerius** (ī) **Domnotaurus** (ī), **Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus**, *first magistrate of the Helvii.*
- Galba** (ae), **Servius** (ī), **Servius Galba**, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Galilaea**, ae, Galilee.
- Gallia**, ae, Gaul.
- Gallia** (ae) **Citerior** (**Citeriōris**), *Hither Gaul, the region in Italy between the Po River and the Alps.*
- Gallia** (ae) **Uterior** (**Uteriōris**), *Farther Gaul.*
- Gallicus**, a, um, pertaining to Gaul, Gallic.
- Gallus**, ī, a Gaul.
- Gallus** (ī), **Mārcus** (ī) **Trebius** (ī), **Marcus Trebius Gallus**, *a Roman officer.*
- Garumna**, ae, Garonne, a river.
- gaudeō**, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus** sum, 2, *intr.*, rejoice.
- gaudium**, ī, joy.
- Geidumnī**, **Geidumnōrum**, the **Geidumni**, *a Belgic tribe.*
- Genava**, ae, Geneva, *a city of the Allobroges.*
- genitor**, **genitōris**, father.
- genitus**, ī, son.
- gēns**, **gentis**, tribe.
- genus**, **generis**, *n.*, race, tribe, kind.
- Gergovia**, ae, Gergovia, *main stronghold of the Arvernians.*
- Germānia**, ae, Germany.
- Germānus**, a, um, German.
- Germānus**, ī, a German.
- gerō**, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestus**, 3, *tr.*, carry, carry on, wage (*w. bellum*);
- rēs** (**rērum**) **gestae** (**gestārum**), exploits, achievements.
- Gethsemani**, *indecl. n.*, Gethsemane.
- gladius**, ī, sword.
- glōria**, ae, fame, glory.
- glōrificō**, 1, *tr.*, glorify.
- Gnaeus** (ī) **Pompējus** (ī), **Gnaeus Pompeius**, *an interpreter.*
- Gobannitiō**, **Gobannitiōnis**, **Gobannitio**, *an Arvernian chief.*
- Gorgobina**, ae, **Gorgobina**, *stronghold of the Boii.*
- Graecus**, a, um, Greek.
- Graecus**, ī, a Greek.
- grātia**, ae, favor, influence, grace (*in Christian Latin*).
- grātia**, **grātiārum**, thanks; **grātiās agō**, **agere**, **ēgi**, **actus**, 3, *tr.*, give thanks, thank.
- grātulātiō**, **grātulātiōnis**, congratulation, rejoicing.
- grātulor**, 1, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, congratulate.
- gravis**, e, heavy, severe, serious.
- grex**, **gregis**, *m.*, flock.
- Grudiī**, **Grudiōrum**, the **Grudii**, *a Belgic tribe.*
- guttur**, **gutturis**, *n.*, throat.
- habeō**, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, deliver (*w. orātiōnem*).
- Haeduī**, **Haeduōrum**, the **Haedui** or **Haeduans**, *a Gallic tribe.*
- haedus**, ī, kid.
- Haeduus**, ī, an Haeduan.
- Hannibal**, **Hannibalis**, *m.*, Hannibal.
- Helvētīi**, **Helvētiōrum**, the **Helvetians**, *a Gallic tribe.*
- Helvētius**, ī, an Helvetian.
- Helvīi**, **Helviōrum**, the **Helvii**, *a Gallic tribe.*
- hērēditās**, **hērēditātis**, heritage, inheritance.
- Hērōdēs**, **Hērōdis**, **Herod**, *king of Judea.*
- Hērōdiānus**, ī, a partisan of Herod, an Herodian.

- hiberna, hibernōrum**, winter quarters.
hic, adv., here.
hic, haec, hoc, this (Gr. 133; 792-795).
hiemō, 1, intr., winter, spend the winter.
hiems, hiemis, winter.
hinc, adv., hence.
Hispania, ae, Spain.
Hispanicus, a, um, Spanish.
homō, hominis, man.
honestus, a, um, honorable, worthy, distinguished.
honōrō, 1, tr., honor.
hōra, ae, hour.
horribilis, e, dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.
hortor, 1, tr.; ut (nē), urge, encourage, exhort.
hospitium, ī, friendship, hospitality.
hostia, ae, victim.
hostilis, e, hostile.
hostis, hostis, m., enemy (*in war*).
hūc, adv., hither, to this place.
hūmānus, a, um, human.
humilis, e, low, weak, humble.
hymnus, ī, hymn.
hypocrita, ae, m., hypocrite.

ibi, adv., there.
idem, eadem, idem, same (Gr. 137; 813-814).
idōneus, a, um; w. dat. or ad w. acc., suitable, proper, convenient.
igitur, adv., postp., therefore.
ignōminia, ae, disgrace, dishonor.
ignōrō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., not know, am ignorant of, am unaware, overlook.
ille, illa, illud, that, he, she, it (Gr. 134; 792-795; 798).
illigō, 1, tr., attach, bind together.
illūdō, illūdere, illūsī, illūsus, 3, tr., deceive.
Illyricum, ī, Illyricum, a region along the coast of the Adriatic Sea.
imāgō, imāginis, image.
imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis, weakness.

imber, imbris, rainstorm.
immaculātus, a, um, pure.
immēnsus, a, um, infinite.
immittō, immittere, immisī, immisus, 3, tr., send into, send against.
immō, adv., indeed.
immolātus, a, um, immolated.
immortālis, e, immortal.
immūnis, e; ab (ā) w. abl., unburdened, free (from).
impedimenta, impedimentōrum, baggage, baggage train.
impediō, 4, tr., hinder, impede.
impeditus, a, um, encumbered, burdened (*of soldiers under packs*), difficult (*of places*).
imperātor, imperātōris, commander in chief, general, emperor.
imperātum, ī, order, command.
imperītus, a, um; w. gen., unskilled in, inexperienced in.
imperium, ī, command, power, empire.
imperō, 1, tr.; w. dat. of person, levy (on); **w. ut (nē)**, order, command.
impetrō, 1, tr., obtain (*by asking*).
impetus, ūs, attack.
impius, a, um, impious, wicked.
impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus, 3, tr., place upon, put on, impose on, mount.
imprōvisus, a, um, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly.
imprudentia, ae, imprudence, indiscretion.
impūnē, adv., safely.
in, prep. w. abl., in, on; **prep. w. acc.**, in, into, against, upon, on, onto, towards.
in ancoris, at anchor.
in excelsis, in the highest.
in fugam conjiciō, conjicere, conjeci, conjectus, 3, tr., throw into flight.
in fugam dō, dare, dedi, datus, 1, tr., put to flight.
in perpetuum, forever.

- in primis, especially.
 in principiō, in the beginning.
 in saecula saeculōrum, world without end, forever.
 in statione sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irreg., intr., am on guard duty.
 in . . . versus, *prep. w. acc.*, towards.
 in vicem (invicem), *adv.*, in turn.
 incautius, *comparative adv.*, rather incautiously.
 incendium, ī, fire, conflagration.
 incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, 3, *tr.*, set fire to, burn.
 incertus, a, um, uncertain, indefinite, vague.
 incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, 3, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*, begin, undertake.
 incitō, 1, *tr.*, incite, arouse.
 incognitus, a, um; *w. dat.*, unknown.
 incolō, incolere, incoluī, 3, *tr.*, inhabit, dwell in.
 incolumis, e, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound.
 incommodum, ī, disadvantage, disaster, injury.
 incredibilis, e, unbelievable, extraordinary.
 incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, incubitum, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, recline upon, devote one's self to.
 incursus, ūs, attack.
 inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place, from there.
 India, ae, India.
 indictus, a, um, unsaid, unheard; causā indictā, without a trial.
 indignor, 1, *intr.*, am indignant.
 indignus, a, um; *w. abl.*, unworthy (of), disgraceful.
 indiligēns (*gen. indiligentis*), negligent, lax.
 indiligentia, ae, negligence.
 inducō, inducere, induxī, inductus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, lead in, lead on, influence.
 indulgentia, ae, forbearance, clemency.
 indulgeō, indulgēre, indulsī, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, am indulgent to, favor.
 induō, induere, induī, indūtus, 3, *tr.*, put on.
 industria, ae, diligence.
 ineō, inīre, iniī (-ivī), initus, irreg., *tr.*, go into, enter upon.
 infāns, infantis, c., infant.
 inferior, inferius, lower.
 inferō, inferre, intuli, illātus, irreg., *tr.*; *w. dat. of person*, bring (upon), inflict (upon), inspire (in).
 infestus, a, um, hostile.
 infidēlis, e, faithless, untrustworthy.
 infimus, a, um, lowest; ad infimum, to the bottom, at the bottom; ab infimō, from the bottom, at the bottom.
 infirmitās, infirmitātis, weakness, fickleness, inconstancy.
 influō, influere, infliūxī, 3, *intr.*, flow into, empty into.
 infrā, *adv.*, below.
 ingenium, ī, natural talent, ability, genius.
 ingrātus, a, um; *w. dat.*, unwelcome, displeasing.
 ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum, 3, *tr.*, advance, go.
 inimicus, ī, enemy (*a personal enemy*).
 inīquitās, inīquitātis, inequality, unfairness, disadvantage.
 inīquus, a, um, uneven, unjust, unfavorable.
 initium, ī, beginning.
 injiciō, injicere, injēcī, injectus, 3, *tr.*, throw in, throw on, inspire in.
 injungō, injungere, injūnxī, injūctus, 3, *tr.*, join to, impose.
 injūria, ae, injustice, wrong.
 injussū; *w. gen.*, without the order (of).
 injūstus, a, um, unjust.
 innātus, a, um, inborn, innate.
 inopia, ae, scarcity, want.
 inopināns (*gen. inopinantis*), not suspecting, unaware, off one's guard.

- inquit**, he says, he said; **inquiunt**, they say, they said. (*Used with direct quotations only; usually placed after first word or phrase of quotation.*)
- inscius**, a, um, not knowing, ignorant, not aware.
- insecutor**, **insecutoris**, persecutor.
- insequor**, **insequi**, **insecutus sum**, 3, *tr.*, pursue.
- insidiae**, **insidiarum**, ambush, treachery, plot, trick.
- insigne**, **insignis**, sign.
- insimulō**, 1, *tr.*; *w. gen.* of the charge, charge, blame, accuse (Gr. 717).
- instaurō**, 1, *tr.*, renew.
- instituō**, **instituere**, **instituī**, **institutus**, 3, *tr.*, set up, train, procure, build; *w. infin.*, begin, determine.
- instrumentum**, ī, apparatus, equipment.
- instruō**, **instruere**, **instruī**, **instructus**, 3, *tr.*, draw up, equip.
- insuetus**, a, um; *w. gen.*, unaccustomed, not used to.
- insufflō**, 1, *intr.*, breathe upon.
- insula**, ae, island; **Insulae** (**Insularum**) **Philippinae** (**Philippinarum**), Philippine Islands.
- integer**, **integra**, **integrum**, fresh, uninjured, whole.
- intelligō**, **intelligere**, **intellēxī**, **intellēctus**, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, understand, perceive.
- intentus**, a, um, intent on, attentive.
- inter**, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among; **inter sē dō**, dare, **dedī**, **datus**, 1, *tr.*, exchange.
- intercēdō**, **intercēdere**, **intercessī**, **intercessum**, 3, *intr.*, go between, lie between, intervene.
- intercessiō**, **intercessiōnis**, **intercession**.
- intercipiō**, **intercipere**, **intercēpī**, **interceptus**, 3, *tr.*, intercept, cut off.
- interclūdō**, **interclūdere**, **interclūsi**, **interclūsus**, 3, *tr.*, shut off, cut off.
- interdicō**, **interdicere**, **interdixī**, **interdictum**, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat. of person*, prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict (Gr. 645-646).
- interdum**, *adv.*, occasionally.
- intereā**, *adv.*, meanwhile.
- intereō**, **interire**, **interiī**, **interitum**, *irreg. intr.*, perish, die.
- interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus**, 3, *tr.*, kill.
- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile.
- interior**, **interius**, interior, inner.
- interjiciō**, **interjicere**, **interjēcī**, **interjectus**, 3, *tr.*, throw between, put between, place between.
- intermittō**, **intermittere**, **intermisī**, **intermissus**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, send between, intervene. let up. delay.
- interpōnō**, **interpōnere**, **interposuī**, **interpositus**, 3, *tr.*, place between, interpose, cause.
- interpres**, **interpretis**, *m.*, interpreter.
- interrogō**, 1, *tr.*, ask.
- interrumpō**, **interrumpere**, **interrūpī**, **interruptus**, 3, *tr.*, break off, break through, destroy.
- intersum**, **interesse**, **interfuī**, **interfūturus**, *irreg. intr.*, am among, take part in, am present at.
- intervallum**, ī, interval, distance.
- interventus**, ūs, coming on, aid.
- intrā**, *prep. w. acc.*, within.
- intrō**, 1, *tr.*, enter.
- introeō**, **introire**, **introī**, **introitum**, *irreg. intr.*, go in.
- intrōmittō**, **intrōmittere**, **intrōmisī**, **intrōmissus**, 3, *tr.*, send in.
- intus**, *adv.*, within, on the inside.
- inūtilis**, e, useless, worthless, disadvantageous.
- inveniō**, **invenire**, **invēnī**, **inventus**, 4, *tr.*, find.
- inveterāscō**, **inveterāscere**, **inveterāvī**, **inveterātum**, 3, *intr.*, grow old, become established.
- invidia**, ae, envy, hatred.
- invitō**, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon, allure.
- invītus**, a, um, unwilling, reluctant.

- inviu**, a, um, impassable.
involūtus, a, um, wrapped (in).
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self (Gr. 138; 808-812).
ira, ae, anger, wrath.
irācundia, ae, irritability, anger.
irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, 3, *intr.*, get angry.
irrupō, irrupere, irrūpī, irruptus, 3, *tr.*, break into, rush into.
irruptiō, irruptiōnis, a breaking into, attack.
is, ea, id, he, she, it, that (Gr. 128-129; 135; 790-799).
Isabella, ae, Isabella.
Israēl, Israēlis, Israel.
iste, ista, istud, that, this (Gr. 136; 790-799).
ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a manner.
Italia, ae, Italy.
itaque, *conj.*, therefore, and so.
item, *adv.*, in like manner, also, just so.
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, march, route;
iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, *tr.*, march, make a journey; **magnis** (or **maximis**) **itineribus**, by forced marches.
jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, 3, *tr.*, throw, hurl.
jactūra, ae, loss, sacrifice.
jaculum, ī, javelin, dart.
jam, *adv.*, already, now.
Japō, Japōnis, a Japanese.
Japōnia, ae, Japan.
Jerosolyma, ae, Jerusalem.
Jēsuita, ae, *m.*, a Jesuit.
Jēsūs, ū (*declined*: Jēsūs, Jēsū, Jēsū, Jēsum, Jēsū), Jesus.
Jōannēs, Jōannis, John.
Jōsēphus, ī, Joseph.
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*; *ut* (*nē*), order, command.
jūbilātiō, jūbilātiōnis, rejoicing.
jūcunditās, jūcunditātis, delight.
Jūda, *indecl. n.*, the tribe of Judah or its land.
Jūdaeus, a, um, Jewish.
Jūdaeus, ī, a Jew.
jūdex, jūdicis, judge, critic.
jūdicium, ī, judgment, trial.
jūdicō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, judge, decide, think.
jugum, ī, yoke, ridge.
jūmentum, ī, yoke, beast of burden (*cattle, mules, and horses*).
jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūctus, 3, *tr.*, join, unite.
Jūnius, ī, Quintus Junius, a Spaniard in Caesar's service.
Jūra, ae, the Jura Mountains.
jūs, jūris, right, justice, law.
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, oath.
jūstitia, ae, justice, fair dealing.
jūstus, a, um, lawful, just, fair, proper, regular.
juventūs, juventūtis, *f.*, the youth (*within the age group seventeen to forty-five years*).
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus, 1, *tr.*, help.
Labienus (ī), Titus (ī), Titus Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant.
labor, labōris, effort, toil, hardship.
labōrō, 1, *intr.*, toil, work hard, am in difficulty.
laccessō, laccessere, laccessivī, laccessitus, 3, *tr.*, harass, provoke, attack.
lacrimō, 1, *intr.*, weep, cry.
lacus, ūs, lake; **lacus** (ūs) **Lemannus** (ī), Lake Geneva.
laetitia, ae, joy.
laetus, a, um, joyful.
languidius, *comparative adv.*, rather sluggishly.
lātē, *adv.*, widely; **longē** **lātēque**, far and wide.
lateō, latēre, latuī, 2, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, am hidden.
Latīnē, *adv.*, in Latin.
lātius, *comparative adv.*, more widely

- Latobrigī, Latobrigōrum**, the Lato-
brigi, *a Gallic tribe*.
latrō, latrōnis, bandit, robber.
lātus, a, um, wide.
latus, lateris, n., side, flank.
laudātiō, laudātiōnis, praise.
laudō, 1, tr., praise.
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, embassy, legation.
lēgātus, ī, envoy, lieutenant.
legiō, legiōnis, f., legion.
Lemannus, ī, (the lake of) Geneva.
Lemovicēs, Lemovicum, the Lemo-
vices, *a Gallic tribe*.
Leōnidās, Leōnidae, m., Leonidas, *a
Spartan king*.
Levācī, Levācōrum, the Levaci, *a
Belgic tribe*.
levis, e, light, light-minded.
levitās, levitātis, lightness, fickleness.
lēx, lēgis, law.
Lexoviī, Lexoviōrum, the Lexovii, *a
tribe on the northern coast of Gaul*.
libenter, adv., willingly, readily.
liber, libera, liberum, free.
liberē, adv., freely, without restraint.
liberī, liberōrum, children.
liberō, 1, tr., free, liberate.
libertās, libertātis, liberty.
**licet, licēre, licuit, 2, intr.; w. dat. of
person and pres. infin.; acc. w. infin.,
it is lawful, it is allowed.**
Liger, Ligeris (abl. -i), the Loire, *a
river*.
lignātiō, lignātiōnis, procuring of
wood.
limen, liminis, threshold.
Lingonēs, Lingonum, the Lingones, *a
Gallic tribe*.
lingua, ae, tongue, language.
linter, lintris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe.
Litaviccus, ī, Litaviccus, *an Haeduan
nobleman*.
Lithuania, ae, Lithuania.
littera, ae, letter (*of the alphabet*).
litterae, litterārum, letter (an epis-
tle), dispatch, literature
lītus, litoris, n., seashore, shore, beach.
- locus, ī (pl., loca, locōrum)**, place.
longē, adv., far, by far; **longē lātēque**,
far and wide.
longinquus, a, um, distant, remote,
long.
longitūdō, longitūdinis, length, extent,
long duration.
longurius, ī, a long pole.
longus, a, um, long.
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, tr. and
intr.**, talk, speak.
lōrica, ae, breastwork, coat of mail.
Lūcās, ae, Luke.
lūceō, lūcēre, 2, intr., shine.
**Lūcius (ī) Aurunculējus (ī) Cotta
(ae)**, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, *a
lieutenant on Caesar's staff*.
Lūcius (ī) Caesar (Caesaris), Lucius
Caesar, *a kinsman of Julius Caesar.
on his staff*.
Lūcius (ī) Fabius (ī), Lucius Fabius,
a centurion of the eighth legion.
Lūcius (ī) Petrosidius (ī), Lucius
Petrosidius, *a standard-bearer*.
Lucterius, ī, Lucterius, *a chief of the
Cadurci*.
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum, 3, intr.,
play.
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, 2, intr., mourn.
lūmen, lūminis, light.
Lutetia, ae, Lutetia, *the capital of the
Parisiī (now Paris)*.
lūx, lūcis, light; **primā lūce**, at dawn.
luxuriōsē, adv., riotously.
- māceria, ae**, wall.
maestus, a, um, dejected, sad.
Magī, Magōrum, the Magi.
magis, comparative adv., more, rather,
in a higher degree.
magister, magistrī, master.
magistrātus, ūs, magistracy, magis-
trate.
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, size, extent,
greatness.
magnōpere, adv., especially, greatly,
exceedingly.

agnus, a, um, great, large.

agnus, ī, a sage, a wise man, a magician.

agnestās, **agnestātis**, greatness, honor, majesty.

agnor, **agnus**, greater, larger.

agnorēs, **agnorum**, *m.*, ancestors, forefathers.

male, *adv.*, badly.

maledicō, **maledicere**, **maledixī**, **maledictus**, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat.*, revile.

malus, a, um, bad.

mandātum, ī, command, commandment.

mandō, 1, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person*, commit, entrust; *w. ut (nē)*, command.

Mandubii, **Mandubiōrum**, the Mandubii, a Gallic tribe.

manducō, 1, *tr.*, eat.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early.

maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsurus**, 2, *intr.*, remain.

manipulāris, *e*, of a manipule.

manipulāris, **manipulāris**, common soldier.

Manlius, ī, Manlius, a Roman consul.

manus, ūs, *f.*, hand, troop, band.

Mārcus (ī) **Aristius** (ī), Marcus Aristius, a military tribune.

Mārcus (ī) **Crassus** (ī), Marcus Crassus, a quaestor on Caesar's staff.

Mārcus (ī) **Petrōnius** (ī), Marcus Petronius, a centurion of the eighth legion.

Mārcus (ī) **Trebius** (ī) **Gallus** (ī), Marcus Trebius Gallus, a Roman officer.

mare, **maris**, sea. (*Declined like the neuter of gravis*).

Maria, *ae*, Mary.

maritimus, a, um, of the sea; **ōra** (*ae*) **maritima** (*ae*), seacoast.

martyr, **martyris**, martyr.

māter, **mātris** (**mātrum**), mother; **mātrēs** (**mātrum**) **familiae** (**familiārum**), matrons.

māteria, *ae*, material, wood.

Matrona, *ae*, Marne, a river.

mātūrius, *comparative adv.*, early, too early.

mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.*; *w. infin.*, make haste, hasten.

Mauricius, ī, Maurice.

maximē, *adv.*, especially, mostly, mainly, most

Maximiānus, ī, Maximian.

maximus, a, um, greatest, largest.

mediocris, *e*, ordinary, moderate.

medius, a, um, middle (Gr. 851).

melior, **melius**, better.

melius, *comparative adv.*, better.

memini, **meminisse**, *tr.*; *w. gen. of persons, gen. or acc. of things, and acc. of neuter pronouns or adjs.*, remember, bear in mind (Gr. 436-442).

memoria, *ae*, memory; **memoriā tenēō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, keep in memory, remember.

mendācium, ī, lie, falsehood.

mēns, **mentis**, mind, intellect.

mentior, 4, *intr.*, lie.

mercātor, **mercātōris**, merchant.

mercēnārius, ī, hired servant.

mercēs, **mercēdis**, reward.

mereor, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit.

meretrīx, **meretrīcis**, prostitute.

merīdiēs, **merīdiēi**, midday, noon, the south.

meritum, ī, desert, merit, service, favor.

mētior, **mētīrī**, **mēnsus sum**, 4, *tr.*, measure out, distribute.

Metiosēdum, ī, Metiosedum, a town of the Senones (now Melun).

metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, 3, *tr.*, fear.

metus, ūs, fear.

meus, a, um, my, mine.

Mexicānus, ī, a Mexican.

mīles, **militis**, soldier; **tribūnus** (ī) **mīlitum**, military tribune.

mīlia, **mīlium**, thousands; **mīlia passuum**, miles (*lit.*, thousands of paces).

- militāris**, e, military; **rēs** (reī) **militāris** (is), warfare, military matters, science of warfare.
- mille**, *indecl. adj.* (*pl.*, milia, milium, *n.*), thousand; **mille passūs**, a mile (*lit.*, a thousand paces).
- minimē**, *adv.*, very little, by no means, not at all, least.
- minus**, a, um, smallest.
- minister**, ministri, servant.
- minor**, minus, smaller, lesser, less, shorter.
- minuō**, minuere, minui, minutus, 3, *tr.*, lessen, impair.
- minus**, *adv.*, less, too little.
- miser**, misera, miserum, wretched, unfortunate, miserable.
- miserere**; *w. dat. or gen.*, have mercy (on).
- miserecordia**, ae, mercy, compassion.
- misericors** (*gen.* misericordis), merciful.
- mītis**, e, meek.
- mītissimē**, *adv.*, very gently, most gently.
- mittō**, mittere, mīsi, missus, 3, *tr.*, send.
- moderor**, 1, *tr.*, manage, control.
- modo**, *adv.*, only, at least, just now.
- modus**, ī, manner, method, kind, measure.
- mollitia**, ae, weakness.
- mōmentum**, ī, weight, influence, importance.
- moneō**, 2, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, warn, advise.
- mōns**, montis, *m.*, mountain.
- mora**, ae, delay.
- mōre**, according to (the) custom.
- Morini**, Morinōrum, the Morini, *allies of the Veneti*.
- morior**, mori, mortuus sum, 3, *intr.*, die.
- moror**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, delay, hinder, linger.
- mors**, mortis, death.
- Morus** (ī), Thōmas (ae), Thomas More, *an English saint*.
- mōs**, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom; **mōre**, according to (the) custom.
- mōtus**, ūs, uprising, disturbance.
- moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2, *tr.*, move.
- mulier**, mulieris, woman, wife.
- multitūdō**, multitūdinis, great number, multitude, common people.
- multō**, much, by much (Gr. 771).
- multum**, *adv.*, much, greatly.
- multus**, a, um, much (*pl.*, many); **ad multam noctem**, far into the night.
- mundus**, a, um, clean.
- mundus**, ī, world.
- mūniō**, 4, *tr.*, fortify, construct (*w. viam or viās*).
- mūnitiō**, mūnitiōnis, fortification.
- mūnus**, mūneris, *n.*, gift, offering.
- mūrus**, ī, wall.
- myrrha**, ae, myrrh.
- nactus**, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*), having obtained possession of, having met with, having found, having obtained.
- nam**, *conj.*, for.
- Nantuātēs**, Nantuātum, the Nantuates, *an Alpine tribe*.
- Narbō**, Narbōnis, *m.*, Narbo, *a city (now Narbonne)*.
- nāscor**, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, *intr.*, am born.
- nātiō**, nātiōnis, tribe, people.
- nātūra**, ae, nature.
- nātus**, a, um (*perfect participle of nāscor*), born.
- nauta**, ae, sailor.
- nauticus**, a, um, nautical, naval.
- nāvigō**, 1, *intr.*, sail, navigate.
- nāvis**, nāvis (*abl.* nāvī or nāve), ship.
- nē**, *conj.*, *in negative purpose clauses*, that . . . not, *in order clauses*, that . . . not; *in negative noun clauses*, that . . . not; *with volitive subjunctive*, may not, would that not; *with commands, wishes, and hortatory subjunctive*, not.

nō . . . quidem, *adv.*, not even. (*Encloses the word emphasized.*)

-ne, *particle used in asking questions (added to emphatic word—generally the verb—and put first in the sentence).*

nec, *conj.* See **neque**.

necessariō, *adv.*, necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably.

necessarius, *a, um*, necessary, requisite, pressing.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.

necesse est, esse, fuit, *intr.; w. infin.*; *acc. w. infin.*, it is necessary (Gr. 641; 892).

necessitās, necessitātis, necessity, constraint, need.

necō, *1, tr.*, put to death, kill, murder.

nēcubi, *adv.*, that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefarius, *a, um*, wicked, impious.

nefas, *indecl. noun*, crime, enormity.

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi, neglēctus, *3, tr.*, disregard, neglect.

negō, *1, tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, deny, say . . . not.

negōtiōr, *1, intr.*, carry on business, trade.

negōtium, *ī*, business, trouble, difficulty.

nēmō, nēminis (nūllius, nūllō, nūllā usually used in place of nēminis and nēmine), no one. (*Also used sometimes as an adjective.*)

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means, not at all.

neque (nec), *conj.*, nor, and . . . not; **neque . . . neque**, *conjs.*, neither . . . nor.

nēquitia, *ae*, wickedness.

Nervii, Nerviōrum, the Nervii, *bravest of the Belgians*.

Nervius, *ī*, a Nervian.

neu, *conj.*, and not.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither.

nihil, *adv.*, not, not at all.

nihil (nīl), *n.*, *indecl. noun*, nothing.

nihilō minus, none the less, nevertheless.

nīl. See **nihil**.

nimis, *adv.*, too much, exceedingly.

nimius, *a, um*, beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, except, unless.

Nitiobrogēs, Nitiobrogum, the Nitio-broges, *a Gallic tribe*.

nītor, nīti, nixus sum, *3, intr.*, res. upon, rely upon, exert one's self, strive, endeavor.

nix, nivis, snow.

nōbilis, e, noble, renowned.

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, celebrity, noble birth, nobility, the nobility.

noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocitūrus, *2, intr.; w. dat.*, harm, do harm to, injure.

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, *a, um*, nocturnal, nightly.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, irreg., tr. and intr.; w. infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē), do not wish, am unwilling.

nōmen, nōminis, name; **nōmine**, named (by name).

nōminātīm, *adv.*, by name, expressly.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōn modo . . . sed (etiam), not only . . . but also.

nōn possum, posse, potui, irreg., intr.; w. infin., am unable.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnne, *particle used in questions expecting an affirmative answer*.

nōnnūllī, ae, a, some.

nōs, nostrī, we.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, *3, tr.*, become acquainted with; *in perfect*, know.

nostrer, nostra, nostrum, our, ours, our own.

nōtus, *a, um*, known.

Noviodūnum, ī, Noviodunum, *capital of the Suessiones (now Soissons)*.

novitās, novitātis, newness, strangeness.

- novus, a, um, new; novissimum (ī) agmen (agminis), the rear; rēs (rērum) novae (novārum), revolution.
- nox, noctis, night; ad multam noctem, far into the night; noctū, by night.
- nūdō, 1, tr., strip, expose.
- nūllus, a, um, no, none.
- num, *particle used in questions expecting a negative answer; in indirect questions, whether, if* (Gr. 661).
- numerus, ī, number.
- numisma, numismatis, n., coin.
- numquam, adv., never.
- numquid, *an emphatic form of num.*
- nunc, adv., now.
- nuntiō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., announce, report.
- nuntius, ī, messenger, message.
- nūper, adv., recently, lately.
- nūperrimē, adv., most recently.
- ob, *prep. w. acc., on account of, for, because of.*
- objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, 3, tr., throw in the way, place in front.
- obsecrō, 1, tr.; ut (nē), implore, entreat, beseech.
- obsequentia, ae, compliance.
- observō, 1, tr., observe, obey.
- obses, obsidis, c., hostage.
- obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, 2, tr., obstruct, besiege.
- obsidiō, obsidiōnis, siege.
- obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitum, 3, intr.; w. dat., oppose, resist, withstand.
- obstruō, obstruere, obstruxī, obstrūctus, 3, tr., block up, obstruct.
- obtestor, 1, tr., call to witness, beseech, entreat.
- obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, 2, tr., hold, occupy.
- obviam, adv., in the way, to meet.
- obviam, *prep. w. dat., towards, against.*
- occāsio, occasiōnis, occasion, opportunity.
- occāsus, ūs, falling down, setting; sōlis occāsus (ūs), sunset.
- occidēs, occidentis, west.
- occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, 3, tr., kill.
- occultē, adv., secretly.
- occultō, 1, tr., hide, keep secret, conceal.
- occultum, ī, place of concealment, secret.
- occultus, a, um, hidden, concealed, secret.
- occupō, 1, tr., seize.
- occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum, 3, intr.; w. dat., run in the way of, meet, happen upon, come to, oppose, occur.
- ōceanus, ī, the ocean.
- octāvus, a, um, eighth.
- octingenti, ae, a, eight hundred.
- octō, indecl. numeral, eight.
- Octodūrus, ī, Octodurus, a village.
- octōgintā, indecl. numeral, eighty.
- oculus, ī, eye.
- ōdī, ōdisse, tr., hate (*perfect tense with present meaning*; Gr. 443).
- offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus, irreg., tr., bring before, present, offer, confer upon.
- officium, ī, service, allegiance, duty.
- oleum, ī, oil.
- omittō, omittere, omīsī, omissus, 3, tr., let fall, give up, neglect.
- omniñō, adv., in all, altogether, entirely.
- omnipotēns (*gen. omnipotentis*), almighty.
- omnis, e, all, every.
- onerō, 1, tr., burden.
- opera, ae, work, exertion, service; operam dō, dare, dedi, datus, 1, tr., take pains, give attention.
- opēs, opum, resources, wealth.
- opiniō, opiniōnis, opinion, expectation, reputation.

- oportet, oportere, oportuit, 2, intr.;**
acc. w. pres. infin., it behooves, it is necessary.
- oppidānus, a, um,** pertaining to a town.
- oppidānus, ī, a** townsman.
- oppidum, ī, town.**
- oppōnō, oppōnere, opposuī, oppositus, 3, tr.,** place against, place opposite, oppose.
- opportūnus, a, um,** fit, opportune, favorable, advantageous.
- opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus, 3, tr.,** overwhelm, destroy, surprise.
- oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis,** siege, assault.
- oppugnō, 1, tr.,** attack, assault, storm.
- optimus, a, um,** best.
- opus, operis, n.,** work, fortifications.
- opus est, esse, fuit, intr.; w. infin.,** there is need, it is necessary.
- ōra (ae) maritima (ae),** seacoast.
- ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis,** speech, prayer (*in Christian Latin*); **ōrātiōnem habeō, 2, tr.,** deliver a speech.
- orbis, orbis, m.,** ring, circle; **orbis (orbis) terrarum,** world.
- ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.,** rank (*of soldiers*), grade.
- Orgetorix, Orgetorigis,** Orgetorix, *an Helvetian noble.*
- oriēns, orientis,** east.
- orior, oriri, ortus sum, 4, intr.,** rise, arise, start.
- ōrnāmentum, ī,** ornament, mark of honor.
- ōrnātus, a, um,** equipped, fitted out.
- ōrō, 1, tr.; ut (nē),** beg, pray.
- ortus, ūs,** rising.
- ōs, ōris, n.,** mouth.
- ōsculor, 1, tr.,** kiss.
- ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.,** show, reveal, tell, point out.
- ostentātiō, ostentātiōnis,** display, pretense, pride.
- ostentō, 1, tr.,** show, exhibit.
- ōstium, ī,** gate.
- ovis, ovis,** a sheep.
- pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis,** getting fodder, foraging.
- pābulor, 1, intr.,** forage.
- pābulum, ī,** fodder, provender.
- pācifici, pācificōrum,** peacemakers.
- pācificus, a, um,** peacemaking.
- pācō, 1, tr.,** pacify.
- paene, adv.,** almost, nearly.
- pāgus, ī,** district, canton, clan.
- palma, ae,** palm, *symbol of martyrdom.*
- palūs, palūdis,** marsh, swamp.
- pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, 3, tr.,** open.
- pānis, pānis, m.,** bread.
- pannus, ī,** bands, clothes.
- pār (gen. paris); w. dat.,** equal, like.
- parātus, a, um; w. infin. or ad w. acc.,** prepared (for), ready (for).
- parcē, adv.,** frugally, sparingly.
- parcō, parcere, pepercī, parcitūrus, 3, intr.; w. dat.,** spare.
- pārēns, pārentis, c.,** parent, father.
- pāreō, pāreere, pāruī, 2, intr.; w. dat.,** obey, yield to, am subject to.
- Parisiī, Parisiōrum,** the Parisii, *a Gallic tribe.*
- parō, 1, tr.; w. pres. infin.,** prepare, get ready.
- pars, partis,** part, direction.
- partior, 4, tr.,** part, share, divide.
- parum, adv.,** little, too little.
- parum, indecl. noun; w. gen.,** too little, not enough.
- parvus, a, um,** small, little, insignificant.
- pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, 3, tr.,** feed, pasture.
- passus, ūs,** a pace; **mille passūs, a** mile (*lit., a thousand paces*); **mīlia (mīlium) passuum,** miles (*lit., thousands of paces*).
- pāstor, pāstōris,** shepherd.

patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus (*passive, patefiō*), 3, *tr.*, make open, open.

pateō, patēre, patuī, 2, intr., lie open, is open, is passable, stretch out, extend.

pater, patris (patrum), father.

patienter, adv., patiently.

pator, patī, passus sum, 3, tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. infin., suffer, endure, allow.

patria, ae, fatherland.

patrōnus, ī, advocate, lawyer, patron.

paucī, ae, a, few.

paucitās, paucitātis, small number, fewness.

paulatim, adv., gradually, little by little.

paulisper, adv., for a short time, for a little while.

paulō, abl. of degree of difference, by a little, a little; **paulō antea**, shortly before.

Paulus, ī, Paul.

pauper, pauperis, a poor man, poor.

pauperrimus, a, um, very poor.

pāx, pācis, peace.

peccātor, peccātōris, sinner.

peccātum, ī, mistake, sin.

peccō, 1, intr., sin.

pecūnia, ae, property, wealth, money.

pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, a herd.

pedes, peditis, foot soldier (*pl.*, infantry).

pedester, pedestris, pedestre, on foot, foot (*adj.*).

peditātus, ūs, infantry.

Pedius (ī), Quintus (ī), Quintus Pedius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

pējor, pējus, worse.

pējus, comparative adv., worse.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, tr., drive, repulse, rout.

per, prep. w. acc., through, through-out, through the agency of, through the means of; **per omnia saecula saeculōrum**, forever and ever.

peragō, peragere, perēgī, peractus, 3, tr., perform.

percipiō, percipere, percēpī, percep-tus, 3, tr., obtain, learn of, hear.

perditus, a, um, desperate, ruined.

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, 3, tr., lose.

perducō, perducere, perdūxī, perduc-tus, 3, tr., lead through, construct, influence, prolong.

peregrē, adv., abroad.

perendinus, a, um, after tomorrow;

perendinō diē, on the day after tomorrow.

perfectus, a, um, perfect.

perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, irreg., tr., carry through, convey, deliver, report, endure.

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, 3, tr., complete, finish, build, achieve.

perfidia, ae, treachery, perfidy.

perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfractus, 3, tr., break through, burst through.

perfuga, ae, deserter, refugee.

perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitum, 3, intr., flee (*for refuge*), take refuge, desert.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, 3, intr., advance.

perhibeō, 2, tr., give.

periclitor, 1, tr. and intr., try, test, am in danger.

periculum, ī, danger.

peritus, a, um; w. gen., experienced, skilled, familiar with.

perlegō, perlegere, perlēgī, perlēctus, 3, tr., read through.

permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsum, 2, intr., remain, stay, persist, continue.

permisceō, permiscēre, permiscuī, permixtus, 2, tr., mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō,mittere, permīsī, permissus, 3, tr.; ut (nē), give over, entrust, permit.

- permovēō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus**, 2, *tr.*, arouse, influence, affect, incite.
- perpetuō, adv.**, continuously, constantly, forever.
- perpetuus**, a, um, continuous, permanent, whole; in **perpetuum**, forever.
- perscribō, perscribere, perscripsi, perscriptus**, 3, *tr.*, write out, describe.
- persecutiō, persecutiōnis**, persecution.
- persequor, persequi, persecutus sum**, 3, *tr.*, pursue, follow up, avenge, persecute.
- perseverō, 1, intr.**, persist, persevere.
- persōna**, ae, person.
- perspicio, perspicere, perspexi, perspectus**, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, view, inspect, perceive, learn.
- persuadeō, persuādere, persuāsi, persuasum**, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*; *ut (nē)*, persuade.
- perterreō, 2, tr.**, terrify greatly, frighten thoroughly.
- pertinācia**, ae, obstinacy, stubbornness.
- pertineō, pertinere, pertinuī, 2, intr.**; *ad w. acc.*, pertain to, stretch to.
- perturbō, 1, tr.**, confuse, disturb.
- pervenio, pervenire, pervēni, perventum**, 4, *intr.*; *in or ad w. acc.*, arrive, reach, come to.
- pēs, pedis, m.**, foot (*of an animal, mountain, etc., or a unit of measure, 11.65 inches*); **pedem referō, referre, retuli, relātus, irreg., tr.**, retreat, fall back.
- pessimē, adv.**, worst.
- pessimus**, a, um, worst.
- petō, petere, petiī, petitus**, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, seek, beg, request.
- Petrōnius (ī), Mārcus (ī)**, Marcus Petronius, a centurion of the eighth legion.
- Petrosidius (ī), Lūcius (ī)**, Lucius Petrosidius, a standard-bearer.
- Petrus, ī**, Peter.
- phalanx, phalangis**, the phalanx, a closed array formed by interlocking the shields in front and overhead.
- Pharisaeus, ī**, a Pharisee, a Jew who belonged to the rigorous sect of the Pharisees, enemies of Christ.
- Philippinae (Philippinārum), Īnsulae (Īnsulārum)**, Philippine Islands.
- Philippinēnsēs, Philippinēnsium**, the Filipinos.
- Philippinus**, a, um, Philippine.
- Pictonēs, Pictonum**, the Pictones, a Gallic tribe.
- Pilātus, ī**, Pilate.
- pilum, ī**, javelin.
- pious**, a, um, pious.
- placet, placere, placuit, placitum**, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat. of person and infin.*, it pleases, it seems good, it is decided.
- plānitiēs, plānitiēi**, level ground, plain.
- plēnus**, a, um; *w. gen. or abl.*, full.
- plērumque, adv.**, generally, very often.
- Pleumoxii, Pleumoxiōrum**, the Pleumoxii, a Belgic tribe.
- plūrēs, plūra (plural of plūs)**, more.
- plūrimus**, a, um, very many, the greatest number (*pl.*, the most); **plūrimum valeō, valere, valui, valitūrus**, 2, *intr.*, am very powerful.
- plūs, adv.**, more.
- plūs, plūris, n.**; *w. gen.*, more.
- pluteus, ī**, screen, breastwork.
- poena**, ae, punishment, penalty.
- poēta**, ae, poet.
- polliceor**, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin. (usually future)*, promise.
- Pompējus, ī**, Pompey, Roman general and statesman.
- Pompējus (ī), Gnaeus (ī), Gnaeus Pompeius**, an interpreter.
- pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus**, 3, *tr.*, put, place, set, pitch (*w. castra*).
- pōns, pontis, m.**, bridge.
- pontifex, pontificis, m.**, priest.
- populus, ī**, people, nation.
- porcus, ī**, hog.

porta, ae, gate.
portiō, **portiōnis**, share.
portō, 1, *tr.*, carry.
portus, ūs, harbor.
poscō, **poscere**, **poposcī**, 3, *tr.*; *ab* (*ā*)
w. abl. of person, acc. of thing; ut
(nē), ask, demand.
possideō, **possidēre**, **possēdī**, **posses-**
sus, 2, *tr.*, possess.
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, *irreg. intr.; w.*
pres. infin., am able, can (could).
post, *adv.*, afterwards (Gr. 924).
post, *prep. w. acc.*, after, behind.
postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
posteaquam, *conj.*, after, when, as soon
as.
posterī, **posterōrum**, descendants, pos-
terity.
posterus, a, um, after, following, next.
postquam, *conj.*, after.
postrēmō, *adv.*, finally, at last.
potēns (*gen. potentis*), powerful, in-
fluential.
potentia, ae, power, authority, influ-
ence.
potestās, **potestātis**, power, control,
opportunity.
potior, 4, *intr.; w. abl. or gen.*, get
possession of, become master of.
potissimum, *adv.*, especially.
potius, *comparative adv.*, rather.
prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before.
praebeō, 2, *tr.*, hold out, offer, furnish.
praeceptum, ī, order, direction, com-
mand.
praecipio, **praecipere**, **praecēpī**, **prae-**
ceptus, 3, *tr.*, order, bid.
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially, particu-
larly.
praecō, **praecōnis**, herald.
praecurrō, **praecurrere**, **praecurrī**,
praecursum, 3, *intr.*, run before,
precede, surpass.
praeda, ae, prey, plunder.
praefectus, ī, commander, officer, cap-
tain.
praeficiō, **praeficere**, **praefēcī**, **prae-**

fectus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of thing of*
which, put in command of.
praemetuō, **praemetuere**, **praemetuī**,
3, *intr.*, fear, am apprehensive.
praemittō, **praemittere**, **praemisi**,
praemissus, 3, *tr.*, send ahead, send
in advance.
praemium, ī, reward.
praecoccupō, 1, *tr.*, seize upon before-
hand, take possession of.
praerumpō, **praerumpere**, **praerūpī**,
praeruptus, 3, *tr.*, break off, tear
away.
praeruptus, a, um, steep, abrupt.
praesaepiō, **praesaepire**, **praesaepi**,
praesaepitus, 4, *tr.*, hedge, block up.
praesēns (*gen. praesentis*), present.
praesentia, ae, presence.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
praeses, **praesidis**, m., president.
praesidium, ī, garrison, protection.
praestat, **praestāre**, **praestitit**, 1, *intr.*,
it is better, it is advisable.
praestō, **praestāre**, **praestitī**, **praesti-**
tus, 1, *tr. and intr.*, show, supply,
excel, furnish, stand out.
praesum, **praesesse**, **praefuī**, **praefu-**
tūrus, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*, am over,
am in command of, am in charge of.
praeter, *prep. w. acc.*, except, past,
contrary to.
praeterea, *adv.*, besides, furthermore.
praetereō, **praeterīre**, **praeteriī**, **prae-**
teritus, *irreg., tr. and intr.*, go be-
yond, pass by, omit, go by, trans-
gress.
praetermittō, **praetermittere**, **prae-**
termisī, **praetermissus**, 3, *tr.*, send
by, let pass, overlook.
praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except.
prāvus, a, um, perverse, wrong.
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus**, 3,
tr., press, press hard.
pretiōsus a, um, valuable, precious.
prex, **precis**, prayer, entreaty. (*Only*
dative, accusative, and ablative used
in singular.)

- prīdiē**, *adv.*, on the day before.
- prīmum**, *adv.*, first; *cum prīmum*, as soon as; *ut prīmum*, as soon as.
- prīmus**, *a, um*, first; *in prīmīs*, especially; *prīmā lūce*, at dawn.
- prīnceps**, *prīncipis*, chief, leading man.
- prīncipātus**, *ūs*, chief position, leadership.
- prīncipiō**, *in*, in the beginning.
- prīstinus**, *a, um*, former, original, previous.
- prīusquam**, *conj.*, before.
- prō**, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of (before), on behalf of (for), in place of, in proportion to.
- probō**, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, approve, prove.
- prōcēdō**, *prōcēdere*, *prōcessī*, *prōcesum*, *3, intr.*, go forth, go forward, proceed, advance, proceed from.
- prōcidō**, *prōcidere*, *prōcidī*, *3, intr.*, fall down, fall forward.
- prōclīnō**, *1, tr.*, bend forward, incline.
- procul**, *adv.*, afar off, from a distance.
- prōcumbō**, *prōcumbere*, *prōcubui*, *prōcubitum*, *3, intr.*, lean forward, fall down, lie down.
- prōcurrō**, *prōcurrere*, *prōcurri*, *prōcursum*, *3, intr.*, run forward, rush forward, charge.
- prōditiō**, *prōditiōnis*, betrayal, treason.
- prōdō**, *prōdere*, *prōdidī*, *prōditus*, *3, tr.*, hand down, betray.
- prōducō**, *prōducere*, *prōdūxī*, *prōductus*, *3, tr.*, lead forth, protract.
- proelium**, *ī*, battle; *proelium committō*, *committēre*, *commisī*, *commisus*, *3, tr.*, join battle, begin battle.
- profectiō**, *profectiōnis*, setting out, departure.
- prōferō**, *prōferre*, *prōtulī*, *prōlātus*, *irreg., tr.*, bring forth, bring out, produce.
- proficīscor**, *proficīscī*, *profectus sum*, *3, intr.; ad w. acc.*, set out, depart.
- prōficit**, (*it*) profits.
- profiteor**, *profitēri*, *professus sum*, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, admit, declare, offer.
- profugīō**, *profugere*, *profūgī*, *profugitum*, *3, intr.*, flee, flee from, run away, escape.
- prōgredior**, *prōgredī*, *prōgressus sum*, *3, intr.*, go forward, advance, proceed.
- prohibeō**, *2, tr.*, ward off (from), prevent (GR. 649).
- proinde**, *adv.*, hence, accordingly.
- prōjiciō**, *prōjicere*, *prōjēcī*, *prōjectus*, *3, tr.*, throw forward, cast.
- prōmoveō**, *prōmovēre*, *prōmōvī*, *prōmōtus*, *2, tr.*, move forward, advance, push forward.
- prōnuntiō**, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*, announce, give out publicly.
- prope**, *adv.*, almost, nearly, recently.
- prōpellō**, *prōpellere*, *prōpulī*, *prōpulsus*, *3, tr.*, drive forward, rout, dislodge, drive back.
- properō**, *1, intr.; w. infin.*, hasten, hurry.
- prophēta**, *ae, m.*, prophet.
- propinquus**, *a, um*, near, neighboring.
- propinquus**, *ī*, a relative.
- propior**, *propius*, nearer.
- propitius**, *a, um*, favorable, gracious.
- propius**, *comparative adv.*, nearer.
- propius**, *prep. w. acc.*, nearer.
- prōpōnō**, *prōpōnere*, *prōpositus*, *3, tr.*, put forward, offer, explain.
- propter**, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of, because of.
- prōpugnō**, *1, intr.*, fight for, defend, rush out to fight, attack.
- prōspiciō**, *prōspicere*, *prōspexī*, *prōspectum*, *3, intr.; w. dat.*, look forward, see to, provide for.
- prōsternō**, *prōsternere*, *prōstrāvī*, *prōstrātus*, *3, tr.*, prostrate, destroy.
- prōsum**, *prōdesse*, *prōfui*, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*, am useful, benefit.

prōtinus, *adv.*, continuously, forthwith, immediately.

prōvideō, **prōvidēre**, **prōvidī**, **prōvisus**, 2, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, foresee, care for.

prōvincia, *ae*, province.

Prōvinciālēs (**Prōvinciālium**), **Rutēni** (**Rutēnōrum**), the Provincial Ruteni, the part of the tribe within the boundaries of the Roman Province.

proximē, *adv.*, next.

proximus, *a, um*; *w. dat.*, nearest, next.

pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly, officially.

pūblicō, 1, *tr.*, confiscate.

pūblicus, *a, um*, public; **rēs** (**reī**) **pūblica** (*ae*), the state, public affairs, the republic.

Pūblius (**i**) **Crassus** (**i**), Publius Crassus, a lieutenant on the immediate staff of Caesar.

pudet, **pudēre**, **puduit**, 2, *tr.*, it shames, is ashamed, feel shame (Gr. 714-716).

puer, **puerī**, boy.

pugna, *ae*, fight, battle.

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight.

pulcher, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**, beautiful, noble, glorious.

pulsō, 1, *tr.*, knock.

pulsus, *ūs*, stroke.

pūrgō, 1, *tr.*, clean, excuse, exonerate.

putō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, think.

quā, *relative adv.*, where.

quā dē causā, for this reason, wherefore, therefore.

quadringenti, *ae, a*, four hundred.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*, seek, ask.

quaestiō, **quaestiōnis**, inquiry, examination, investigation.

quaestor, **quaestōris**, quaestor, a Roman financial officer.

quam, *adv.*, than; *w. a superlative (with or without possum)*, as . . . as possible.

quantum, *adv.*, as much as, how much.

quantus, *a, um*, how much, how large. **quārē**, *interrogative adv.*, why, wherefore.

quārtus, *a, um*, fourth.

quasi, *adv.*, as it were.

quasi, *conj.*, as if, just as if.

quattuor, *indecl. numeral*, four.

quattuordecim, *indecl. numeral*, fourteen.

-que, *conj.*, and.

queror, **querī**, **questus sum**, 3, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, *relative pronoun*, who, what, which, that; *interrogative adj.*, which, what; **quā dē causā**, for which reason, wherefore, therefore.

quia, *conj.*, because, that (*introducing a noun clause*).

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *general relative pronoun*, whoever, whatever.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, certain (Gr. 820).

quidam, **quiddam**, one, a certain one (Gr. 820).

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least, truly.

quiēs, **quiētis**, rest, repose.

quilibet, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet**, any, every.

quīn, *conj.*, that (Gr. 650-654).

quindecim, *indecl. numeral*, fifteen.

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. numeral*, fifty.

quinque, *indecl. numeral*, five.

quīntus, *a, um*, fifth.

Quīntus (**i**) **Cicerō** (**Cicerōnis**), Quintus Cicero, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

Quīntus (**i**) **Fabius** (**i**), Quintus Fabius, a Roman envoy to the Gauls.

Quīntus (**i**) **Pedius** (**i**), Quintus Pedius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

Quīntus (**i**) **Titūrius** (**i**) **Sabinus** (**i**), Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

Quīntus (**i**) **Velānius** (**i**), Quintus Velanius, a Roman officer.

quis, quid, *interrogative pronoun*, who, what; *indefinite pronoun*, anyone, anything, someone, something (Gr. 841).

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, *indefinite adj.*, some, any (Gr. 818).

quispiam, quidpiam, *indefinite pronoun*, anyone, anything (Gr. 818).

quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything (Gr. 843).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, each, every (Gr. 831-835).

quisque, quidque, each one, every one (Gr. 831-835).

quō, *adv.*, whither, where (*of motion*).

quō, *conj.*, that, in order that (*in purpose clauses containing a comparative adverb or adjective*).

quocumque, *adv.*, wherever.

quod, *conj.*, because.

quoniam, *conj.*, because, for (Gr. 572-573); that (*introducing a noun clause in Christian Latin*).

quoque, *adv.*, also.

quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many.

quotiens, *interrogative adv.*, how often.

quotiens, *relative conj.*, as often as.

rādīx, rādīcis, *f.*, root.

rārus, *a, um*, few.

ratio, ratiōis, method, reason, plan, way, manner.

Rauracī, Rauracōrum, the Rauraci, *a Gallic tribe*.

rebelliō, rebellīōis, renewal of war, revolt.

Rebilus (ī), Gājus (ī) Canīnius (ī), Gaius Caninius Rebilus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

recēns (*gen. recentis*), recent, fresh, new.

recēnsēō, recēnsēre, recēnsuī, recēnsus, *2, tr.*, inspect, review.

receptus, ūs, retreat.

recessus, ūs, going back, retreat.

recidō, recidere, recidi, recāsūrus, *3, intr.*, fall back, fall upon.

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *3, tr.*, take back, receive, accept; *w. reflexive pronoun*, withdraw, recover.

recitō, 1, tr., read aloud.

rēctē, adv., properly, rightly.

recuperō, 1, tr., recover.

recūsō, 1, tr., refuse, reject, object to.

redamō, 1, tr., love (in return).

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, *3, tr.*, give back, return, restore, give, render.

redemptiō, redemptiōis, redemption.

redigō, redigere, redēgī, redactus, *3, tr.*, bring under, reduce.

redintegrō, 1, tr., renew.

redūcō, reducere, redūxī, reductus, *3, tr.*, lead back, draw back.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, irreg., *tr.*, bring back, report, refer; *pedem referre*, to retreat, to fall back.

reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus, *3, tr.*, refresh.

refringō, refringere, refrēgī, refractus, *3, tr.*, break in, break open, break, diminish.

refugiō, refugere, refūgī, refugitum, *3, intr.*, flee back, retreat.

rēgīna, ae, queen.

Rēginus (ī), Gājus (ī) Antistius (ī), Gaius Antistius Reginus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

regiō, regiōis, quarter, region, territory; *ē regiōne*; *w. gen.*, opposite.

rēgnō, 1, intr., reign.

rēgnum, ī, kingdom, royal power.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *3, tr.*, guide, rule.

rejiō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.*, hurl back, drive back, repel.

relēgō, 1, tr., send away, remove.

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, *3, tr.*, leave, leave behind.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, the rest of.

rēmex, rēmigis, a rower, oarsman.

Rēmī, Rēmōrum, the Remi, *a Belgic tribe*.

remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus,
3, *tr.*, send back, return, release.

remōtus, a, um, remote.

removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus,
2, *tr.*, move back, move away, remove, withdraw.

rēmus, ī, oar.

renuntiō, ī, tr., report.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus,
3, *tr.*, beat back, drive back.

repente, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

repentinus, a, um, sudden, unexpected.

reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus, 4,
tr.; acc. w. infin., find (out).

repetō, repetere, repetivī, repetitus,
3, *tr.*, seek again, demand back.

reposcō, reposcere, 3, tr., demand
back, exact.

reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repres-
sus, 3, tr., press back, check, re-
strain.

repugnō, ī, intr., fight back, resist,
oppose.

requirō, requirere, requisivī, requis-
itus, 3, tr., require, demand, desire,
feel the need of.

rēs, rei, thing, affair, matter, deed,
occurrence; **rēs (rērum) adversae**
(**adversārum**), adversity; **rēs (rei)**
familiāris (is), property; **rēs (rei)**
frumentāria (ae), supplies; **rēs (rē-**
rum) gestae (gestārum), exploits,
achievements (*lit.*, things done); **rēs**
(**rei**) **militāris (is)**, warfare, military
matters, science of warfare; **rēs**
(**rērum**) **novae (novārum)**, revolution;
rēs (rei) pública (ae), the
state, the republic, public affairs.

rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescis-
sus, 3, tr., cut away, cut down,
break down, destroy.

reservō, ī, tr., keep back, reserve.

resideō, residēre, resēdī, 2, intr., sit
back, remain.

residō, residere, resēdī, 3, intr., settle,
become calm.

resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, intr.; w.

dat., remain behind, resist, with-

stand.
respiō, respicere, respexī, respectus,
3, *tr.*, look back, regard, consider,
look to.

respondeō, respondēre, respondi, re-
spōnsus, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin., an-

swer.

respōnsum, ī, answer.
restituō, restituere, restitui, restitū-
tus, 3, tr., set up again, rebuild, re-
new.

resurrectiō, resurrectiōnis, resurrec-
tion.

retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentus, 2,
tr., hold back, keep.

revertor, revertī, revertī or reversus
sum, 3, intr., return.

revivō, revivere, revixī, revicturus,
3, *intr.*, come to life.

revocō, ī, tr., call back.

rēx, rēgis, king.

Rhēnus, ī, the Rhine, a river.

Rhodanus, ī, the Rhone, a river.

ripa, ae, bank (of a river).

ritus, ūs, rite.

rivus, ī, stream, brook.

rōbur, rōboris, n., strength.

rogō, ī, tr.; ut (nē), ask, request.

Rōma, ae, Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.

Rōmānus, ī, a Roman.

rosa, ae, rose.

rōstrum, ī, beak, prow (armored).

rūrsus, adv., again.

Rutēnī, Rutēnōrum, the Ruteni, a
Gallic clan.

Rutēnī (Rutēnōrum) Prōvinciālēs
(**Prōvinciālium**), the Provincial Ru-
teni, the part of the tribe within the
boundaries of the Roman Province.

Sabīnus (ī), Quīntus (ī) Titūrius (ī),
Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieuten-
ant on Caesar's staff.

sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, priest.

sacrāmentum, ī, sacrament, mystery.

saeculum, ī, age, world; in **saecula saeculōrum**, world without end, forever; **per omnia saecula saeculōrum**, forever and ever.

saepe, adv., often.

saeviō, 4, intr., rage, am fierce.

saginātus, a, um, fattened.

sagitta, ae, arrow.

sagittārius, ī, bowman, archer.

salūs, salūtis, safety, welfare, salvation.

salūtāris, e, salutary, saving.

salvātor, salvātōris, savior.

Samarobrīva, ae, Samarobriva, a town in northern Gaul.

sanciō, sancire, s̄anxī, sānetus, 4, tr., make sacred, sanction.

sānctitās, sānctitātis, holiness.

sānetus, a, um, holy.

sānetus, ī (sāncta, ae), a saint.

sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.

sānitās, sānitātis, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity.

Santonēs, Santonum, the Santones; or **Santonī, Santonōrum**, the Santoni, a tribe along the seacoast.

sapiō, sapere, sapivī, 3, intr., am wise, understand.

sarcina, ae, pack (carried by the individual soldier).

satis, adv., sufficiently, enough.

satis, indecl. noun; w. gen., enough, sufficient.

satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum (passive, satisfiō), 3, intr.; w. dat., do enough for, give satisfaction, satisfy, make amends.

saturō, 1, tr., satisfy, fill.

saucius, a, um, wounded.

saxum, ī, rock.

schismaticus, ī, schismatic, here members of the Orthodox Church.

scientia, ae, knowledge, science, skill.

sciō, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin., know.

Scipiō, Scipiōnis, Scipio, the name of several great Roman generals.

sciscitor, 1, intr., ask, inquire.

scriba, ae, m., scribe.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin., write.

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, 1, tr., cut, reap.

secundum, prep. w. acc., according to, along.

secundus, a, um, second, favorable, successful; **secundō flūmine**, downstream.

secūris, secūris, axe.

sed, conj., but.

sedeō, sedere, sēdī, 2, intr., sit.

Sedulius, ī, Sedulius, a chief of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, Sedūnōrum, the Seduni, an Alpine tribe.

Segusiāvī, Segusiāvōrum, the Segusiavi, a Gallic tribe.

sēmet ipsum, an emphatic form of **sē**.

semper, adv., always.

sempiternus, a, um, everlasting.

senātus, ūs, senate.

senior, senius, older.

Senonēs, Senonum, the Senones, a tribe in central Gaul.

sēnsus, ūs, sense, feeling.

sententia, ae, opinion, vote, sentence.

sentīō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin., feel, perceive, think.

sēparātīm, adv., separately.

sēparō, 1, tr., separate.

septem, indecl. numeral, seven.

septentrionēs, septentrionum, the stars of the Great Bear; hence, the north.

septimus, a, um, seventh.

septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.

septuāgintā, indecl. numeral, seventy.

sepultūra, ae, burial.

Sēquana, ae, the Sequana or Seine, a river.

Sēquanus, ī, a Sequanian.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3, tr., follow, pursue.

sermō, sermōnis, m., speech, conversation.

- sēro**, *adv.*, too late, late.
serviō, 4, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, serve.
servitūs, *servitūtis*, slavery.
Servius (ī) Galba (ae), Servius Galba,
one of Caesar's lieutenants.
servō, 1, *tr.*, guard, keep.
servus, ī, slave, servant.
sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.
seu . . . seu, if . . . or if, whether
. . . or.
sevērus, a, um, severe, exacting.
sex, *indecl. numeral*, six.
sexāgintā, *indecl. numeral*, sixty.
Sextius (ī), Titus (ī), Titus Sextius,
a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sī modo, *conj.*, if only (Gr. 594).
sic, *adv.*, thus, so, in such a manner.
Sicilia, ae, Sicily.
sicut, *conj.*, as, just as.
significō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, make
signs, show, indicate, signify.
signum, ī, standard, signal, sign.
silentiō, *adv.*, silently.
silentium, ī, silence, stillness.
sileō, silēre, siluī, 2, *intr.*, am silent,
keep silent.
siliqua, ae, husk.
Silius (ī), Titus (ī), Titus Silius, a
Roman officer.
silva, ae, forest.
silvestris, e, wooded, in a forest.
similis, e; *w. gen. or dat.*, like, similar.
similitūdō, *similitūdinis*, likeness, re-
semblance.
simplex (*gen. simplicis*), simple.
simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time,
together.
simul atque, *conj.*, as soon as.
simulatiō, *simulatiōnis*, pretense.
sīn, *conj.*, but if, if however.
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
singillatim, *adv.*, one by one, singly.
singulāris, e, one by one, single, ex-
traordinary.
singulāriter, *adv.*, alone.
singulī, ae, a, one at a time, each.
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left.
sitiō, 4, *tr.*, thirst, thirst for.
situs, ūs, *m.*, situation, site.
sive . . . sive, either . . . or.
societās, *societātis*, society.
socius, ī, companion, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; sōlis occāsus
(ūs), sunset.
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2, *intr.*, am
wont, am accustomed.
sōlitūdō, *sōlitūdinis*, wilderness, des-
ert.
sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, stir up, instigate.
sollicitūdō, *sollicitūdinis*, anxiety,
worry, apprehension.
sōlus, a, um, alone, only.
somnium, ī, dream.
sonitus, ūs, sound, din.
sonus, ī, sound.
Sophronia, ae, Sophronia, a girl's
name.
spatium, ī, space, extent, interval.
spectō, 1, *tr.*, look at, regard, face.
speculātor, *speculātōris*, spy, scout.
spērō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.* (usually
future), hope, hope for.
spēs, speī, hope.
spīritus, ūs, breath, spirit.
splendor, *splendōris*, splendor.
spoliō, 1, *tr.*, strip, despoil.
sponte suā, of his (their) own ac-
cord.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, 3,
tr.; *w. infin.*, set up, place, deter-
mine.
status, ūs, condition, position.
stella, ae, star.
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, 1, *intr.*, stand.
stola, ae, robe.
studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *intr.*; *w.*
dat. or pres. infin., am eager (for),
strive (after), am devoted (to).
studium, ī, zeal, eagerness, desire, de-
votion, occupation, study.
stultitia, ae, foolishness, folly.
suāvis, e, sweet, gentle.

- sub**, *prep. w. abl.*, under, at the foot of; *prep. w. acc.*, under, beneath, up to, about (*of time*), toward (*of time*).
- subdō**, *subdere*, *subdidī*, *subditus*, 3, *tr.*, subject to.
- subeō**, *subire*, *subiī*, *subitus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*, go under, come up to, undergo, endure.
- subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly.
- subitus**, a, um, sudden, unexpected.
- subjiō**, *subjicere*, *subjēcī*, *subjectus*, 3, *tr.*, throw under, make subject, subject, conquer.
- sublevō**, 1, *tr.*, lift from beneath, support, assist, lighten.
- sublica**, ae, pile, stake.
- submoveō**, *submovēre*, *submōvī*, *submōtus*, 2, *tr.*, move away, drive away, dislodge.
- subsequor**, *subsequī*, *subsecūtus sum*, 3, *tr.*, follow closely, follow up, follow on.
- subsidium**, ī, reserves, help, aid.
- substantia**, ae, substance.
- subsum**, *subesse*, *subfuī*, *irreg.*, *intr.*, am under, am near, am close at hand.
- subveniō**, *subvenīre*, *subvēnī*, *subventum*, 4, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, come to help, aid.
- succēdō**, *succēdere*, *successī*, *successum*, 3, *intr.*, come up to, advance, am next to.
- succumbō**, *succumbere*, *succubui*, *succubitus*, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, sink under, yield.
- succurrō**, *succurrere*, *succurrī*, *succursum*, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, run to help, aid, assist.
- Suēbī**, *Suēbōrum*, the Suebi, a powerful German tribe.
- suffrāgium**, ī, vote, ballot.
- suī**, himself (him), herself (her), itself (it), themselves (them); *inter sē dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datus*, 1, *tr.*, exchange.
- sum**, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, *irreg.*, *intr.*, am.
- summa**, ae, the main point, sum total, the whole, control.
- summus**, a, um, highest, greatest, very great.
- sūmō**, *sūmere*, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*, 3, *tr.*, take, assume.
- super**, *prep. w. acc.*, over, on, above.
- superior**, *superius*, higher, previous, former.
- superō**, 1, *tr.*, overcome, conquer, surpass.
- superscriptiō**, *superscriptiōnis*, superscription.
- supersum**, *superesse*, *superfuī*, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*, am over, remain, survive.
- suppetō**, *suppetere*, *suppetivī*, *suppetitum*, 3, *intr.*, am at hand, am supplied, hold out.
- supplēmentum**, ī, a filling up, reinforcements, help.
- supplicatiō**, *supplicatiōnis*, public prayer (*to the gods*), thanksgiving.
- suppliciter**, *adv.*, humbly.
- supplicium**, ī, punishment, death.
- supportō**, 1, *tr.*, convey, supply, furnish.
- suprā**, *adv.*, above.
- suprā**, *prep. w. acc.*, above.
- suprēmus**, a, um, highest.
- surgō**, *surgere*, *surrēxī*, *surrēctum*, 3, *intr.*, arise.
- suscipiō**, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*, 3, *tr.*, undertake, take (upon oneself).
- suspiciō**, *suspiciōnis*, suspicion, distrust, indication.
- sustentō**, 1, *tr.*, hold up, sustain, hold out, endure.
- sustineō**, *sustinēre*, *sustinuī*, *sustentus*, 2, *tr.*, sustain, withstand.
- suus**, a, um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own); *suā sponte*, of his (their) own accord.
- symphōnia**, ae, music.

tālis, *e*, such, of such a kind.
 tam, *adv.*, so, to such a degree; tam . . . quam, both . . . and.
 tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless.
 tametsī, *conj.*, although, though (Gr. 598).
 tamquam, *adv.*, so.
 tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally.
 tantum, *adv.*, so much, only.
 tantus, *a, um*, so great.
 Tasgetius, *i*, Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes.
 tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *3, tr.*, cover, hide, protect, defend.
 tēlum, *i*, dart.
 temere, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason.
 temeritās, temeritātis, rashness, indiscretion.
 tēmetipsō, an emphatic form of tē.
 tempestās, tempestātis, storm, weather.
 temporālis, *e*, temporal.
 temptō, *1, tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack.
 tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.
 tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, *3, tr.*, stretch, spread out, aim.
 tenebrae, tenebrarum, darkness.
 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, *2, tr.*, hold; memoriā tenēre, *w. acc. or acc. w. infin.*, to remember.
 tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.
 tentō, *1, tr.*, tempt.
 tenuitās, tenuitātis, thinness, poverty.
 tergum, *i*, back, rear; tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *3, tr.*, retreat.
 terminus, *i*, limit.
 terra, *ae*, earth, land; orbis (orbis) terrarum, world.
 Terrasidius (i), Titus (i), Titus Terrasidius, a Roman officer.
 terreō, *2, tr.*, terrify.
 territō, *1, tr.*, frighten, terrify, alarm.
 terror, terrōris, alarm, panic, terror.
 tertius, *a, um*, third.
 testimōnium, *i*, testimony, evidence, witness.

testis, testis, *m*, witness.
 testūdō, testūdinis, tortoise, shed, testudo.
 Teutonēs, Teutonum, the Teutones, a German tribe.
 thēsauros, *i*, treasure.
 Thōmas, Thōmae, *m.*, Thomas.
 thūs, thūris, incense.
 Tiberis, Tiberis, *m.*, the Tiber, a river which flows through Rome.
 timeō, timēre, timuī, *2, tr.*, fear, am afraid; nē (nē nōn, ut); *w. infin.*, fear (to) (Gr. 642-644).
 timor, timōris, fear.
 Timotheus, *i*, Timothy.
 Titūrius, *i*. See Sabīnus, Quīntus Titūrius.
 Titus (i) Labiēnus (i), Titus Labienus, Caesar's trusted lieutenant.
 Titus (i) Sextius (i), Titus Sextius, a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.
 Titus (i) Silius (i), Titus Silius, a Roman officer.
 Titus (i) Terrasidius (i), Titus Terrasidius, a Roman officer.
 tolerō, *1, tr.*, endure, hold out.
 tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *3, tr.*, lift up, take away; *passive*, am elated.
 Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, Tolosates, the inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).
 tormentum, *i*, device for hurling missiles; *i. e.*, artillery.
 torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, *2, tr.*, scorch, burn.
 tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.
 tōtus, *a, um*, whole, all of, the whole of.
 trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *3, tr.*, hand over.
 trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trādūctus, *3, tr.*; *two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.*, lead across, lead over.
 trāgula, *ae*, javelin, dart.
 tranquillitās, tranquillitātis, calm.
 trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.

- trānscondō, trānscondere, trānscondī, trānscondēsus, 3, *tr. and intr.*, climb over, board.
- trānsēō, trānsīre, trānsī(-īvī), trānsītus, *irreg., tr.*, go across, cross, pass.
- trānsferō, trānsferre, trānstulī, trāns-lātus, *irreg., tr.*, carry over, bring over, transfer.
- trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trāns-fixus, 3, *tr.*, thrust, pierce through, transfix.
- trānsgridior, trānsgridī, trānsgressus sum, 3, *tr.*, step over, cross, cross over.
- trānsitus, ūs, crossing, passage.
- trānsportō, 1, *tr.*, transport, carry across.
- Trebius, ī, Marcus Trebius Gallus, a Roman officer.
- Trebōnius (ī), Gājus (ī), Gaius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- trēs, tria, three (GR. 116).
- Trēverī, Trēverōrum, the Treveri, a powerful Gallic tribe.
- tribūnus, ī, tribunc; tribūnus (ī) mīlitum, military tribune.
- tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtus, 3, *tr.*, assign, grant, render.
- tribūtum, ī, tribute.
- trīdium, ī, (a period of) three days.
- trīgintā, *indecl. numeral*, thirty.
- trīnī, ae, a, three.
- tripertītō, *adv.*, in three parts, in three divisions.
- triplex (*gen. triplicis*), triple.
- triumphō, 1, *intr.*, triumph.
- tū, tuī, you (*sing.*).
- tuba, ae, trumpet.
- tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum, 2, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect.
- Tulingī, Tulingōrum, the Tulingi, *al-lies of the Helvetians*.
- tum, *adv.*, then, at that time.
- tumultuor, 1, *intr.*, make a disturbance.
- tumultus, ūs, uproar, confusion, disorder.
- tunc, *adv.*, then.
- turba, ae, crowd, multitude.
- turbō, turbinis, *m.*, whirlwind.
- turma, ae, troop, squadron.
- turpis, e, ugly, shameful, disgraceful.
- turpiter, *adv.*, disgracefully, basely, cowardly.
- turris, turris (*acc. turrim*), tower.
- tūtō, 1, *tr.*, defend.
- tūtō, *adv.*, safely, securely.
- tūtus, a, um, safe.
- tuus, a, um, your, yours, your own (*when referring to one person*).
- ubi, *adv.*, where, in which place.
- ubi, *conj.*, where, when.
- ubique, *adv.*, everywhere.
- ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, 3, *tr.*, avenge, punish.
- ūllus, a, um, any; *as a noun*, anyone.
- ulterior, ulterius, farther, more remote; Gallia (ae) Ulterior (Ulte-riōris), Farther Gaul.
- ultimus, a, um, farthest, last, most remote; *as a noun*, those in the rear.
- ultrō, *adv.*, of one's own accord, vol-untarily, spontaneously, without provocation, besides, moreover.
- ululātus, ūs, yell, shriek.
- umerus, ī, shoulder.
- umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever.
- ūnā, *adv.*, along with, together.
- unde, *adv.*, whence, from where.
- ūndecim, *indecl. numeral*, eleven.
- ūndecimus, a, um, eleventh.
- ūndēvigintī, *indecl. numeral*, nineteen.
- undique, *adv.*, from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.
- ungō, ungere, unxī, unctus, 3, *tr.*, anoint.
- ūnigenitus, a, um, only-begotten.
- ūnitās, ūnitātis, unity.
- ūniversālis, e, universal.
- ūniversī, ae, a, all together, all.
- ūnus, a, um, one; ad ūnum, to a man, without exception (*generally with omnēs*).

urbs, urbis, city.

usque, *adv.*, all the way (to), even (to), up (to).

usus, ūs, use, experience, skill.

ut, *conj.*, in purpose clauses, that, in order that; in noun clauses and result clauses, that.

ut nōn, in negative result clauses and negative noun clauses, that . . . not.

ut primum, *conj.*, as soon as.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque (*gen. sing. utriusque; dat. sing. utrique*), each (of two), both (of two).

utilis, e; *ad w. acc.*, useful (for).

utinam, may, would that (*particle used with subjunctive in wishes*).

utique, *adv.*, certainly.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *intr.*; *w. abl.*, use, employ, exercise.

utrimque, *adv.*, on each side, on both sides.

uxor, uxōris, wife.

vadum, ī, ford, shallow.

vagor, 1, *intr.*, roam about, rove, wander.

valdē, *adv.*, exceedingly.

valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus, 2, *intr.*, am strong, am vigorous, am influential; plūrimum valēre, to be very powerful.

valētūdō, valētūdinis, health.

vallēs, vallis, valley.

vallum, ī, wall, rampart.

varius, a, um, diverse, changing, various.

vastō, 1, *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vehementer, *adv.*, greatly, violently.

Veīi, Veīōrum, Veīi, a city of Etruria.

vel, *adv. w. superlative*, even.

vel, *conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, *conjs.*, either . . . or.

Velānius (ī), Quīntus (ī), Quintus Velanius, a Roman officer.

Vellaunodunum, ī, Vellaunodunum, a town of the Senones.

vēlō, 1, *tr.*, veil.

vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly.

Venellī, Venellōrum, the Venelli, a Gallic tribe.

veneror, 1, *tr.*, venerate, reverence.

Venetī, Venetōrum, the Veneti, the most important tribe of the seacoast.

Venetia, ae, Venetia, the country of the Veneti.

venia, ae, indulgence, favor, pardon.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *intr.*, come.

venter, ventris, belly.

ventus, ī, wind.

Veragrī, Veragrōrum, the Veragri, an Alpine tribe.

vērāx (*gen. vērācis*), truthful.

verbum, ī, word, the Word. *second person of the Blessed Trinity*.

Vercassivellaunus, ī, Vercassivellaunus, an Arvernian leader.

Vercingetorix, Vercingetorīgis, Vercingetorix, leader of the rebellion in Gaul.

vērē, *adv.*, truly.

vereor, 2, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin. or nē (ut)*, fear (to) (Gr. 642-644).

vērītās, vērītātis, truth.

vērō, *adv.*, in truth, but, however.

versor, 1, *intr.*, be, remain, engage in.

versus, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, towards. (*Usually follows the word to which it is joined.*)

Verticō, Verticōnis, m., Vertico, a Nervian.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, 3, *tr.*, turn; tergum vertere, to retreat.

vērūs, a, um, true.

vesper, vesperī, evening.

vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours, your own (*when referring to more than one person*).

vestītus, ūs, clothing.

veterānus, a, um, veteran.

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*, forbid.

vī, violently, by force.

- via**, *ae*, road, way; **viam mūniō**, 4, *tr.*, construct a road.
victima, *ae*, victim.
victor, **victōris**, victor.
victōria, *ae*, victory.
vīcus, *i*, hamlet, village.
videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **vīsus**, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*, see, perceive, understand.
videor, **vidērī**, **vīsus sum**, 2, *intr.*; *w. infin.*, am seen, seem, appear, seem best, seem proper.
Vienna, *ae*, Vienna, *modern Vienne in France*.
vigilia, *ae*, watch.
vīgintī, *indecl. numeral*, twenty.
villa, *ae*, country estate.
vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus**, 3, *tr.*, conquer.
vindicō, 1, *tr.*, claim, set free, deliver, inflict punishment.
vīnea, *ae*, vine arbor, shed (*for the defense of a besieging party*).
vir, **virī**, man.
vīrēs, **vīrium**, *f.*, strength, force.
Viridomārus, *i*, Viridomarus, *a chief of the Haedui*.
viriliter, *adv.*, manfully.
virītim, *adv.*, to each one, individually.
virtūs, **virtūtis**, courage, virtue, value, merit, energy, manliness.
vīs (*acc. vim*; *abl. vī*), force, power, violence; **vim faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, 3, *tr.*, use force.
vīsibilis, *e*, visible.
vīta, *ae*, life.
vītō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, escape.
vitulus, *i*, calf.
vīvō, **vīvere**, **vīxī**, **vīctūrus**, 3, *intr.*, live.
vīvus, *a*, *um*, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, hardly, barely, with difficulty.
vocō, 1, *tr.*; *two accs.*, call.
Volcae (**Volcārum**) **Arecomici** (**Arecomicōrum**), the Volcae Arecomici, *a tribe within the Roman Province*.
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*; *ut (nē)*, am willing, wish.
voluntās, **voluntātis**, will, desire, good will, consent.
voluptās, **voluptātis**, pleasure.
vōs, **vestrī**, you (*pl.*).
vōx, **vōcis**, voice, cry.
vulnerō, 1, *tr.*, wound.
vulnus, **vulneris**, *n.*, wound.
Washington, *indecl. n.*, Washington, *the city*.
Washingtonius, *i*, Washington (George).

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

- able**, am, possum, posse, potuī, *irreg.*,
intr.; *w. pres. infin.*
- about** (= concerning), dē, *prep. w. abl.*; (*referring to time*), sub, *prep. w. acc.*
- absent**, am, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *ab (ā) w. abl.*; dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- abundance**, cōpia, ae.
- accept**, accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, 3, *tr.*; recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, 3, *tr.*
- accomplish**, cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, 3, *tr.*
- account of**, on, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
- accustomed**, am (have accustomed, have become accustomed), cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus, 3, *tr. and intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- across**, trāns, *prep. w. acc.*
- across**, go, trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī(-ivī), trānsitus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
- across**, lead, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, *tr.*; *two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.*
- act**, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, *tr.*
- address**, appellō, 1, *tr.*
- advance**, prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3, *intr.*
- advance to**, aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, 3, *tr.*
- advise**, moneō, 2, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.
- affair**, rēs, reī.
- affirm**, cōfirmō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- afraid**, am, timeō, timēre, timuī, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*
- after**, post, *prep. w. acc.*; postquam, *conj.*
- afterwards**, postea, *adv.*
- against**, contrā; in, *preps. w. acc.*
- aid**, adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, 1, *tr.*
- aid**, auxilium, ī.
- alarm**, commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, 2, *tr.*
- all**, omnis, e.
- all of**, tōtus, a, um (Gr. 84).
- all sides**, from, undique, *adv.*; **on all sides**, undique, *adv.*
- all the way** (to), usque, *adv.*
- all together**, ūniversī, ae, a.
- allow**, committō, committere, commisī, commissus, 3, *tr.*; patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- ally**, socius, ī.
- almost**, ferē, *adv.*; prope, *adv.*
- alone**, sōlus, a, um (Gr. 84).
- Alps**, Alpēs, Alpium, *f.*
- also**, etiam, *adv.*
- always**, semper, *adv.*
- am**, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*
- am able**, possum, posse, potuī, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- am absent**, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *ab (ā) w. abl.*; dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- am accustomed**, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus, 3, *intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- am afraid**, timeō, timēre, timuī, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*
- am away**, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *ab (ā) w. abl.*
- am devoted** (to), studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- am distant**, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *ab (ā) w. abl.*
- am done**, fiō, fierī, factus sum, *irreg.*, *intr.*
- am eager** (for), studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat. or pres. infin.*
- am elated**. *Use passive of tollō*, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, *tr.*
- am in charge of**, praesum, praeesse,

praefuī, praefutūrus, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*
am in command of, praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*
am lacking, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*
am made, fiō, fierī, factus sum, *irreg., intr.*
am over (= **am in charge of**), praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *irreg., intr.; w. dat.*
am unable, nōn possum, posse, potuī, *irreg., intr.; w. infin.*
am willing, volō, velle, voluī, *tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
America, America, ae.
American (*noun*), Americānus, ī; (*adj.*), Americānus, a, um.
among, apud, *prep. w. acc.; inter, prep. w. acc.*
ancestors, mājōrēs, mājōrum, *m.*
and, et, *conj.*; **atque** (ac), *conj.*; **-que**, *conj.*; **and . . . not**, neque, *conj.*
and so, itaque, *conj.*
announce, nuntiō, *1, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
another, alius, alia, aliud (Gr. 85-86).
another's, aliēnus, a, um.
answer, respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōsus, *2, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
any, ūllus, a, um (Gr. 84).
approach, adeō, adīre, adiī(-īvī), aditus, *irreg., tr.; appropinquō, 1, intr.; w. dat. or ad w. acc.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī.
arise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *4, intr.*
arms, arma, armōrum.
army, exercitus, ūs; (*on the march*), agmen, agminis.
arouse, commōveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *2, tr.; incitō, 1, tr.; permōveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, 2, tr.*
arrival, adventus, ūs.
arrive, perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *4, intr.; in or ad w. acc.*

as, sicut, *conj.*
as soon as, ut primum; cum primum, *conjs.*
ask, quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *3, tr.; ut (nē); rogō, 1, tr.; ut (nē).*
assault, oppugnō, *1, tr.*
assemble, conveniō, convenīre, convenī, conventum, *4, intr.*
assume, sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tus, *3, tr.*
at, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
at dawn, primā lūce.
at once, statim, *adv.*
at that time, tum, *adv.*
at the foot of, sub, *prep. w. abl.*
attack, aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, *3, tr.; oppugnō, 1, tr.*
attack, impetus, ūs.
attempt, cōnor, *1, tr.; w. pres. infin.*
attend to, administrō, *1, tr.; animad-vertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
Augustus, Augustus, ī.
authority, auctōritās, auctōritātis.
away, am, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg., intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
away, lead, dēducō, dēducere, dēdūxī, dēductus, *3, tr.*
away, send, dīmīttō, dīmītere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus, *3, tr.*
away, take, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *3, tr.; w. dat. of person or thing from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w. abl.; tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, tr.*
away from, ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*
back, beat, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *3, tr.*
back, bring, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irreg., tr.*
back, draw, redūcō, reducere, redūxī, reductus, *3, tr.*
back, drive, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, *3, tr.; repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, 3, tr.*

- back, fall, pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
back, hold, retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentus, 2, *tr.*
back, hurl, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, 3, *tr.*
back, lead, reducō, reducere, redūxī, reductus, 3, *tr.*
back, press, reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, *tr.*
back, send, remittō, mittere, remīsī, remissus, 3, *tr.*
back, take, recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, 3, *tr.*
bad, malus, a, um.
badly, male, *adv.*
baggage, impedimenta, impedimentōrum; baggage train, impedimenta, impedimentōrum.
barbarian (*noun*), barbarus, ī; (*adj.*), barbarus, a, um.
battle, proelium, ī; begin battle, join battle, proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, 3, *tr.*
battle line, aciēs, aciēi.
be. See am.
be unwilling, nōlī, nōlīte (*imperative of nōlō*); *w. pres. infin.*
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
beat back, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, 3, *tr.*
because, quia; quod; quoniam, *conj.*;
because of, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
become, fiō, fierī, factus sum, *irreg.*, *intr.*
become accustomed, have, cōsuēvī, cōsuētus, 3, *intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
become master of, potior, 4, *intr.*; *w. abl. or gen.*
before, ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*; prō, *prep. w. abl.*
beg, ōrō, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*; petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
begin battle, proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, 3, *tr.*
beginning, in the, in principiō.
begun, have, coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
behalf of, on, prō, *prep. w. abl.*
behind, post, *prep. w. acc.*
behind, leave, relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 3, *tr.*
behind, remain, resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
behooves, it, oportet, oportere, oportuit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*
believe, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, 3, *tr. and intr.*; *w. dat. of person in whom; acc. w. infin.*
beneath, sub, *prep. w. acc.*
best, optimus, a, um.
betake oneself, mē (tē, sē) cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
better (*adj.*), melior, melius; (*adv.*), melius.
between, inter, *prep. w. acc.*
bitterly, ācritē, *adv.*
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
bold, audāx (*gen. audācis*).
both (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque (*gen. sing. utriusque, dat. sing. utriusque*).
both . . . and, et . . . et, *conj.*
boy, puer, puerī.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
breath, spīritus, ūs.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
bring about, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (ut nōn or nē)*.
bring back, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
bring together, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactus, 3, *tr.*; cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*
bring (upon), īferō, īferre, ītulī, illātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person.*
British, Britannī, Britannōrum.
Briton, Britannus, ī.
brother, frāter, frātris (frātrum).
Brutus, Brūtus, ī.

burn, incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsus, 3, *tr.*

but, sed; at, *conj.*

by, ab (ā), *prep. w. abl.*

by far, longē, *adv.*

by force, vi.

by name, nōmine.

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris.

call, appellō, 1, *tr.*; two accs.; vocō, 1, *tr.*; two accs.

call upon, appellō, 1, *tr.*

Camillus, Camillus, i.

camp, castra, castrōrum; **pitch camp**, castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, *tr.*

can, possum, posse, potuī, *irreg., intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*

capture, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, *tr.*

careful, diligēns (*gen. diligentis*).

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *irreg., tr.*; gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, *tr.*; portō, 1, *tr.*

carry on, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, *tr.*

Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, Carthāginiēnsium.

cast down, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, 3, *tr.*

catch sight of, cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, *tr.*

cause, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (ut nōn or nē)*.

cause, causa, ae.

cavalry, equitātus, ūs; equitēs, equitum.

centurion, centuriō, centuriōnis.

certain, certus, a, um.

charge of, am in, praesum, praeesse, praeuī, praeutūrus, *irreg., intr.*; *w. dat.*

charity, cāritās, cāritātis.

check, reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, *tr.*

chief, princeps, principis; **commander in chief**, imperātor, imperātōris.

Christ, Christus, i.

Christian (*noun*), Christiānus, i; (*adj.*), Christiānus, a, um.

Cicero, Cicerō, Cicerōnis.

city, urbs, urbis.

cohort, cohors, cohortis.

collect, cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, cōactus, 3, *tr.*

Columbus, Columbus, i.

column (*of soldiers*), agmen, agminis.

come, veniō, venīre, venī, ventum, 4, *intr.*

come together, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, 4, *intr.*

coming, adventus, ūs.

command, imperō, 1, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person*; *ut (nē)*; jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*; *ut (nē)*; mandō, 1, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person*; *ut (nē)*.

command, imperium, i.

command of, am in, praesum, praeesse, praeuī, praeutūrus, *irreg., intr.*; *w. dat.*

command of, put in, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of thing of which*.

commander in chief, imperātor, imperātōris.

commit, committō, committere, commisī, commissus, 3, *tr.*; mandō, 1, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person*.

common, communis, e.

companion, socius, i.

compare, cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus, *irreg., tr.*

conceal, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, 3, *tr.* (*Always takes an object.*)

concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*

confuse, perturbō, 1, *tr.*

conquer, superō, 1, *tr.*; vincō, vincere, vicī, victus, 3, *tr.*

consider, arbitror, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

conspiracy, form a, conjūrō, 1, *intr.*

conspire, conjūrō, 1, *intr.*

construct, mūniō, 4, *tr.* (*w. viam or viās*).

consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, contendere, contendī, 3, *intr.*
continually, continenter, *adv.*
contrary to, praeter, *prep. w. acc.*
convenient, idōneus, a, um; *w. dat. or ad w. acc.*
council, concilium, *i.*
counsel, cōsilium, *i.*
courage, virtūs, virtūtis.
courageous, audāx (*gen. audācis*); fortis, *e.*
crops, frūmenta, frūmentōrum.
cross, trānsēō, trānsīre, trānsiī(-īvī), trānsitus, *irreg., tr.*
cross, crux, crucis.
cry, vōx, vōcis.

danger, periculum, *i.*
daring, audāx (*gen. audācis*).
dart, tēlum, *i.*
dawn, at, primā lūce.
day, diēs, diēi, *m. (f.).*
death, mors, mortis.
decide, cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, 3, *tr.; w. infin.*
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensus, 3, *tr.*
defile, angustiae, angustiārum.
degree, to such a, adeō; tam, *adv.*
delay, mora, *ae.*
deny, negō, 1, *tr.; acc. w. infin.*
depart, proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, 3, *intr.*
desire, cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus, 3, *tr.; w. infin.; acc. w. infin.; ut (nē).*
desirous, cupidus, a, um; *w. gen.*
determine, cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, 3, *tr.; w. infin.*
devote, dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, 3, *tr. (Always takes an object.)*
devoted (to), am, studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *intr.; w. dat.*
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *intr.*

differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus, *irreg., tr.*
difficult, difficilis, *e*; impeditus, a, um.
difficulties, angustiae, angustiārum.
direction, pars, partis.
dismiss, dimittō, dimittere, dīmisi, dīmissus, 3, *tr.*
dispatch, litterae, litterārum.
distant, am, absūm, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irreg., intr.; ab (ā) w. abl.*
distribute, dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus, 3, *tr.*
disturb, perturbō, 1, *tr.*
ditch, fossa, *ae.*
divide, dividō, dividere, dīvisī, dīvisus, 3, *tr.*
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, *tr. (passive, fiō, fierī, factus sum):* agō. agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, *tr.; committō, committere, commisi, commissus, 3, tr.*
do harm to, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, *intr.; w. dat.*
done, am, fiō, fierī, factus sum, *irreg., intr.*
doubtful, dubius, a, um.
down, cast, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, 3, *tr.*
down, hurl, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī, dējectus, 3, *tr.*
down from, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
draw back, redūcō, redūcere, reduxī, reductus, 3, *tr.*
draw near to, appropinquō, 1, *intr.; w. dat. or ad w. acc.*
draw up, instruō, instruere, instruxī, instrūctus, 3, *tr.*
drive, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, *tr.; pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, tr.*
drive back, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, reiectus, 3, *tr.; repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsus, 3, tr.*
 dwell in, incolō, incolere, incoluī, 3, *tr.*

each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (*gen. sing. utriusque, dat. sing. utrique*).

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.

eager (for), cupidus, a, um; *w. gen.*

eager (for), am, studeō, studēre, studui, 2, *intr.*; *w. dat. or pres. infin.*

eagerly, ācriter, *adv.*

earth, terra, ae.

easily, facile, *adv.*; **more easily**, facilius, *comparative adv.*

easy, facilis, e.

effort, labor, labōris.

eight, octō, *indecl. numeral.*

Eisenhower. Use the English form unchanged in Latin.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut, *conj.*

elated, am. Use *passive of tollō*, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, *tr.*

emperor, imperātor, imperātōris.

empire, imperium, ī.

employ, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *intr.*; *w. abl.*

encourage, cohortor, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*; cōfirmō, 1, *tr.*; hortor, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.

encumbered, impeditus, a, um.

enemy (in war), hostis, hostis, *m.*

enough, satis, *adv. and indecl. noun*; *w. gen.*

enroll, cōscribō, cōscribere, cōscripsi, cōscriptus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

enter upon, ineō, inīre, inī(-ivī), inītus, *irreg.*, *tr.*

entrust, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person to whom*; mandō, 1, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person.*

envoy, lēgātus, ī.

epistle, litterae, litterarum.

equip, instruō, instruere, instruxī, instrūctus, 3, *tr.*

especially, potissimum, *adv.*

even (to), usque, *adv.*

every, omnis, e.

exact, diligēns (*gen. diligentis*).

except, praeter, *prep. w. acc.*

exchange, inter sē dō, dare, dedī, datus, 1, *tr.*

exercise, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *intr.*; *w. abl.*

exhaust, cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, 3, *tr.*

exhort, hortor, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.

expose, aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, 4, *tr.*

fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. dat.*

faith, fidēs, fideī.

faithfulness, fidēs, fideī.

fall back, pedem referō, referre, retuli, relātus, *irreg.*, *tr.*

fame, glōria, ae.

far, longē, *adv.*; **by far**, longē, *adv.*

farther, ulterior, ulterius; **Farther Gaul**, Gallia (ae) Ulterior (Ulterioris).

farthest, extrēmus, a, um; ultimus, a, um.

father, pater, patris (patrum).

favor, grātia, ae.

favorable, secundus, a, um.

fear, timeō, timēre, timuī, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*; *nē (nē nōn, ut)*; vereor, 2, *tr.*; *w. infin.*; *nē (nē nōn, ut)*.

fear, metus, ūs; timor, timōris.

feel, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsus, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

few, pauci, ae, a.

field, ager, agrī.

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.

fight, pugnō, 1, *intr.*

fill (with), compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus, 2, *tr.*; *w. abl.*

find, reperīō, reperīre, reperī, reperitus, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *having*

found, nactus, a, um.

find out, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvi, cognitus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

explōrō, 1, *tr.*; reperīō, reperīre, reperī, repertus, 4, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

finish, cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, 3, *tr.*

fire to, set, incendō, incendere, **incendi**, incēsus, 3, *tr.*

- first**, *primus*, a, um.
fixed, *certus*, a, um.
flee, *fugio*, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, 3, *intr.*
fleet, *classis*, *classis* (*abl. classī or classe*).
flight, *fuga*, ae; **put to flight**, in *fugam dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*, 1, *tr.*
follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*, 3, *tr.*
follow up, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōnsecūtus sum*, 3, *tr.*
foot (*of an animal, mountain, etc., or a unit of measure*), *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*
foot of, at the, *sub*, *prep. w. abl.*
for (*prep.*), *ad*, *prep. w. acc.* (*with adjectives, and with gerund and gerundive to express purpose*); *dē*, *prep. w. abl.*; *prō*, *prep. w. abl.*
for (*conj.*), *enim*, *postp.*; *nam* (*when for means because and introduces a REASON*).
for the sake of, *causā*; *w. gen.*
forbid, *vetō*, *vetāre*, *vetuī*, *vetitus*, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*
force, *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coactus*, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*
force, *vīs* (*acc. vim, abl. vī*); *vīrēs*, *virium*, *f.*; *by force*, *vī*.
forces (*a military term*), *cōpia*, *cōpiarum*.
forefathers, *mājōrēs*, *mājōrum*, *m.*
foreign, *aliēnus*, a, um; *barbarus*, a, um.
forest, *silva*, ae.
forever, in *perpetuum*; in *saecula saeculorum*.
form a conspiracy, *conjūrō*, 1, *intr.*
former, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (Gr. 795); *superior*, *superius*.
fortify, *mūniō*, 4, *tr.*
fortune, *fortūna*, ae.
forward, *go*, *prōgredior*, *prōgredī*, *prōgressus sum*, 3, *intr.*
found, *having*, *nactus*, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).
four, *quattuor*, *indecl. numeral*.
France. *Use Gallia*, ae.
Frenchmen (*the French*). *Use Gallī*, *Gallorum*.
free, *liber*, *libera*, *liberum*.
fresh, *integer*, *integra*, *integrum*.
friend, *amicus*, *i.*
friendship, *amicitia*, ae.
from, *ab* (*ā*), *prep. w. abl.*; *dē*, *prep. w. abl.*; *ex* (*ē*), *prep. w. abl.*
from all sides, *undique*, *adv.*
front of, in, *ante*, *prep. w. acc.*; *prō*, *prep. w. abl.*
full, *plēnus*, a, um; *w. gen. or abl.*
gain, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōnsecūtus sum*, 3, *tr.*
garrison, *praesidium*, *i.*
gate, *porta*, ae.
Gaul (*an inhabitant of Gaul*), *Gallus*, *i.*; (*the country*), *Gallia*, ae; *Further Gaul*, *Gallia* (ae) *Ulterior* (*Ulteriōris*); *Hither Gaul*, *Gallia* (ae) *Citior* (*Citeriōris*).
general, *imperātor*, *imperātōris*.
German (*noun*), *Germānus*, *i.*; (*adj.*), *Germānus*, a, um.
Germany, *Germānia*, ae.
get, *comparō*, 1, *tr.*
get possession of, *potior*, 4, *intr.*; *w. abl. or gen.*
get ready, *comparō*, 1, *tr.*; *parō*, 1, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
Ghost, *Holy*, *Spīritus* (*ūs*) *Sāctus* (*i.*).
give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*, 1, *tr.*
give thanks, *grātiās agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *actus*, 3, *tr.*
give up, *dēdō*, *dēdere*, *dēdidī*, *dēditus*, 3, *tr.* (*Always takes an object.*)
give way, *cēdō*, *cēdere*, *cessī*, *cessurus*, 3, *intr.*
glory, *glōria*, ae.
go, *eō*, *ire*, *ivī* (*ii*), *itum*, *irreg.*, *intr.*
go across, *trāseō*, *trānsire*, *trānsiī* (*-ivī*), *trānsitus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*
go forward, *prōgredior*, *prōgredī*, *prōgressus sum*, 3, *intr.*

go into, ineō, inīre, inī(-ivī), initus, *irreg., tr.*

go out, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, *intr.*; exeō, exīre, exī(-ivī), exitum, *irreg., intr.*

go to, adeō, adīre, adī(-ivī), aditus, *irreg., tr.*

God, Deus, ī (*nom. pl. dī, abl. and dat. pl. dīs*).

good, bonus, a, um.

grace (*in Christian Latin*), grātia, ae.

grain, frūmentum, ī.

great, magnus, a, um; so great, tantus, a, um; very great, summus, a, um.

greater, mājor, mājus.

greatest, maximus, a, um; summus, a, um.

greatest number, plūrimus, a, um.

greatly, magnōpere, *adv.*; multum, *adv.*; vehementer, *adv.*

guard, servō, 1, *tr.*

guard, custōs, custōdis.

guide, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3, *tr.*

Haedui, Haeduī, Haeduōrum.

hail, avē! *interjection.*

hand over, trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trādītus, 3, *tr.*

Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalis, *m.*

happen, fiō, fierī, factus sum, *irreg., intr.; ut (ut nōn)*.

harbor, portus, ūs.

hard, press, premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 3, *tr.*

harm (do harm to), noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, *intr.; w. dat.*

hasten, contendō, contendere, contendī, 3, *intr.; w. pres. infin.*

have, habēō, 2, *tr.*

have accustomed (have become accustomed), cōsuēvī, cōsuētus, 3, *tr. and intr.; w. pres. infin.*

have begun, coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum, *tr.; w. pres. infin.*

have mercy (on), miserēre; *w. dat. or gen.*

having found, nactus, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).

having obtained, nactus, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).

having obtained possession of, nactus, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).

he, *masc. of is, ea, id or of ille, illa, illud.*

he (she, it) said (says), inquit. (*Used with direct quotations only; usually placed after the first word or phrase of the quotation.*)

head, caput, capitis.

hear, audiō, 4, *tr.; acc. w. infin.*

heaven, caelum, ī.

heavy, gravis, e.

help, adjuvō, adjuvāre, adjūvī, adjūtus, 1, *tr.*

help, auxilium, ī.

Helvetians, Helvētīi, Helvētīōrum.

her (hers), ejus.

her (herself), suī.

her (own), suus, a, um.

hide, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, 3, *tr. (Always takes an object.)*

high, altus, a, um.

higher, superior, superius.

highest, summus, a, um; suprēmus, a, um.

hill, collis, collis, *m.*

him (himself), suī.

hinder, impediō, 4, *tr.*

his, ejus.

his (own), suus, a, um.

Hither Gaul, Gallia (ae) Citerior (Citeriōris).

hold, obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, 2, *tr.*; teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2, *tr.*

hold back, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus, 2, *tr.*

hold in, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, 2, *tr.*

holy, sāctus, a, um

Holy Ghost, Spīritus (ūs) Sāctus (ī).

Holy Spirit, Spīritus (ūs) Sāctus (ī).

home, domus, ūs; **from home**, domō;
(to) home, domum.

hope, spēs, speī.

horseman, eques, equitis.

hostage, obses, obsidis, c.

hour, hōra, ae.

how large, quantus, a, um.

how many, quot, *indecl. adj.*

how much, quantus, a, um.

however, autem, *conj., postp.*

hundred, one, centum, *indecl. numeral.*

hurl, jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, 3, *tr.*

hurl back, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, re-
jectus, 3, *tr.*

hurl down, dējiciō, dējicere, dējēcī,
dējectus, 3, *tr.*

I, ego, meī.

immediately, statim, *adv.*

impede, impediō, 4, *tr.*

in, in, *prep. w. abl.*; **in**, *prep. w. acc.*

in front of, ante, *prep. w. acc.*; prō,
prep. w. abl.

in order that, ut, *conj. (in purpose
clauses)*; quō, *conj. (in purpose
clauses containing a comparative).*

in order that not, nē, *conj. (in nega-
tive purpose clauses).*

in such a manner, ita, *adv.*; sic, *adv.*

in the beginning, in prīncipiō.

in the presence of, apud, *prep. w. acc.*

incite, incitō, 1, *tr.*

Indies, Indī, Indōrum.

induce, adducō, adducere, addūxī, ad-
ductus, 3, *tr.*; ut (*nē*).

inflict (upon), inferō, inferre, intulī,
illātus, *irreg., tr.*; w. *dat. of person.*

influence, adducō, adducere, addūxī,
adductus, 3, *tr.*; ut (*nē*); inducō,
inducere, indūxī, inductus, 3, *tr.*;
ut (*nē*); permovere, permovere, per-
mōvī, permōtus, 2, *tr.*

influence, auctōritās, auctōritātis;
grātia, ae.

inform, certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere,
fēcī, factus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; dē
w. *abl.*

inhabit, incolō, incolere, incoluī, 3, *tr.*
injure, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitū-
rus, 2, *intr.*; w. *dat.*

injustice, injūria, ae.

inspect, perspicō, perspicere, perspexī,
perspectus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

inspire (in), inferō, inferre, intulī,
illātus, *irreg., tr.*; w. *dat. of person.*

into, in, *prep. w. acc.*

it, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; suī.

it behooves, oportet, oportēre, oport-
uit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*

it is necessary, oportet, oportēre,
oportuit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*

Italy, Italia, ae.

its (own), suus, a, um.

itself, suī.

Japan, Japōnia, ae.

Japanese, Japō, Japōnis.

javelin, pilum, ī.

Jesus, Jēsūs, ū (*declined*: Jēsūs, Jēsū,
Jēsū, Jēsum, Jēsū).

Jew, Jūdaeus, ī.

John, Jōannēs, Jōannis.

join, jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūctus, 3,
tr.

join battle, proelium committō, com-
mittere, commisi, commissus, 3, *tr.*

join together, conjungō, conjungere,
conjūnxī, conjūctus, 3, *tr.*

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*; **make a jour-
ney**, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,
3, *tr.*

Judas, Jūdas, ae.

Julius, Julius, ī.

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, reten-
tus, 2, *tr.*; servō, 1, *tr.*; **keep in
memory**, memoriā teneō, tenēre,
tenuī, tentus, 2, *tr.*; w. *acc. or acc.
w. infin.*

kill, interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, in-
terfectus, 3, *tr.*; occidō, occidere,
occidi, occisus, 3, *tr.*

kind, of such a, tālis, e.

king, *rēx, rēgis*.
kingdom, *rēgnum, ī*.
know, *sciō, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
Labienus, *Labiēnus, ī*.
lacking, *am, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, irreg., intr.; w. dat.*
land, *terra, ae*.
large, *magnus, a, um; how large, quantus, a, um*.
last, *extrēmus, a, um; ultimus, a, um*.
lately, *nūper, adv.*
latter, *hic, haec, hoc (Gr. 795)*.
law, *lēx, lēgis*.
lay waste, *vastō, 1, tr.*
lead, *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3, tr.; dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus, 3, tr.*
lead across, *trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, tr.; two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.*
lead away, *dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus, 3, tr.*
lead back, *redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, 3, tr.*
lead in, *indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)*.
lead on, *addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē); indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)*.
lead over, *trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, tr.; two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.*
lead to, *addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, 3, tr.; ut (nē)*.
leader, *dux, ducis*.
leading man, *prīnceps, prīncipis*.
learn, *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.*
least, *minimē, adv.*
leave, *discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, 3, intr.; relinquo, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 3, intr.*
leave behind, *relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 3, tr.*
legion, *legiō, legiōnis, f.*

less, *minus, adv.*
lest, *nē, conj. (Gr. 546; 645)*.
letter, *litterae, litterārum*.
levy (*on*), *imperō, 1, tr.; w. dat. of person*.
liberty, *libertās, libertātis*.
lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī*.
life, *vīta, ae*.
lift up (*passive, am elated*), *tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3, tr.*
light, *lūx, lūcis*.
like, *similis, e; w. gen. or dat.*
Lincoln. *Use the English form unchanged in Latin.*
line, *battle, aciēs, aciēī*.
little (*adj.*), *parvus, a, um; (adv.)*, *parum*.
live, *vivō, vivere, vixī, victūrus, 3, intr.*
long (*adj.*), *longus, a, um*.
long (*of time*), *diū, adv.; a long time, diū, adv.*
longer, *diūtius, comparative adv.*
longest, *diūtissimē, adv.*
lord, *dominus, ī (in Christian Latin used of God or Christ)*.
love, *diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctus, 3, tr.*
love, *cāritās, cāritātis*.
Lucius, *Lūcius, ī*.
MacArthur. *Use the English form unchanged in Latin.*
made, *am, fiō, fierī, factus sum, irreg., intr.*
make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, tr.; to make a journey, iter facere; make a plan, cōsiliū capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, tr.*
man, *homō, hominis; vir, virī; leading man, prīnceps, prīncipis*.
manage, *administrō, 1, tr.*
manner, *ratio, ratiōnis; in such a manner, ita, adv.; sic, adv.*
many, *multī, ae, a; how many, quot, indecl. adj.; so many, tot, indecl. adj.; very many, plūrimus, a, um*.

- march**, iter, itineris, *n.*; **to march**, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 3, *tr.*
- Mary**, Maria, *ae.*
- master**, dominus, *i.*
- master of, become**, potior, 4, *intr.*; *w. abl. or gen.*
- may not**, nē, *conj.* (*with volitive subjunctive*).
- meanwhile**, interim, *adv.*
- memory**, memoria, *ae.*; **keep in memory**, memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- mercy (on)**, have, miserēre; *w. dat. or gen.*
- message**, nuntius, *i.*
- messenger**, nuntius, *i.*
- method**, ratiō, ratiōnis.
- middle**, medius, *a, um.*
- mile** (*lit., a thousand paces*), mille passūs; miles, milia (mīlium), passuum.
- military tribune**, tribūnus (*i*) mīlitum.
- mind**, mēns, mentis.
- mine**, meus, *a, um.*
- Mississippi**. Use the English form unchanged in Latin.
- mistake**, peccātum, *i.*
- more** (*noun*), plūs, plūris, *n.*; *w. gen.*; (*comp. adj.*), plūrēs, plūra (*Gr. page 22, footnote 2*); (*comp. adv.*), magis; plūs.
- more easily**, facilius, *comparative adv.*
- most** (*adj.*), plūrimus, *a, um.*; (*adv.*), maximē; plūrimum.
- most recently**, nūperrimē, *adv.*
- mother**, māter, mātris (mātrum).
- mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*
- move**, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, 2, *tr.*
- much** (*adj.*), multus, *a, um.*; (*adv.*), multum; **how much**, quantus, *a, um.*, my, meus, *a, um.*
- name**, nōmen, nōminis; **by name** (named), nōmine.
- narrow**, angustus, *a, um.*
- narrow place**, angustiae, angustiārum.
- nation**, populus, *i.*
- nature**, nātūra, *ae.*
- near** (*adj.*), propinquus, *a, um.*; (*adv.*), prope.
- near to, draw**, appropinquō, 1, *intr.*; *w. dat. or ad w. acc.*
- nearer** (*adj.*), propior, propius; (*adv.*), propius.
- nearest**, proximus, *a, um.*; *w. dat.*
- nearly**, prope, *adv.*
- necessary**, it is, oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 2, *intr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*
- neighboring**, finitimus, *a, um.*; *w. dat.*
- neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque, *conj.*
- nevertheless**, tamen, *adv.*
- new**, novus, *a, um.*
- next** (*adj.*), finitimus, *a, um.*; *w. dat.*; proximus, *a, um.*; *w. dat.*; (*adv.*), proximē.
- night**, nox, noctis.
- no**, nullus, *a, um.*; nēmō, nēminis.
- no one**, nēmō, nēminis (nūllius, nūllō, nūllā usually used in place of nēminis and nēmine).
- noble**, nōbilis, *e.*
- none**, nullus, *a, um.*
- nor**, neque, *conj.*
- not**, nōn, *adv.*; nihil, *adv.*; nē (*with commands, wishes, and hortatory subjunctive*).
- not at all**, minimē, *adv.*; nihil, *adv.*
- not enough**, parum, *indecl. noun.*; *w. gen.*
- nothing**, nihil (nīl), *n., indecl. noun.*
- notice**, animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- now**, nunc, *adv.*
- number**, numerus, *i.*; **greatest number**, plūrimus, *a, um.*
- observe**, cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- obtained, having**, nactus, *a, um* (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).

obtained possession of, having, nactus, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).
 occupy, obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, 2, tr.
 of him (her, it), ejus.
 of such a kind, talis, e.
 of them, eorum, earum.
 often, saepe, adv.
 oftener, saepius, comparative adv.
 oftenest, saepissimē, adv.
 on, in, prep. w. abl.; in, prep. w. acc.
 on account of, propter, prep. w. acc.
 on all sides, undique, adv.
 on behalf of, pro, prep. w. abl.
 once, at, statim, adv.
 one, unus, a, um; (*of two*), alter, altera, alterum (Gr. 87).
 one, no, nēmō, nēminis (nūlliūs, nullō, nullā usually used in place of nēminis and nēmine).
 one hundred, centum, indecl. numeral.
 oneself, betake, mē (tē, sē) cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus, irreg., tr.
 only (adj.), sōlus, a, um.
 onto, in, prep. w. acc.
 open, aperīō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, 4, tr.
 opposite, contrā, prep. w. acc.
 or, aut, conj.
 order, imperō, 1, tr.; w. dat. of person; ut (nē); jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, 2, tr.; acc. w. pres. infin.
 order that, in, ut, conj. (*in purpose clauses*); quō, conj. (*in purpose clauses containing a comparative adverb or adjective*); in order that not, nē, conj. (*in negative purpose clauses*).
 Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Orgetorigis.
 other, alius, alia, aliud (Gr. 85-86); (*of two*), alter, altera, alterum (Gr. 87).
 ought, dēbeō, 2, tr.; w. pres. infin.
 our (own), noster, nostra, nostrum.
 ours, noster, nostra, nostrum.
 out of, dē; ex (ē), preps. w. abl.

outer, exterior, exterius.
 outermost, extrēmus, a, um.
 over, am (= am in charge of), prae-sum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, irreg., intr.; w. dat.
 over, hand, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, 3, tr.
 over, lead, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus, 3, tr.; two accs. or acc. and trāns w. acc.
 overcome, superō, 1, tr.
 overtake, cōnsequor, cōnsequi, cōnsecūtus sum, 3, tr.
 owe, dēbeō, 2, tr.; w. dat. of person.
 own, his (her, its), suus, a, um.
 pace, passus, ūs.
 pacify, pācō, 1, tr.
 pain, dolor, doloris.
 part, pars, partis.
 pass, trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī (-ivī), trānsitus, irreg., tr.
 past, praeter, prep. w. acc.
 Paul, Paulus, ī.
 peace, pāx, pācis.
 people, populus, ī.
 perceive, cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 4, tr.; acc. w. infin.
 persuade, persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, 2, intr.; w. dat.; ut (nē).
 pertain to, pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, 2, intr.; ad w. acc.
 Peter, Petrus, ī.
 Pilate, Pilātus, ī.
 pitch camp, castra pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, tr.
 place, collocō, 1, tr.; cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus, 3, tr.; pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, tr.
 place, locus, ī (pl., loca, locōrum);

- narrow place**, angustiae, angustiarum.
- plan**, cōsiliū, ī; ratiō, ratiōnis; **make a plan**, cōsiliū capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, 3, *tr.*
- point out**, dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- Pompey**, Pompējus, ī.
- possession of**, get, potior, 4, *intr.*; *w. abl. or gen.*
- possession of**, having obtained, nactus, a, um (*perfect participle of nanciscor*).
- power**, imperium, ī; vīs (*acc. vim, abl. vi*); **royal power**, rēgnum, ī.
- praise**, laudō, 1, *tr.*
- pray**, ōrō, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.
- prayer**, ōratiō, ōratiōnis.
- prepare**, comparō, 1, *tr.*; parō, 1, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- prepared (for)**, parātus, a, um; *w. infin. or ad w. acc.*
- presence of**, in the, apud, *prep. w. acc.*
- preserve**, cōservō, 1, *tr.*
- press**, premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 3, *tr.*
- press back**, reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, *tr.*
- press hard**, premō, premere, pressī, pressus, 3, *tr.*
- prevent**, prohibeō, 2, *tr.* (Gr. 649).
- proceed**, prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, 3, *intr.*
- promise**, polliceor, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin. (usually future)*.
- proper**, idōneus, a, um; *w. dat. or ad w. acc.*
- protection**, praesidium, ī.
- province**, prōvincia, ae.
- pursue**, sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, 3, *tr.*
- put**, pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus, 3, *tr.*
- put in command of**, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of thing of which.*
- put off**, differō, differre, distuli, dilatus, *irreg., tr.*
- put to flight**, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus, 1, *tr.*
- rampart**, vallum, ī.
- rank (of soldiers)**, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
- rather**, potius, *adv.*
- ravage**, vastō, 1, *tr.*
- ready (for)**, parātus, a, um; *w. infin. or ad w. acc.*
- ready**, get, comparō, 1, *tr.*; parō, 1, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- reason**, causa, ae; ratiō, ratiōnis.
- receive**, accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus, 3, *tr.*; recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus, 3, *tr.*
- recently**, nūper, *adv.*
- reconnoiter**, explōrō, 1, *tr.*
- recover**, mē (tē, sē) recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus, 3, *tr.*
- refer**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irreg., tr.*
- reinforcements**, auxilia, auxiliōrum.
- release**, remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus, 3, *tr.*
- reliability**, fidēs, fidēi.
- remain**, manēo, manēre, māsī, māsūrus, 2, *intr.*
- remain behind**, resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- remaining**, reliquus, a, um.
- remember**, memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- renowned**, nōbilis, e.
- repel**, rejiciō, rejicere, rejēcī, rejectus, 3, *tr.*
- report**, nuntiō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irreg., tr.*
- repulse**, pellō, pellere, populī, pulsus, 3, *tr.*
- request**, petō, petere, petivī, petitus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*; rogō, 1, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*.
- resist**, resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, *intr.*; *w. dat.*
- rest of**, the, reliquus, a, um.

restrain, contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus, 2, *tr.*; reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus, 3, *tr.*

retreat, pedem referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irreg., tr.*

return, remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus, 3, *tr.*; revertor, revertī, revertī *or* reversus sum, 3, *intr.*

reward, praemium, ī.

Rhine, Rhēnus, ī.

richest, dītissimus, a, um.

rise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*

river, flūmen, flūminis.

road, via, ae.

Roman, Rōmānus, ī; Rōmānus, a, um.

Rome, Rōma, ae.

rout, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, 3, *tr.*

route, iter, itineris, n.

royal power, rēgnum, ī.

safe, tūtus, a, um.

safely, tūtō, *adv.*

safety, salūs, salūtis.

sail, nāvīgō, 1, *intr.*

sailor, nauta, ae.

saint (*noun*), sānctus, ī; sāncta, ae; (*adj.*), sānctus, a, um.

sake of, for the, causā; *w. gen.*

salvation, salūs, salūtis.

save, cōservō, 1, *tr.*; servō, 1, *tr.*

save from, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person or thing from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w. abl.*

say, dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; **he, she, it said (says)**, inquit. (*Used with direct quotations only; usually placed after the first word or phrase of the quotation.*)

say . . . not, negō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

scarcity, inopia, ae.

scatter, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus, *irreg., tr.*

Scipio, Scipiō, Scipiōnis.

second, alter, altera, alterum; secundus, a, um.

secretly, clam, *adv.*

see, cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; **videō**, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, 2, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

seek, petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, 3, *tr.*; *ut (nē)*; quaerō, quaerere, quae-sīvī, quaesītus, 3, *tr.*

seize, occupō, 1, *tr.*

self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

senate, senātus, ūs.

send, mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, 3, *tr.*

send away, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, 3, *tr.*

send back, remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus, 3, *tr.*

separate, dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dī-vīsus, 3, *tr.*

serious, gravis, e.

servant, servus, ī.

set, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, 3, *tr.*

set fire to, incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus, 3, *tr.*

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profec-tus sum, 3, *intr.*; *ad w. acc.*

set up, cōstituō, cōstituere, cōnsti-tuī, cōstitūtus, 3, *tr.*

seven, septem, *indecl. numeral.*

severe, gravis, e.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, fem. of is, ea, id or of ille, illa, illud.

ship, nāvis, nāvis (*abl. nāvī or nāve*).

short, brevis, e.

shout, clāmor, clāmōris.

shouting, clāmor, clāmōris.

show, dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

Sicily, Sicilia, ae.

sides, from all, undique, adv.; **on all**

sides, undique, *adv.*

sight of, catch, cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus, 3, *tr.*

sign, signum, ī.

signal, signum, ī.

- similar, similis, e; *w. gen. or dat.*
 sin, peccō, 1, *tr.*
 sin (*in Christian Latin*), peccātum, 1.
 since, cum, *conj.*
 six, sex, *indecl. numeral.*
 sky, caelum, 1.
 slaughter, caedēs, caedis.
 slave, servus, 1.
 small, parvus, a, um.
 smaller, minor, minus.
 smallest, minimus, a, um.
 so, adeō, *adv.*; tam, *adv. (degree)*;
 ita, *adv.*; sic, *adv. (manner)*; and
 so, itaque, *conj.*
 so great, tantus, a, um.
 so many, tot, *indecl. adj.*
 soldier, miles, militis.
 son, filius, 1.
 sorrow, dolor, dolōris.
 spare, cōservō, 1, *tr.*
 speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3,
tr. and intr.
 speech, ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis.
 spirit, spīritus, ūs.
 standard, signum, 1.
 start, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*
 state, cīvītās, cīvītātis.
 station, collocō, 1, *tr.*; dispōnō, dis-
 pōnere, disposuī, dispositus, 3, *tr.*
 storm, expugnō, 1, *tr.*; oppugnō, 1,
tr.; take by storm, expugnō, 1, *tr.*
 strength, vīrēs, vīrium, *f.*
 strengthen, cōfirmō, 1, *tr.*
 stretch to, pertineō, pertinēre, per-
 tinuī, 2, *intr.*; *ad w. acc.*
 strive, contendō, contendere, contendī,
 3, *intr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
 strive (after), studeō, studēre, studuī,
 2, *intr.*; *w. dat. or pres. infin.*
 strong, firmus, a, um; fortis, e.
 strongly, fortiter, *adv.*
 such, tālis, e; of such a kind, tālis, e.
 suffer, patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *tr.*;
w. pres. infin.; *acc. w. infin.*
 sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
 suitable, idōneus, a, um; *w. dat. or ad*
w. acc.
 supply, cōpia, ae.
 sure, certus, a, um.
 surely (*in questions asked in sur-
 prise*), num (Gr. 503).
 surpass, superō, 1, *tr.*
 surrender, dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dē-
 ditus, 3, *tr.* (*Always takes an ob-
 ject.*)
 sustain, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī,
 sustentus, 2, *tr.*
 swift, celer, celeris, celere.
 swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
 sword, gladius, 1.
 take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, *tr.*;
 sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūptus, 3,
tr.; accipiō, accipere, accēpī, accep-
 tus, 3, *tr.*
 take away, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ērep-
 tus, 3, *tr.*; *w. dat. of person or thing*
from which; ab (ā) or ex (ē) w.
abl.; tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus,
 3, *tr.*
 take back, recipiō, recipere, recēpī,
 receptus, 3, *tr.*
 take by storm, expugnō, 1, *tr.*
 take (upon oneself), suscipiō, suscipere,
 suscēpī, susceptus, 3, *tr.*
 talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, *tr.*
and intr.
 tell, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 3, *tr.*;
acc. w. infin.; ostendō, ostendere,
 ostendī, ostentus, 3, *tr.*; *acc. w.*
infin.
 ten, decem, *indecl. numeral.*
 tenth, decimus, a, um.
 territory, terreō, 2, *tr.*
 territory, finēs, finium, *m.*
 than, quam, *adv.*
 thank, grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus,
 3, *tr.*
 thanks, grātia, grātiārum; give thanks,
 grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, 3, *tr.*
 that (*demonstrative pronoun*), is, ea,
 id; ille, illa, illud; (*relative pro-
 noun*), quī, quae, quod.
 that (*conj.*), ut, *conj.*; quō (*in pur-*

- pose clauses containing a comparative adverb or adjective).
- that . . . not, *nē*, *conj.* (in negative purpose clauses and some noun clauses); *ut nōn* (in result clauses and some noun clauses).
- their (*reflexive*), *suus*, *a*, *um*; (*non-reflexive*), *eōrum*, *eārum*.
- their own, *suus*, *a*, *um*.
- them (themselves), *suī*.
- then, *tum*, *adv.*
- there, *ibi*, *adv.*
- therefore, *itaque*, *conj.*
- they, *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
- thing, *rēs*, *rei*.
- think, *arbitror*, *1*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *existimō*, *1*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *putō*, *1*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*; *sentiō*, *sentire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, *4*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- third, *tertius*, *a*, *um*.
- this, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.
- thousand, *mille*, *indecl. adj.* (*pl.*, *milīa*, *mīlīum*, *n.*)
- three, *trēs*, *trīa* (Gr. 116).
- through, *per*, *prep. w. acc.*
- throw, *iaciō*, *jacere*, *jēcī*, *jactus*, *3*, *tr.*
- thus, *ita*, *adv.*; *sic*, *adv.*
- time, *tempus*, *temporis*, *n.*; a long time, *diū*, *adv.*; at that time, *tum*, *adv.*
- Titus, *Titus*, *i*.
- to, *ad*, *prep. w. acc.*
- to such a degree, *adeō*, *adv.*; *tam*, *adv.*
- together, bring, *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coactus*, *3*, *tr.*; *acc. w. pres. infin.*; *cōnferō*, *cōnferre*, *contulī*, *collātus*, *irreg.*, *tr.*
- together, come, *conveniō*, *convenire*, *convēnī*, *conventum*, *4*, *intr.*
- together, join, *conjungō*, *conjungere*, *conjūnxī*, *conjunctus*, *3*, *tr.*
- toil, labor, *labōris*.
- too little, *parum*, *indecl. noun*; *w. gen.*; *minus*, *adv.*; *parum*, *adv.*
- toward, *sub*, *prep. w. acc.*
- towards, *in*, *prep. w. acc.*
- town, *oppidum*, *i*.
- treat, *agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *actus*, *3*, *tr.*
- tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*.
- tribune, *tribūnus*, *i*; military tribune, *tribūnus* (*i*) *militum*.
- troops, *cōpia*, *cōpia*, *cōpiārum*.
- trust, *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus*, *3*, *tr. and intr.*; *w. dat. of person to whom or in whom*; *acc. w. infin.*
- truth, *vērītās*, *vērītātis*.
- try, *cōnor*, *1*, *tr.*; *w. pres. infin.*
- two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo* (Gr. 115).
- unable, *am*, *nōn possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, *irreg.*, *intr.*; *w. infin.*
- uncertain, *dubius*, *a*, *um*.
- uncover, *aperiō*, *aperire*, *aperuī*, *apertus*, *4*, *tr.*
- under, *sub*, *prep. w. abl.*; *sub*, *prep. w. acc.* (Gr. 997; 999).
- understand, *intelligō*, *intelligere*, *intellēxī*, *intellēctus*, *3*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*
- undertake, *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*, *3*, *tr.*
- unfavorable, *aliēnus*, *a*, *um*.
- uninjured, *integer*, *integra*, *integrum*.
- unite, *conjungō*, *conjungere*, *conjūnxī*, *conjunctus*, *3*, *tr.*; *jungō*, *jungere*, *jūnxī*, *jūctus*, *3*, *tr.*
- until, *ad*, *prep. w. acc.*
- unwilling, *be*, *nōlī*, *nōlīte* (*imperative of nōlō*); *w. pres. infin.*
- up (to), *usque*, *adv.*
- up to, *sub*, *prep. w. acc.*
- upon, *in*, *prep. w. acc.*
- urge, *ūtor*, *1*, *tr.*; *ut* (*nē*).
- use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*, *3*, *intr.*; *w. abl.*
- useful (for), *ūtilis*, *e*; *ad w. acc.*
- Veneti, *Venetī*, *Venetōrum*.
- very, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* (Gr. 809).
- very great, *summus*, *a*, *um*.
- very many, *plūrimus*, *a*, *um*.
- victory, *victōria*, *ae*.
- view, *perspiciō*, *perspicere*, *perspexī*, *perspectus*, *3*, *tr.*; *acc. w. infin.*

vigorous, firmus, a, um.
violence, vīs (acc. vim, abl. vī).
violently, vī; vehementer, adv.
virtue, virtūs, virtūtis.
visit, adeō, adīre, adī(-ivī), aditus, irreg., tr.
voice, vōx, vōcis.

wage war, bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, tr.

wait, exspectō, 1, tr.

wait for, exspectō, 1, tr.

wall, mūrus, ī; vallum, ī.

want, inopia, ae.

war, bellum, ī; **wage war**, bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 3, tr.

ward off (from), prohibeō, 2, tr.; w. abl. of separ. (Gr. 649).

warn, moneō, 2, tr.; ut (nē).

Washington (George), Washingtonius, ī.

Washington (the city). Use the English form unchanged in Latin.

waste, lay, vastō, 1, tr.

way, ratiō, ratiōnis; via, ae.

way, give, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, intr.

way (to), all the, usque, adv.

we, nōs, nostrī.

wear out, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, 3, tr.

welfare, salūs, salūtis.

well, bene, adv.

what (relative pronoun), quī, quae, quod; **(interrogative pronoun)**, quis, quid; **(interrogative adj.)**, quī, quae, quod.

when, cum, conj.; ubi, conj.

where, ubi, adv.; **(of motion)**, quō, adv.

which (interrogative and relative), quī, quae, quod.

whither, quō, adv.

who (relative pronoun), quī, quae, quod; **(interrogative pronoun)**, quis, quid.

whole, integer, integra, integrum; tō-

tus, a, um; **the whole of**, tōtus, a, um.

why, cūr, adv.

wide, lātus, a, um.

willing, am, volō, velle, voluī, tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. pres. infin.; ut (nē).

wind, ventus, ī.

winter quarters, hiberna, hibernōrum.

wish, volō, velle, voluī, tr.; w. pres. infin.; acc. w. pres. infin.; ut (nē).

with, cum, prep. w. abl.

withdraw, mē (tē, sē) recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, 3, tr.

without, sine, prep. w. abl.

withstand, resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, intr.; w. dat.; sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, 2, tr.

world, mundus, ī.

world without end, in saecula saeculōrum.

worse (adj.), pējor, pējus; (adv.), pējus.

worst (adj.), pessimus, a, um; (adv.), pessimē.

would that, utinam (particle used with subjunctive in wishes).

would that not, nē (with subjunctive in wishes).

wound, vulnus, vulneris, n.

wretched, miser, misera, miserum.

write, cōscribō, cōscribere, cōscripsī, cōscriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin.

wrong, injūria, ae.

year, annus, ī.

yield, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, intr.

you (sing.), tū, tuī; **(pl.)**, vōs, vestrī.

your (own), tuus, a, um (when referring to one person); vester, vestra, vestrum (when referring to more than one person).

yours, tuus, a, um (when referring to one person); vester, vestra, vestrum (when referring to more than one).

The HENLE LATIN SERIES from Loyola Press

Humanistic insight and linguistic training are the goals of this integrated four-year Latin course. Time-tested and teacher endorsed, this comprehensive program is designed to lead the student systematically through the fundamentals of the language itself and on to an appreciation of selected classic texts.

LATIN GRAMMAR

Designed for student use through all four years of Latin study.

Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-0112-1

FIRST YEAR LATIN

Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1026-0

SECOND YEAR LATIN

Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1027-9

THIRD YEAR LATIN

Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1028-7

FOURTH YEAR LATIN

Paperback ISBN: 0-8294-1029-5

ISBN-13: 978-0-8294-1027-3

ISBN-10: 0-8294-1027-9

LOYOLAPRESS.

3441 N. ASHLAND AVENUE
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60657
(800) 621-1008

